
Project and Construction Management Guidelines



U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Transit Administration

July 2011



NOTICE

This document is disseminated under the sponsorship of the Department of Transportation in the interest of information exchange. The United States Government assumes no liability for its contents or use thereof.

The United States Government does not endorse products or manufacturers. Trade or manufacturers' names appear herein solely because they are considered essential to the object of this report.

**Technical Report Documentation Page
Form Approved OMB No. 0704-0188**

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 1 hour per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to Washington Headquarters Services, Directorate for Information Operations and Reports, 1215 Jefferson Davis Highway, Suite 1204, Arlington, VA 22202-4302, and to the Office of Management and Budget, Paperwork Reduction Project (0704-0188), Washington, DC 20503.			
1. AGENCY USE ONLY (Leave blank)	2. REPORT DATE July 2011	3. REPORT TYPE AND DATES Original September 1990 Updated June 1996 Updated May 2003	
4. TITLE AND SUBTITLE Project and Construction Management Guidelines July 2011		5. PROJECT ID NUMBER	
6. AUTHOR(S)* Douglas R. Campion; Charles Neathery, John Reinfurt, Pamela Bailey-Campbell (Jacobs); Dorothy Schulz (Interactive Elements); David Sillars (Sillars)			
7. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES) Jacobs Engineering Group and subcontractor, Campion Group, LLC 501 North Broadway Saint Louis, MO 63102		8. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER	
P.O. Box 31515 Saint Louis, MO 63131			
9. SPONSORING/MONITORING AGENCY NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES) U.S. Department of Transportation Federal Transit Administration 1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E. Washington, DC 20590		10. SPONSORING/MONITORING AGENCY REPORT NUMBER	
11. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES * Assisted by: Tracey Lober and Keith Konradi of Jacobs; Virginkar & Associates; Interactive Elements Inc.; O.R. Colan & Associates; David Evans and Associates; David Sillars; and other FTA Project Management Oversight Contractors			
12a. DISTRIBUTION/AVAILABILITY STATEMENT Available From: National Technical Information Service/NTIS, Springfield, Virginia 22161. Phone 703.605.6000, Fax 703.605.6900, Email mailto:orders@ntis.fedworld.gov		12b. DISTRIBUTION CODE	
13. ABSTRACT (Maximum 200 words) This is the 3 rd update of the document originally published in September 1990 and updated in June 1996 and May 2003. It reflects current FTA project development, grants, and project management requirements. It incorporates the experience of FTA's Project Management Oversight Program research and technical assistance initiatives, and new or updated legislation and Circulars. Additional or expanded guidance is provided on safety and security considerations and certification process, project risk assessment and allocation, project controls, project delivery approaches, financing, real estate acquisition, dispute resolution, quality assurance/quality control, value engineering, public communications, and identifies additional sources of training and assistance. The Guidelines describe the transit capital project development process (with details on each phase along the continuum), general project management principles, and the application of those principles in the planning, design, construction/equipment procurement, and testing/start-up phases. While the emphasis may be seen as being put on Major Capital Projects and New Starts projects, information on the Small Starts program is also provided. Regardless, the principles and practice discussed have applicability to any capital transit project. Hyperlinks are provided to additional sources of requirements and guidance.			
14. SUBJECT TERMS Transit Capital Projects, Project Management, Construction Management, Project Control Project Planning, Finance, Risk Assessment Quality Assurance Quality Control, Safety and Security Management Plan Safety Certification Design-Build, Real Estate Acquisition		15. NUMBER OF PAGES 325	
		16. ACCOUNTING DATA	
17. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF REPORT Unclassified	18. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF THIS PAGE Unclassified	19. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF ABSTRACT Unclassified	20. LIMITATION OF ABSTRACT

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The 2011 Project and Construction Management Guidelines Update project was sponsored and managed by FTA's Office of Engineering. Carlos M. Garay was the FTA Project Manager. Douglas R. Campion, Campion Group, LLC was the contractor responsible for the primary editing and author for updating of the Guidelines under contract to Jacobs Engineering Group, Inc. (Timothy L. Mantych, Program Manager). Additional specialized inputs were provided by: Charles Neathery (scheduling), John Reinfurt (geotechnical) and Pamela Bailey-Campbell (alternative delivery methods) of Jacobs; Bob Merryman and Richard Moeller (real estate) of O. R. Colan Associates; Arun Virginkar and Hal Edris (vehicles and other systems) of Virginkar & Associates; Bill Byrne and Mike Eidlin (preliminary engineering and final design) of David Evans and Associates; David Sillars, PhD (risk assessment), consultant to Burns Engineering Group; and Dorothy Schulz (safety and security) of Interactive Elements Inc. Jacobs staff, most particularly Tracey Lober and Keith Konradi assisted in editing and document preparation.

At the request of FTA's Carlos M. Garay, Project Management Oversight contractors were asked to review various sections of the initial draft of the Guidelines and offer comments, and did so to varying degree with comments taken into consideration throughout this update.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	i
TABLE OF CONTENTS	ii
LIST OF FIGURES	vii
LIST OF TABLES	vii
LIST OF ACRONYMS	ix
Chapter 1 – INTRODUCTION	1-1
1.1 Purpose and Scope of the Guidelines	1-1
1.2 Reasons for the Guidelines Update	1-2
1.3 Format and Content Summary.....	1-3
Chapter 2 – TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS	2-1
2.1 Overview	2-1
2.1.1 Major Capital Projects.....	2-2
2.1.1.1 Pre-Award and Letter of No Prejudice Funding.....	2-5
2.1.2 Capital Projects Not Classified as Major Capital Projects	2-8
2.1.2.1 Fixed Guideway Modernization	2-8
2.1.2.2 Bus Maintenance Facilities	2-9
2.1.2.3 Vehicle Procurements.....	2-9
2.1.2.3.1 Transit Vehicles Procurement:	2-10
2.1.2.3.2 Regulatory References.....	2-11
2.1.2.3.3 Vehicle Procurement Deliverables	2-12
2.1.2.3.4 Buy America Requirements for Revenue Service Vehicles	2-14
2.1.2.3.5 Pre-Award Audits Requirements for Bus & Rail Buy America	2-15
2.1.2.3.6 Post Delivery Audit Requirements.....	2-16
2.1.2.4 Multimodal Transfer Facilities	2-17
2.1.2.5 Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) Projects	2-17
2.1.2.6 New Technology Procurements	2-17
2.2 Project Development Elements of Sound Transportation Planning.....	2-18
2.2.1 Systems Planning	2-18
2.2.2 Alternatives Analysis	2-21
2.2.3 Project Management Plan (PMP)	2-22
2.2.4 Rail Modernization Planning	2-26
2.2.5 Bus Maintenance Facility Planning	2-28
2.2.6 Project Risk Analysis and Procurement Planning.....	2-28
2.2.7 Environmental Planning	2-33
2.2.8 Financial Planning.....	2-34
2.2.9 FFGA and Other Grant Requirements.....	2-36
2.2.9.1 Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA)	2-36
2.2.9.2 Other Requirements	2-37
2.2.10 Joint Development Planning/Coordination with Transit Project Planning.....	2-38
2.2.11 Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP).....	2-40
2.2.11.1 Introduction and Background to the SSMP	2-40
2.2.11.2 Authority for and Elements of an SSMP	2-41
2.2.11.3 SSMP Content	2-43
2.2.11.4 Safety and Security Considerations When An SSMP Is Not Required	2-45

Table of Contents

2.3	Engineering and Design.....	2-45
2.3.1	Preliminary Engineering (PE).....	2-46
2.3.1.1	Preliminary Engineering Activities	2-48
2.3.2	Final Design Phase.....	2-57
2.3.3	Construction And Equipment/Materials Procurement Phase	2-59
2.3.4	Recovery Plan.....	2-61
2.3.5	Testing and Start-Up Phase.....	2-62
2.3.6	Revenue Service Phase	2-64
2.3.6.1	Operations and Maintenance.....	2-64
2.3.6.2	System Performance Monitoring/Assessment.....	2-65
2.3.6.3	Before and After Study	2-65
2.3.6.4	Capital Replacement Planning	2-66
2.3.6.5	State Safety Oversight (SSO).....	2-67

Chapter 3 – GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL

	PROJECTS	3-1
3.1	Introduction	3-1
3.2	Grantee and Project Organization	3-4
3.2.1	Grantee Authority, Requirements, and Organization.....	3-4
3.2.2	Project Organization, Staffing, and Training	3-7
3.2.3	Work Breakdown Structure	3-10
3.3	Financial Requirements/Resources	3-12
3.3.1	Capital Plan.....	3-13
3.3.1.1	Project Capital Plan	3-14
3.3.1.2	Force Account.....	3-16
3.3.1.3	Subsequent Modernization Cost	3-17
3.3.1.4	Contingencies	3-17
3.3.1.5	Capital Funding.....	3-18
3.3.1.6	Alternative Funding Source	3-19
3.3.1.7	Financing Techniques.....	3-20
3.3.1.8	Funding Source Forecasts.....	3-21
3.3.1.9	Borrowing, Debt Levels, and Ratings	3-22
3.3.1.10	Federal Funding Shortfalls.....	3-22
3.3.1.11	Agency-Wide Capital Plan.....	3-22
3.3.1.12	Project Budget	3-23
3.3.2	Operating Plan	3-23
3.3.2.1	Operation and Maintenance Costs (O&M Costs)	3-24
3.3.2.2	Operating/Maintenance Funding Considerations	3-26
3.3.3	Cash Flow Analysis.....	3-26
3.4	Scheduling	3-27
3.4.1	Scheduling Principles.....	3-27
3.4.2	Scheduling Process	3-28
3.4.3	Integrated Master Project Schedule.....	3-31
3.4.4	The Construction and/or Procurement Schedule(s)	3-32
3.5	Controlling the Project.....	3-35
3.5.1	FTA Requirements	3-35
3.5.2	Integrating Time and Cost.....	3-36
3.5.3	Controlling Costs.....	3-37
3.5.4	Controlling Project Configuration and Changes.....	3-40
3.5.5	Risk Assessment and Management	3-44
3.5.5.1	Projects Involving Construction of Tunnels	3-46
3.5.5.2	Risk Identification.....	3-48
3.5.5.3	Risk Assessment	3-51
3.5.5.4	Risk Response.....	3-52
3.5.5.5	Alternative Project Delivery/Contracting Methods	3-54

Table of Contents

3.5.6	Project Documentation and Reporting	3-57
3.5.7	Available Technology for Project Management	3-59
3.5.8	Managing Hazards and Threats.....	3-60
3.5.8.1	Hazard Analysis and Management.....	3-61
3.5.8.2	Hazard Identification	3-62
3.5.8.3	Hazard Measurement	3-62
3.5.8.4	Hazard Probability (Likelihood or Frequency)	3-62
3.5.8.5	Risk Determination	3-63
3.5.8.6	Hazard Resolution (or Mitigation)	3-63
3.5.8.7	Threat and Vulnerability Management.....	3-64
3.5.8.8	Threat Identification	3-65
3.5.8.9	Defining Vulnerability	3-65
3.5.8.10	Threat Severity	3-65
3.5.8.11	Threat Probability (Likelihood or Frequency).....	3-66
3.5.8.12	Criticality	3-66
3.5.8.13	Countermeasure Recommendations	3-67
3.6	Procurement, Contracts, and Related Topics	3-68
3.6.1	Procurement.....	3-68
3.6.2	Consultant and Contractor Selection and Contract Types.....	3-70
3.6.3	Dispute Resolution	3-70
3.6.4	Partnering – Construction Contracts.....	3-71
3.6.5	Claims Management	3-72
3.6.6	Alternative Project Delivery Methods and Overall Contracting Plan.....	3-73
3.6.6.1	Best-Value Procurement System	3-75
3.6.6.2	Penta-P.....	3-77
3.6.7	Contracting Considerations Related to Risk Management.....	3-77
3.7	Quality Assurance/Quality Control	3-79
3.7.1	FTA QA/QC Guidelines Summary	3-79
3.7.2	Project QA/QC Requirements.....	3-80
3.7.3	Alternative Organizational Structures	3-83
3.7.4	Total Quality Management / International Organization for Standardization	3-84
3.8	Communications	3-84
3.8.1	Project Coordination.....	3-85
3.8.2	Audience	3-86
3.8.3	Program Responsibility	3-86
3.8.4	Transit Riders.....	3-86

Chapter 4 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

	(PRELIMINARY ENGINEERING AND FINAL DESIGN).....	4-1
4.1	Introduction	4-1
4.2	Design Team Organization/Contracts.....	4-2
4.3	Construction Procurement Considerations	4-3
4.3.1	Construction Contract Bid Documents and Requirements	4-4
4.3.1.1	Consideration of Formally Advertised Contract Procurement	4-6
4.3.1.2	Non-Traditional Procurement Methods.....	4-6
4.3.1.3	Pre-Qualification	4-7
4.3.1.4	Issues and Opportunities for Industry Reviews in Contract Procurement.....	4-7
4.3.2	Subcontracting and the Utilization of Small and Disadvantaged Firms	4-8
4.3.2.1	Utilization of and Compliance Assurances Relative to Small and Disadvantaged Businesses.....	4-8
4.4	Design Criteria and Standards.....	4-9
4.4.1	Operating Performance and Facilities Requirements – PE Phase.....	4-10
4.4.1.1	Perform Surveys	4-10
4.4.1.2	Conduct System Studies	4-10
4.4.1.3	Select Way and Structure Types	4-12

Table of Contents

4.4.1.4	Develop Station Preliminary Plans	4-13
4.4.1.5	Develop Yard and Shop Criteria	4-15
4.4.1.6	Design Criteria for Fixed Guideway System Components	4-16
4.4.1.7	Computer-Assisted Design and Drafting	4-21
4.4.2	Applicable Codes and Standards	4-21
4.4.3	Safety and Security	4-21
4.4.4	Environmental Documentation and Mitigation Requirements	4-24
4.5	Real Estate Acquisition	4-26
4.5.1	Early Real Estate/Rights-of-Way (ROW) Activities	4-26
4.5.2	Real Estate Acquisition-Implementation Phase	4-28
4.5.3	Relocation Assistance Considerations	4-30
4.5.4	Contaminated Property (including Brownfields)	4-30
4.6	Negotiation of Third-Party Agreements	4-31
4.6.1	Governmental Jurisdictions	4-32
4.6.2	Utilities	4-32
4.6.3	Railroad and Other Transportation Entities	4-33
4.6.4	Environmental Compliance	4-35
4.6.5	Joint Development	4-35
4.7	Design Management	4-35
4.7.1	Design Coordination	4-35
4.7.2	Systems Integration	4-36
4.7.3	Design Reviews	4-37
4.7.3.1	PE Phase Design Reviews	4-41
4.7.3.2	Final Design Phase Design Reviews	4-42
4.7.4	Construction Planning and Constructability Reviews	4-43
4.7.5	Peer Reviews	4-44
4.7.6	Value Engineering	4-45
4.7.6.1	Definition and Requirements of Value Engineering	4-45
4.7.6.2	Timing of Value Engineering Studies	4-45
4.7.6.3	The Value Engineering Workshop Team	4-45
4.7.6.4	The Value Engineering Workshop	4-46
4.7.7	Quality Assurance/Quality Control in Design	4-47
4.7.8	Design Management for Alternative Delivery Projects	4-48
4.7.8.1	Design Review	4-48
4.7.8.2	Value Engineering	4-48
Chapter 5 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES		5-1
5.1	Introduction	5-1
5.2	Developing a Plan for Managing Construction	5-1
5.2.1	Organization and Staffing; Responsibilities and Authorities	5-1
5.2.1.1	Interface Points	5-2
5.2.1.2	Relationship to Project Delivery Method Used	5-4
5.2.1.3	Construction Manager Approach	5-5
5.2.1.4	Resident Engineer	5-5
5.2.2	Project Labor Agreements (PLAs)	5-6
5.2.3	Interface with Utilities	5-6
5.2.4	Interface with Transit Operations	5-8
5.2.5	Community Relations and Public Information	5-8
5.2.6	Quality Assurance/Quality Control	5-10
5.2.7	Change Control and Management	5-11
5.2.8	Configuration Management	5-12
5.2.9	Delays	5-13
5.2.10	Claims Avoidance and Management	5-14
5.2.10.1	Dispute Resolution	5-14

Table of Contents

5.2.10.2	Partnering	5-16
5.2.11	Documentation (Progress Reporting, Maintenance of Records)	5-17
5.2.12	Contractor Payments	5-19
5.2.13	Project Closeout.....	5-19
5.3	Contractor Requirements	5-20
5.3.1	Permits	5-20
5.3.2	Safety Plan.....	5-20
5.3.3	Security Plan.....	5-21
5.3.4	Quality Plan.....	5-21
5.3.5	Submittals of Shop Drawings or Contract Data Requirements.....	5-21
5.3.6	Submission of Requests for Information (RFIs).....	5-21
5.3.7	Schedule	5-22
5.3.8	Progress Reporting and Invoices.....	5-22
5.3.9	Record Drawings and Documentation	5-23
5.3.10	O&M Manuals and Training	5-23
5.3.11	Testing and Inspection.....	5-23
5.3.12	Closeout Activities.....	5-24
5.4	Construction Safety.....	5-24
5.4.1	Safety Program Management.....	5-25
5.4.2	Pre-Construction Survey to Identify Potential Hazards.....	5-26
5.4.3	Construction Hazard Control.....	5-26
5.4.4	Employee Orientation and Training	5-28
5.4.5	Safety Inspections and Audits.....	5-28
5.4.6	Accident Reporting and Investigations.....	5-28
5.4.7	Use of Contract Incentives.....	5-28
5.5	Construction Security.....	5-29
5.5.1	Security Program Management	5-29
5.5.2	Construction Safety and Security Manual.....	5-30
5.5.3	Construction Breach Control.....	5-31
5.5.4	Employee Orientation and Training	5-31
5.5.5	Breach and Crime Reporting and Investigations	5-31
5.6	Insurance	5-31
5.6.1	Conventional Contractor Controlled Insurance Program	5-32
5.6.2	Coordinated (Owner Controlled or Wrap Up) Insurance Program.....	5-32
5.6.3	Partner Controlled Insurance	5-33
Chapter 6 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP		
PHASES		
6.1	Introduction	6-1
6.2	Test Program Planning	6-2
6.3	Test Program Elements	6-3
6.3.1	Contractually Required Testing.....	6-3
6.3.2	System Integration Testing	6-4
6.3.3	Operational Tests.....	6-5
6.4	Management of Rail Activation	6-6
6.4.1	Agreements.....	6-8
6.4.2	Establishment/Modification of Operating Organization.....	6-8
6.4.3	Procedures, Rulebooks, and Manuals	6-8
6.4.4	Recruitment of Personnel	6-8
6.4.5	Training	6-9
6.4.6	Pre-Revenue Operations	6-9
6.5	Safety Oversight.....	6-10
6.6	Security Oversight.....	6-11
6.7	Safety and Security Certification.....	6-11
6.8	Emergency Preparedness	6-13

Table of Contents

6.9	Public Relations and Marketing	6-14
6.10	Initial Revenue Service	6-15
REFERENCES		R-1
INDEX		I-1
Appendix A – Cost Estimation Methodology		A-1
Appendix B – Project Contingency (General Overview)		B-1
Appendix C – Utility Relocation Agreements		C-1
Appendix D – Preliminary Engineering Checklist		D-1
Appendix E – Final Design Checklist		E-1
Appendix F – Full Funding Grant Agreement Checklist		F-1
Appendix G – A Grantee’s Guide to the FTA New Starts Project Risk Review		G-1

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2-1.	TEA-21 New Starts Planning and Project Development Process	2-5
Figure 2-2.	Safety and Security Core Management Functions	2-40
Figure 2-3.	FTA Project Development Continuum	2-46
Figure 2-4.	Preliminary Engineering Phase Process	2-49
Figure 2-5.	Final Design Phase Process	2-59
Figure 2-6.	Construction Phase Process	2-60
Figure 2-7.	Testing Phase Process	2-63
Figure 2-8.	Start-Up Phase Process.....	2-64
Figure 3-1.	Matrix Organization.....	3-7
Figure 3-2.	Matrix Organization with a Project Office	3-7
Figure 3-3.	Example of a WBS [Ref. 3-8]	3-11
Figure 3-4.	Components of a Financial Plan	3-13
Figure 3-5.	Risk Management Process	3-45
Figure 3-6.	Cost Impacts & Mitigation Capability By Phase	3-46
Figure 3-7.	Public Agencies Roles/Responsibilities for Turnkey Projects	3-79
Figure 4-1.	Transportation Planning Process	4-25
Figure 4-2.	"Plan, Do, Check, Act" Cycle.....	4-47

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2-1.	Project Management Plan Outline.....	2-25
Table 2-2.	Timing of Project Delivery Method Selection	2-29
Table 2-3.	Deliverables by Project Delivery Method	2-56

Table of Contents

Table 3-1	Capital Cost Variation in Total Project Cost.....	3-38
Table 3-2.	Risk Checklist [Ref. 3-29].....	3-50
Table 3-3.	Instruments for Managing Risk [Ref. 2-42].....	3-55
Table 3-4.	Severity Categories.....	3-62
Table 3-5.	Probability Categories.....	3-63
Table 3-6.	Risk Categories and Determination.....	3-63
Table 3-7.	Severity Categories.....	3-65
Table 3-8.	Probability Categories.....	3-66
Table 3-9.	Criticality Matrix	3-67
Table 3-10.	Comparison of Contracting Methods.....	3-76
Table 4-1.	Typical 30, 60, and 90 Percent Design Submission Distribution.....	4-40

LIST OF ACRONYMS

13(c)	Department of Labor Regulation on Transit Labor Protection
3C	Continuous, Comprehensive, and Cooperative Planning Process
A&E	Architect(ure) and Engineer(ing)
AA	Alternatives Analysis
AACE	Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering International
AAR	Association of American Railroads
ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
AGT	Automated Guideway Transit
AIME	American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers
AIT	Arts-in-Transit
APTA	American Public Transportation Association
AREMA	American Railway Engineering and Maintenance Association
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ATC	Alternative Technical Concept
ATCS	Automated Train Control System
ATO	Automated Train Operation
BAFO	Best and Final Offer
BMF	Bus Maintenance Facility
BOO	Build-Own-Operate
BOT	Build Operate Transfer
BRT	Bus Rapid Transit
BTO	Build Transfer Operate
CADD	Computer Assisted Design and Drafting
CAPRA	Capital Reserve Account
CBD	Central Business District
CBTC	Communications Based Train Control
CCB	Change Control Board
CCS	Change Control System
CCT	Community Coordination Team
CCTV	Closed Circuit Television
CE	Categorical Exclusion
CEQ	Council on Environmental Quality
CFR	Code of Federal Regulation
CII	Construction Industry Institute
CIP	Coordinated Insurance Program
CM	Construction Manager/Management
CMAA	Construction Management Association of America
CMAQ	Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality
CMC	Construction Management Consultant
CM/GC	Construction Manager/General Contractor
CMR	Construction Manager At Risk
CPM	Critical Path Method
CPTED	Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design
CR	Constructibility Review
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute
CSSM	Construction Safety and Security Manual
CSSP	Contractor Safety and Security Plan
CURT	Construction Users Roundtable
D/B	Design/Build
D/B/B	Design/Bid/Build
DBE	Disadvantaged Business Enterprise
DBIA	Design Build Institute of America

List of Acronyms

DBOM	Design Build Operate Maintain
DBOM/F	Design Build Operate Maintain/Finance
DEIS	Draft Environmental Impact Statement
DOT	Department of Transportation
DRB	Dispute Review Board
E&O	Errors and Omissions
EA	Environmental Assessment
EE	Environmental Evaluation
EEO	Equal Employment Opportunity
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EMC	Engineering Management Consultant
EMI	Electromagnetic Interference
EMS	Emergency Medical Services
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ESA	Environmental Site Assessment
EV	Earned Value
FAR	Federal Acquisition Regulations
FARA	Federal Acquisition Reform Act
FEIS	Final Environmental Impact Statement
FFGA	Full Funding Grant Agreement
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FLSC	Fire-Life Safety Committee
FMCSS	Federal Motor Carrier Safety Standards
FMO	Financial Management Oversight
FMP	Fleet Management Plan
FMVSS	Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards
FONSI	Finding of No Significant Impact
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FRA	Federal Railroad Administration
FTA	Federal Transit Administration
GAN	Grant Anticipation Note
GBR	Geotechnical Baseline Report
GDR	Geotechnical Data Report
GEC	General Engineering Consultant
GIR	Geotechnical Interpretive Report
GMD	Geotechnical Memorandum for Design
GMIS	Grants Management Information System
GMP	Guaranteed Maximum Price
GPP	Geotechnical Program Plan
HAR	Hazard Assessment and Resolution
HOV	High Occupancy Vehicle
HUD	U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development
HVAC	Heating Ventilation and Air Conditioning
ICC	Interstate Commerce Commission
IMPS	Integrated Master Project Schedule
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ISTEA	Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991
ITP	Integrated Test Plan
ITS	Intelligent Transportation Systems
LONP	Letter of No Prejudice
LPA	Locally Preferred Alternative
LRT	Light Rail Transit
LRV	Light Rail Vehicle
LUC	Local User Council
MCP	Major Capital Project
MDBF	Mean Distance Between Failures

List of Acronyms

MIS	Major Investment Study
MOW	Maintenance of Way
MPO	Metropolitan Planning Organization
NAA	Non-Attainment Area
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NSP	New Start Project
NTD	National Transit Database
NTI	National Transit Institute
NTP	Notice to Proceed
O&M	Operating (ion) and Maintenance
OBS	Organizational Breakdown Structure
OCIP	Owner Controlled Insurance Program or Plan
OGT	Office of Grants and Training
OSDBU	Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization (FTA)
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
OSR	Operating Spares Ratio
PCGA	Project Construction Grant Agreement
PDM	Precedence Diagram Method
PE	Preliminary Engineering
PERT	Program Evaluation and Review Technique
PHA	Preliminary Hazard Analysis
PLA	Project Labor Agreement
PM	Project/Program Manager/Management
PMC	Project Management Consultant
PMI	Project Management Institute
PMO	Project Management Oversight
PMOC	Project Management Oversight Contractor
PMP	Project Management Plan
PRO	Pre-Revenue Operations
PROC	Pre-Revenue Operations Committee
PROP	Pre-Revenue Operations Plan
PTMS	Public Transportation Facilities & Equipment Management System
PVR	Peak Vehicle Requirements
QA	Quality Assurance
QC	Quality Control
R&D	Research and Development
RAC	Rail Activation Committee
RAM	Rail Activation Manager
RAMP	Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan
RAN	Revenue Anticipation Note
RCMP	Risk and Contingency Management Plan
RE	Resident Engineer
RFI	Request for Information
RFP	Request for Proposal
RFQ	Request for Qualifications
RIP	Reliability Improvement Program
ROD	Record of Decision (see "RSD" for former second definition)
ROI	Return on Investment
ROW	Right-of-Way or Rights-of-Way {Also sometimes seen as R/W}
RR	Railroad
RSD	Revenue Service Date (formerly Revenue Operations Date)
RTP	Regional Transportation Plan
SAFETEA-LU	The Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users
SAVE	Society of American Value Engineers
SBE	Small Business Enterprise

List of Acronyms

SC	Safety Certification
SCC	Standard Cost Categories
SCRC	Safety Certification Review Committee
SCORC	System Change and Operations Review Committee
SCP	Situational Crime Prevention
S/DBE	Small and Disadvantaged Business Enterprise
SEPP	System Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan
SIT	System Integration Test
SITC	System Integration Test Committee
SITP	System Integration Test Plan
SSC	Safety and Security Certification
SSCC	Safety and Security Certification Committee
SSCP	Safety and Security Certification Plan
SSCRC	Safety and Security Certification Review Committee
SSCVR	Safety and Security Certification Verification Review
SSMP	Safety and Security Management Plan
SSO	State Safety Oversight
SSOA	State Safety Oversight Agency
SSP	System Security Plan
SSPP	System Safety (and/or Security) Program Plan
SSPS	System Safety Program Standards
STIP	Statewide Transportation Improvement Program
STP	Surface Transportation Program
SUE	Subsurface Utility Engineering
T&M	Time and Material
TCRP	Transit Cooperative Research Program
TDP	Turnkey Demonstration Program
TEA-21	Transportation Equity Act for the 21 st Century
TECP	Tax Exempt Commercial Paper
TIFIA	Transportation Infrastructure Finance and Innovation Act
TIP	Transportation Improvement Program
TOD	Transit-Oriented Development
TPMS	Transit Performance Monitoring System
TPP	Test Program Plan
TQM	Total Quality Management
TSA	Transportation Security Administration
TSI	Transportation Safety Institute
TSM	Transportation System Management
TVA	Threat and Vulnerability Analysis
USACE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
USC	United States Code
USGC	United States Coast Guard
USDOT	United States Department of Transportation
VE	Value Engineering
VECP	Value Engineering Change Proposal
WAN	Wide Area Network
WBS	Work Breakdown Structure
WMD	Weapons of Mass Destruction

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope of the Guidelines

The ***Project and Construction Management Guidelines*** document (hereafter referred to as the ***Guidelines***) has been developed under Federal Transit Administration (FTA) sponsorship to assist those involved in advancing transit capital projects to achieve implementation success in terms of the project scope, function, schedule, cost, and quality.

The ***Guidelines*** were originally published in September 1990 and subsequently updated in June 1996 and again in May 2003. They summarize FTA requirements, best practices, and research results in the management of transit capital project development. The ***Guidelines*** are designed for use by FTA “grantees” (also used to mean “owner”, “transit agency”, or “project sponsor”) and their consultants as well as the FTA staff and Project Management Oversight (PMO) contractors. FTA maintains oversight for the grants that it awards, but assigns the grant administration and project management responsibility to the grantees. FTA assigns the responsibility for oversight of nearly all capital grants to the appropriate FTA Regional Office.

Dedicated use of the ***Guidelines*** should continue to contribute to effective project management on the part of the grantee, and effective oversight and guidance by FTA and the PMO contractor. Each project phase should: 1) start with inputs or a baseline, 2) have a process that refines the project definition and generates outputs that, 3) become the inputs or baseline for the subsequent phase. By defining the requirements for each phase and sound approaches to their accomplishment, the ***Guidelines*** allow grantees to define project requirements, allocate resources, perform project activities, monitor progress, and make adjustments, as required, to obtain the proper information and assure that timely decisions are made utilizing risk-informed and performance-based project management. Adherence to the ***Guidelines*** should minimize scope changes, schedule slippages, cost overruns, and quality problems, and contribute to fully meeting all the performance objectives of the transit capital project.

Because a sound management and control plan should be implemented early in the life of a project, the ***Guidelines*** encompass the planning phase, in addition to the design and construction phases, where the greatest level of effort is expended.

For completeness, the operational or revenue service phase is also presented to encourage a comprehensive, life cycle management approach. This approach systematically assesses the relationship between the constructed transit capital project and operational realities to determine future system needs, both modernization and expansion.

Participation in Project Planning and Design

FTA's Construction Roundtable participants have been of equal opinion that there is a need for transit operations and construction staff to be involved in planning and design of New Starts as well as modernization and/or expansion of transit systems. This coordination is essential to ensure that plans are feasible from transit operations, project construction, and revenue service start-up standpoints. Involvement by the local community also is essential at every stage of project development.

The **Guidelines** address the full range of issues and present management principles applicable to all FTA-funded capital projects. These include projects that could encompass a variety of modes (e.g., rail, bus, other fixed guideway); improvement types (e.g., equipment, facility); system evolutions (e.g., newly developed, expanded, modernized); and grantee sizes, capabilities, and maturities (e.g., newly constituted or established with experienced staff).

1.2 Reasons for the Guidelines Update

This update incorporates changes in regulations and policies, particularly in renewed emphasis on cost containment through continuous risk identification, assessment and mitigation practices, and the experience gained over the intervening

period from a variety of sources, including the following:

- Transit Construction Roundtable recommendations
- Other FTA and industry sponsored research, guidance, and best practices
- The results of wider use of non-traditional project delivery and development approaches
- Updates of the:
 - Grant Management Requirements
 - Full-Funding Grant Agreements Guidance
 - Program Guidance for Metropolitan Planning and State Planning and Research Program Grants
 - Elderly Individuals and Individuals with Disabilities Program Guidance and Application Instructions
 - Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions
- Applicable research and training initiatives of FTA, including National Transit Institute (NTI) courses on Management of Transit Construction Projects and Design-Build Project Development
- FTA publication of Circular 5800.1, providing a complete picture of requisite safety and security policies and guidelines to reflect the increasing attention devoted to the topic of Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Projects
- Additional experience with Financing Techniques for Public Transit
- Updated guidance for Land Acquisition and Relocation Assistance for Transit Projects, including Railroad Right-of-Way Acquisition
- Introduction of the FTA's new webpage relative to real estate acquisition matters, http://www.fta.dot.gov/region5_5937.html

Introduction

- Other new FTA regulations, circulars, rules, and guidelines related to topics addressed in the **Guidelines**
- Transit and other industry approaches to contemporary project and construction management topics from such sources as the Project Management Institute, American Society of Civil Engineers, American Public Transportation Association, and the Design-Build Institute of America, to name a few.

The update process also provided an opportunity to review the structure and format of the **Guidelines** to improve its effectiveness. The following section summarizes these changes.

1.3 Format and Content Summary

From a thorough review of the previous **Guidelines**, and suggestions made by some of the FTA's Project Management Oversight Contractors working daily in the arena of transit capital projects implementation, an outline was developed that includes the following changes from the previous version:

- Discussion has been further expanded on the Planning Phase in Chapter 2, the Transit Capital Project Development Process, to identify and reinforce the data and decision-making that is intrinsic to and should take place in that phase.
- Chapter 3, General Management Principles for Transit Capital Projects, identifies additional areas of importance and correlates them to the risk-informed, performance-based requirements for a robust project management framework.
- Three detailed, phase-oriented chapters follow: Managing the Project During the Design Phases (Chapter 4), Managing the Project During the Procurement and Construction phase (Chapter 5), and Managing the Project During the Testing & Start-Up Phase (Chapter 6). The Preliminary Engineering (PE) and Final Design (FD) Phases have been expanded, with additional information on the system-wide project elements and reinforcement of the transitional requirements between the phases being discussed within Chapter 2.
- One of the conventions, “**☑ # References regulatory requirements for the Project Management Plan (PMP). The actual PMP requirements are highlighted in the text**”, was eliminated, based on comments from users of the Guidelines that found these confusing. The references to PMP requirements still appear, with discussion, in Chapter 2.
- Document references for FTA guidelines and requirements have been incorporated, notes or tips have been included using text boxes, and, where available, hyperlinks to the source documents have been created. The hyperlinks can be utilized in electronic versions of the **Guidelines**, but simply appear as underlined text in printed versions. Note that even a portable document format (*.pdf) of these **Guidelines** should maintain the hyperlinks.
- The needs of the Small Starts program and other smaller projects that are not considered Major Capital Projects (MCPs) are addressed in more detail, primarily in Chapters 2 and 3.

Introduction

The following conventions are used in the *Guidelines*:

- || References legal or regulatory citations
- ☞ References additional sources of information

The remaining chapters of the *Guidelines* are summarized and presented as follows:

Chapter 2 addresses the primary categorization of projects and types of grants associated with each, with emphasis on FTA's funding process and grant requirements. Rail vehicle procurement is expanded upon in this chapter. For each development phase, the major work program elements that are vital to understanding the Basis for Design and that thereby influence effective project management are reviewed, noting significant milestones and decision points, with their interfaces highlighted. The primary elements and their foundation for sound transportation planning and project development phases are addressed and include the following:

- Systems Planning
- Alternatives Analysis
- Preliminary Engineering
- Final Design
- Construction and Equipment/Materials Procurement
- Testing and Start-Up
- Revenue Service

This chapter reinforces the role of the grantee as the responsible party for project management and describes the FTA requirements that the grantee needs to recognize and put into practice for effective project stewardship and management. The FTA requirements that apply during the planning and analysis phases and prior to an FTA capital grant funding commitment are designed to provide assurances that issues of project scope, cost estimation, environmental impacts, implementation process, schedule, and local funding commitments have been thoroughly addressed and resolved. These requirements aim to create a realistic project Basis for Design that the grantee may use to more successfully manage the project, should it advance to subsequent phases.

Incentives are another tool FTA uses to encourage effective grantee project management. For a Major Capital Project (MCP), the Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) concept makes the grantee financially responsible for cost overruns and attaining the Revenue Service Date (RSD). In this manner of grant funding, grantees have the incentive to establish a realistic project baseline and to implement policies, practices and procedures that are risk-informed, performance-based, means and methods of project control.

A grantee should apply the management principles and guidance embodied in this document to its unique project environment through the development of a Project Management Plan (PMP). Chapter 2 covers specific regulatory requirements for the PMP. A PMP, which is required by statute for MCPs, provides a functional, financial,

Introduction

and procedural route map for the grantee to effectively and efficiently manage on-time, within-budget, and at the highest quality level in its unique project environment.

Chapter 3 outlines the general principles for managing the transit capital project development process throughout each of the phases of project implementation. In addition to the traditional project management requirements for managing scope, budget (including financing), schedule, and quality, effective project management requires the application of other management skills such as procurement management, continuous risk assessment and management, safety and security analyses and management, and internal and external communications management. Because transit capital projects are publicly-funded and often have significant urban development impacts, these projects have many more legal and regulatory requirements than a privately developed project.

Chapter 3 groups the general principles for managing transit capital projects into the following functional categories:

- Grantee and Project Organization
- Financial Requirements/Resources
- Scheduling
- Controlling the Project
- Procurement, Contracts, and Related Topics
- Quality Assurance/Quality Control
- Communications – Internal and External

Chapter 3 purposely presents the project management principles in a general manner. The implementing agencies will have the responsibility to apply the general principles along with the specific guidance provided for the different project phases. FTA and its Project Management Oversight (PMO) and Financial Management Oversight (FMO) contractors monitor the project management process of grantees to assure compliance with FTA requirements and to assess the grantee's efforts to achieve management objectives (within budget, on schedule, and highest quality products). Consequently, these **Guidelines** are intended to be firm in their definition of management principles and objectives, flexible in their application of standard and alternative approaches and techniques, and dynamic in their ability for FTA and grantees to consider new approaches and techniques in the future.

Chapter 4 recommends specific management approaches for transit capital projects during the Design Phases of Preliminary Engineering (PE) and Final Design (FD). The chapter expands upon topics with regard to procurement planning, contracting options, and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) compliance. Additional discussion provides the basis and application of design development and control requirements that best ensure control of project deliverables and a focus on “designing to budget” and maintaining the integrity of the project's Basis for Design.

Chapter 5 recommends specific management approaches for transit capital projects during the Construction and Equipment/Materials Procurement Phase. A key ingredient

Introduction

this chapter highlights is for the continuance of risk-informed and performance-based project management and maintaining the integrity of the Basis for Design, much as these objectives are emphasized during the Design Phases. For the Construction and Procurement Phase, however, the Guidelines emphasize the grantee care that must be exercised to ensure delivery of the project elements in conformance with contract plans and specifications to achieve the project goals.

Chapter 6 recommends specific management approaches for transit capital projects during the Testing and Start-Up Phase. This phase is the period in which rigorous component inspection and testing is done, preceding integrated project testing and certifications that the system is safe and revenue service for the general public may begin.

Appendices to enhance the effectiveness of the **Guidelines** include:

- Index of selected key words and phrases
- References numbered to correspond to the [Ref.____] notations in the text
- Topical discussion papers, checklists and other guidance to aid in project management

CHAPTER 2 – TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

2.1 Overview

It takes a lengthy and rigorous process to plan, design, program, and implement a transit capital project, particularly a major transit capital project. This process includes the following activities:

- Analysis of the existing transportation system in order to determine the need for improvements
- Evaluation of alternatives in terms of design and operational criteria, costs, benefits, and impacts, and the preparation of the necessary environmental documents to ensure conformance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA)
- Financial planning to identify costs, funding requirements (initial capital funding and cash flow, and ongoing operational expenses) and sources (non-Federal and Federal)
- Reaching agreements with third parties and regulatory agencies
- Determining the optimal project delivery approach
- Preliminary hazard analysis (PHA) and a threat and vulnerability analysis (TVA) to develop design criteria that assure that safety and security are built into the project prior to final design and construction so that costs and community issues do not escalate during later phases of the project
- Design necessary to achieve the desired performance in concert with all project design criteria and environmental and financial constraints
- Acquisition of the required right-of-way (ROW)
- Construction of the improvement in accordance with the plans and specifications
- Testing and start-up to assure that the system is safe and secure and meets operational requirements
- Continual monitoring during operations to assess system performance and identify requirements for additional improvements, such as modernization or expansion

The time frame and specific requirements to implement transit capital projects vary greatly depending on the type of improvement being considered. With regard to financing, for example, most projects will involve capital programming and competition for a limited amount of public funds. FTA capital assistance generally requires a continuous, comprehensive, and cooperative Metropolitan Planning Process (see [“The Transportation Planning Process: Key Issues”](#) [Ref. 2-1] booklet published by the FTA and FHWA). In the case of New Starts (NS) fixed guideway projects, the FTA requires a very rigorous project justification process subsequent to such a project being selected for advancement by the local government(s) beyond the long range planning stage.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The degree of environmental impact also affects the implementation process. An NS Project, for instance, has numerous positive and negative impacts related to route alignment, station locations, relocations, land use implications, construction, and traffic generation. Effectively mitigating the adverse potential impacts of a project requires a process of public involvement to gather input and achieve support, especially to create stable sources of local funding.

A set of typical definitions, requirements, inputs, outputs, major milestones, and decision points associated with each of the transit capital project development phases is presented in the following sections. While these parameters may vary depending on the nature of the project, it is important for a grantee to determine the specific requirements associated with each project as a means of establishing a basis for effective project management. As the phases of project development are interrelated, proper attention to the management principles and external requirements at the earliest stage can eliminate potential problems that could result in schedule slippage and cost overruns in subsequent phases. FTA, under Congressional direction as a major funding source for public transportation, is committed to ensuring that a grantee has a process of project management that results in successful implementation of the desired project at the lowest cost. This requires a management process that is risk-informed and performance-based to control scope, quality, cost, schedule, and project risk.

The following sections describe the FTA designation of Major Capital Projects (MCPs) that require special project management attention, and other projects that grantees develop with less direct Federal oversight.

2.1.1 Major Capital Projects

These definitions are essential to understanding the FTA capital project management requirements and the role of Project Management Oversight (PMO) contractors (consultants) resulting from the passage of [SAFETEA-LU](#) [Ref. 2-2]:

- **New Start Project (NS Project):** A new fixed guideway system or an extension to an existing fixed guideway system. FTA New Start Funding is provided through the Section 5309 grant program.
 - **Small Starts Project:** A Section 5309 capital investment program that contains less than \$75 million of Investment Grant funding with a total project cost of less than \$250 million. [Guidance for Small Starts and Very Small Starts](#) is contained in [Ref. 2-3].
- **Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA):** A means for providing Section 5309 funds to projects with a Federal share of \$25 million or more. FFGAs establish terms and conditions for the Federal financial participation in an NS Project. Further discussion of FFGAs is provided in Section 2.2.9.1.
- **Project Construction Grant Agreement (PCGA):** A means for providing Section 5309 funds to Small Starts projects with a Federal share of less than \$75 million. PCGAs establish terms and conditions for the Federal financial

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

participation for Small Starts and Very Small Starts projects. See [Federal Register, Vol. 74, No. 42, 3/5/2009, pp 9656- 9690](#). [Ref. 2-4]

- **Fixed Guideway:** Any public transportation facility that utilizes and occupies a separate right-of-way (ROW) or rails. This includes, but is not limited to, heavy rail, light rail, commuter rail, automated guideway transit (AGT), people movers, and exclusive facilities for buses, e.g., bus rapid transit (BRT).
- **Project Management Oversight Program (PMOP):** A continuous (or sometimes periodic) review and evaluation of various processes to ensure each project is in compliance with statutory, administrative, and regulatory requirements; that FTA national and grantee goals are reached; and to improve FTA and grantee project management processes and components. Oversight should be viewed as an increased emphasis on monitoring the adequacy of grantee technical capability/capacity and management systems to ensure proper planning, technical, financial, and administrative control, which will result in improved grantee compliance with statutory and administrative requirements. Project Management Oversight (PMO) will include review of PMP, project estimates and schedules and will facilitate risk assessment and/or mitigation to assure that a project is within prescribed scope, schedule and budget. PMO can be undertaken with FTA and/or contractor staff. PMO contractor (consultant) services may be assigned by the FTA Administrator when the following conditions apply:
 - the grantee is using FTA capital funds and
 - the project is an MCP (see MCP definition below), or
 - the FTA Administrator determines it is in the best interest of the government.
- **Major Capital Project (MCP):** This is defined as a project that:
 - involves the construction of a new fixed guideway or an extension to an existing fixed guideway
 - involves the rehabilitation of an existing fixed guideway with a total project cost in excess of \$100 million, or
 - the FTA Administrator determines it to be an MCP because the PMO program may benefit the grantee. Typically, this means a project that:
 - generally is expected to have a total project cost of \$100 million or more for construction;
 - is not exclusively for the routine acquisition, maintenance, or rehabilitation of vehicles or other rolling stock;
 - involves new technology; and
 - is of a unique nature for the grantee, and/or
 - involves a grantee whose past experience indicates that the implementing agency may benefit from the oversight or technical assistance available through the PMO Program.

(Note that proposed Rule for Project Management will change this definition.)
- **Project Management Plan (PMP):** An overarching document which demonstrates a grantee's authority and its technical capacity and capability to

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

implement and maintain a new transit capital project together with any existing public transit system elements. PMPs are required to be submitted initially prior to PE and updated through subsequent project phases. PMPs are required for all MCPs.

Figure 2-1 depicts the [Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century](#) (TEA-21) [Ref. 2-5] New Starts Planning and Project Development Process that includes key grantee products, FTA actions and decision points, and PMO for applicable project phases. This figure depicts the process typical for the D/B/B contract delivery method, and may also be appropriate for D/B contracting wherein a partial Notice to Proceed (NTP) could be used to initiate Final Design, with full construction at a later NTP. Planning and project development for New Starts projects is a continuum of analytical activities carried out as part of the metropolitan planning and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) review processes. Systems planning results in the identification and prioritization of transportation corridors in greatest need of more detailed planning and analysis. Alternatives Analysis (AA) focuses on a specific transportation corridor need (or set of needs), identifies alternative actions to address these needs, and generates information needed to select an option for further engineering and implementation. This AA Phase typically results in the preparation of a Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS). Once a locally preferred alternative (LPA) is selected and adopted in the region's long range plan, the project sponsor may request FTA entrance into Preliminary Engineering (PE).

PE includes additional engineering analysis and results in the completion of all environmental requirements, with the preparation of a Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) and the FTA signs an environmental Record of Decision (ROD). PE also typically marks the beginning of FTA's project management oversight function. The next stage of development is Final Design (FD), which also requires FTA approval. It is within final design that candidate projects are considered by FTA for a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA).

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

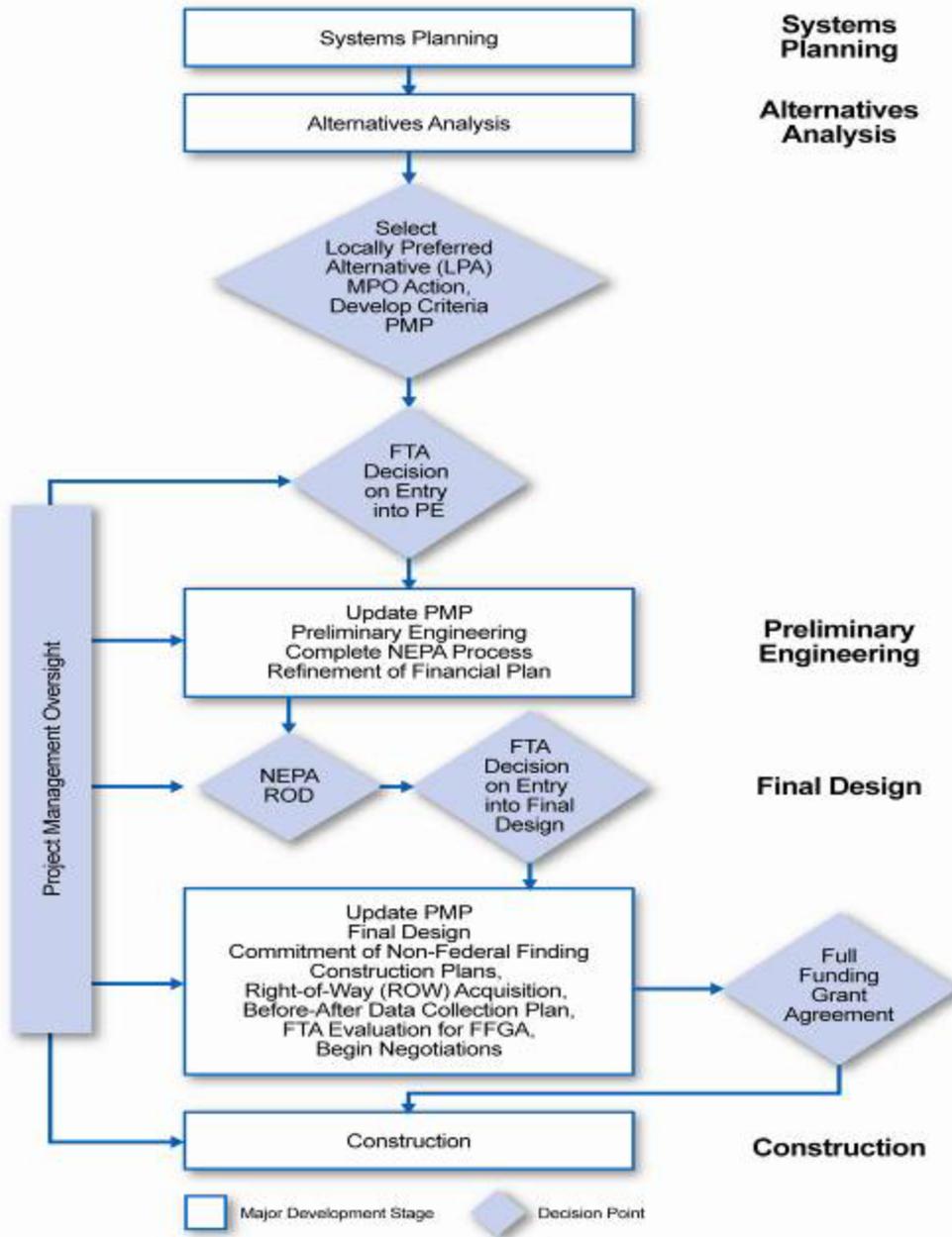


Figure 2-1. TEA-21 New Starts Planning and Project Development Process

2.1.1.1 Pre-Award and Letter of No Prejudice Funding

Although an FFGA is important to MCPs, FTA has a variety of pre-award authority options that can enable a grantee to proceed with aspects of the capital project prior to FTA making a capital grant and/or an FFGA. These pre-award authorities, and the Letter of No Prejudice, are discussed below.

Under existing practice, FTA extends automatic pre-award authority for the acquisition of real property and real property rights for a New Starts or Small Starts project upon

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

completion of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) process for that project. The NEPA process is complete when FTA signs an environmental Record of Decision (ROD) or a Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) or makes a Categorical Exclusion (CE) determination.

FTA also grants pre-award authority for utility relocation upon completion of the NEPA process for New Starts and Small Starts projects.

FTA extends pre-award authority for the procurement of vehicles upon completion of the NEPA process for New Starts and Small Starts projects. It is advisable, however, that grantees that do not currently operate the type of vehicle proposed in the New Starts or Small Starts project delay exercising this pre-award authority until later in the project development process when project plans are more fully developed and federal support for the project is more nearly certain. FTA reminds project sponsors that the procurement of vehicles must comply with all federal requirements including, but not limited to, competitive procurement practices, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and Buy America. Project sponsors should discuss the procurement of vehicles with FTA in regards to federal requirements prior to exercising pre-award authority.

FTA extends pre-award authority for non-construction activities upon entry into final design for New Starts projects. The intent of this authority is to facilitate procurement of long-lead time items or items for which market conditions play a significant role in the acquisition price. The following list of non-construction activities is illustrative rather than exhaustive:

- Procurement of rails, ties, and other specialized equipment
- The procurement of commodities
- Demolition

Grantees should contact their FTA Regional Office for a determination of pre-award authority for activities that are not listed here but meet the intent described above.

Because Small Starts projects are not subject to approval into a final design phase, they must complete the NEPA requirements or obtain a Letter of No Prejudice (LONP) for the following activities to remain eligible for reimbursement or as credit toward local match:

- Procurement of rails, ties, and other specialized equipment
- The procurement of commodities
- Demolition

FTA reminds project sponsors and the public that local funds expended by the project sponsor pursuant to and after the date of the pre-award authority are eligible for reimbursement or as credit toward local match only if FTA later makes a grant or grant amendment for the project. Local funds expended by the project sponsor prior to the date of the pre-award authority are not eligible for credit toward local match or reimbursement.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The aforementioned automatic pre-award authority provisions reduce the need for LONPs. FTA will still consider LONPs for activities not covered by automatic pre-award authority. As a change in administrative practice, FTA will, following the completion of the requirements under NEPA, expedite the issuance of LONPs, when appropriate, by no longer performing a detailed review of the cost and scope of the request in every instance. Rather, a limited review will be performed in those cases that are of a more routine nature, especially those involving an experienced sponsor.

Before incurring costs for a project not covered by automatic pre-award authority, the project sponsor must first submit a written request for an LONP, accompanied by adequate information and justification, to the appropriate regional office and obtain written approval from FTA. Please refer to the following links:

http://www.fta.dot.gov/12304_9067.html

http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/2009_Additional_New_Starts_Final_Guidance_FRN.pdf

FTA approval of an LONP for a New Starts or Small Starts project is determined on a case-by-case basis. Federal funding for a New or Small Starts project is not implied or guaranteed by an LONP.

Specifically, when requesting an LONP, the applicant shall provide sufficient information to allow FTA to consider the following items:

- a. Description of the activities to be covered by the LONP.
- b. Justification for advancing the identified activities. The justification should include an accurate assessment of the consequences to the project scope, schedule, and budget should the LONP not be approved.
- c. Allocated level of risk and contingency for the activity requested.
- d. Status of procurement progress, including, if appropriate, submittal of bids for the activities covered by the LONP.
- e. Strength of the capital and operating financial plan for the New Starts project and the future transit system.
- f. Adequacy of the Project Management Plan.
- g. Resolution of any readiness issues that would affect the project, such as land acquisition and technical capacity to carry out the project.

These policy and procedural matters have ramifications. First, an LONP is not an indication by FTA that the project is a promising candidate for either an FFGA or PCGA. Second, the project sponsor assumes virtually all risks. LONPs allow a project sponsor to incur costs using non-federal resources, with the understanding that the costs incurred subsequent to the issuance of the LONP may be reimbursable as eligible expenses or eligible as credit toward the local match only if FTA approves the project for funding at a later date. Federal funding is not implied or guaranteed by an LONP. This level of FTA oversight has expedited the delivery of New Starts and Small Starts projects, but also requires diligence on the part of project sponsors to ensure that public funds are expended wisely.

In addition to the above processes, the potential grantee should be aware that the FTA will conduct its own assessment of the financial capacity of grant applicants through [Financial Management Oversight](#). [Ref. 2-6]

2.1.2 Capital Projects Not Classified as Major Capital Projects

The following subsections describe types of transit capital projects that are not considered MCPs and are therefore not automatically subject to continuous FTA oversight and PMO involvement. Despite the absence of PMO oversight of these projects, grantees should consider the unique project requirements and must design an appropriate project management process using the principles described in the **Guidelines**. Many of these projects will involve modifications to an existing transit system, the continuing operation of which must be carefully considered during planning, design, construction, and start-up. Such projects must also be included in the Regional Transportation Plan (RTP), the Transportation Improvement Program (TIP), and the Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP). The Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act (ISTEA) requires the development of a Public Transportation Facilities and Equipment Management System (PTMS) to assist in project identification and prioritization by describing the conditions and costs of existing facilities, equipment, and rolling stock; by producing schedules for major maintenance or replacement, and by providing estimated replacement costs (see the Transportation Research Board. *“Guidelines for Development of Public Transportation Facilities and Equipment Management Systems”*. TCRP Report 5. National Academy Press, Washington D.C. 1995). These projects will progress through the same phases as shown in Figure 2-1 for NSPs, except that an Alternatives Analysis (AA) is not required and that the environmental documentation required by the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) may be less than a full Environmental Impact Statement (EIS).

FTA capital funding is provided through Section 5309 for fixed guideway modernization, bus, and bus-related projects. Other capital funding sources include the Urbanized Area Formula Program (Section 5307), Non-Urbanized Area Formula Program (Section 5311), and Flexible Funding Transfers. Additional discussion of funding sources is provided in Section 2.2.8.

2.1.2.1 Fixed Guideway Modernization

Fixed guideway modernization is the process of implementing capital improvements to maintain existing fixed guideway systems in a “state of good repair” (or SGR) to provide efficient and effective service. Projects can involve a variety of elements related to track, structures, stations, traction power substations and distribution, signals, communications, yards, and shops. Except in situations where the modernization is minor, all changes in facilities’ design or location should include a preliminary hazards analysis (PHA) and a threat vulnerability analysis (TVA) prior to final design (FD) and the development of construction bid requirements.

The asset management process is vital to effective maintenance of a fixed guideway system. More information on this transit asset management topic may be found in the

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

USDOT/FTA report "[Transit Asset Management Practices, A National and International Review](#)", dated June 2010. [Ref. 2-7]

2.1.2.2 Bus Maintenance Facilities

The construction of a completely new, or undertaking a major modernization of an existing, bus maintenance facility can be a complex undertaking due to the desire to organize and optimize the bus operating and maintenance processes to produce maximum efficiency. For new facilities, the site acquisition and development process can be difficult because of the perceived negative impacts of such a facility. The FTA Construction Project Management Handbook was developed and updated to assist in guiding grantees in the development and construction of such facilities. The transit asset management process (as discussed above) is applicable to all bus facilities, inclusive of fixed transit stops, transfer facilities, etc.

2.1.2.3 Vehicle Procurements

Rail system vehicle procurements are most often accomplished in conjunction with a new start or a major extension; the exception is for the replacement of aging railcars or overhauling them to extend their useful life. For larger fixed guideway systems, replacement can be a significant undertaking costing hundreds of millions of dollars and, at the discretion of the Administrator, warranting FTA oversight. Bus system vehicle replacements are a more routine process due to the much shorter life expectancy of the vehicles, resulting in more frequent procurement and less likely FTA oversight.

FTA requires that a Fleet Management Plan (FMP) be prepared (New Starts) or updated for existing transit agencies for all bus and rail systems in support of NSPs. The FMP is intended to ensure that grantee has presented a sound basis and an accurate estimation of Peak Vehicle Requirements (PVR) and Operating Spares Ratio (OSR) for the fleet. While specifics of development of PVR and OSR for bus fleets are less formal, for rail fleets FTA Circular 9030 states:

"An operator of a rail system must have in its file available upon request by FTA a fleet management plan that addresses operating policies (level of service requirements, train failure definitions and actions); peak vehicle requirements (service period and make-up, e.g., standby trains); maintenance and overhaul program (scheduled, unscheduled, and overhaul); system and service expansions; rail car procurements and related schedules; and spare ratio justifications."

Each plan should consider a minimum time frame of 10 years from the date of the initial analysis. Plans should include:

- An Introduction
- A Definition of Terms
- A Description of the Existing System

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Any Future Expansion Plans
- Demand Forecasting for Revenue Vehicles: 1) Determine peak passenger demand; 2) Define and adopt passenger load standards and calculate load factors; 3) Determine vehicle run times; 4) Calculate the number of cars required during peak periods; 5) Establish PVR; 6) Determine use of any gap or ready reserve trains; 7) Calculate number of spare rail cars required; and 8) Determine total fleet demand and spare ratio
- Plans, inclusive of strategic, administrative and technical means and methods for reducing operating costs and increasing vehicles service reliability
- The grantee's reliability program, past performance and plans to improve vehicles reliability and operations efficiencies
- Section on plans for improvements in the utilization of assets
- Report on vehicles reliability such as Mean Distance Between Failures (MDBF). References to the performance of various vehicles in the fleet should be reported in the FMP
- Introduce the concept of "design for maintenance"; require the car builder to design quick-disconnects to drop a truck of a railcar in 2 hours or replace an air-conditioning unit in an hour

Updates should be performed upon any major changes to the fleet operation. For grantees progressing through the project phases from preliminary engineering through final design and implementation, additional substantive detail should be included in the FMP as appropriate.

2.1.2.3.1 Transit Vehicles Procurement:

All agency vehicle procurements are to be performed in conformance with applicable regulations and guidance, and must ensure compliance with vehicle specifications, system design criteria, industry "best practices" and manufacturing approaches, etc. to meet vehicle program requirements.

FTA encourages grantees to procure vehicles of existing "proven" designs and/or combine their vehicle procurements with other agencies for economies of scale in sharing the upfront design and development costs.

Grantees' procurements of road and rail vehicles should ensure that the vehicles being procured:

- Meet the agency's intended use and satisfy the transit system ridership projections and objectives
- Represent sustained performance and "life cycle cost" for the product to be selected
- Meet the regulatory, mandated requirements; including ADA, FMVSS, etc.
- Include the "best value" while incorporating appropriate technologies to provide for:
 - Safety and Security

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Emergency evacuation, tools and First Aid kits that could include Heart Defibrillators
- Vehicle carbody material preferences (Stainless or Carbon Steels, Aluminum, or Composites)
- Traction power, Hybrids, Propulsion and Automatic Controls
- Quality Standards and Controls
- Passenger comforts and amenities
- Workmanship
- Economy of Operation
- Design for vehicle minimum life expectancy (25 years for rail vehicles, 5 to 12 years for buses, depending on their size and design; and appropriate vehicle life for ferries and other vehicles not specifically identified by FTA). (see FTA Circular 9300.1B)
 - Weight control and balance
 - Reliability
 - Maintainability including targets to perform selected maintenance tasks in specified time.
 - Interchangeability
 - Suitability for the purpose intended

2.1.2.3.2 Regulatory References

Vehicle Specifications should provide the clear understanding of the agency's intent dependent upon the procurement methodology chosen. The Vehicles should be designed and built to comply with all applicable laws, regulations, standards, and recommended practices of the following agencies and organizations:

- US Department of Transportation (USDOT)
- Federal Railroad Administration (FRA)
- Federal Transit Administration (FTA)
- Department of Homeland Security (DHS) / Transportation Security Administration (TSA)
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- US Public Health Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
- American Public Transportation Association (APTA)
- State and other local jurisdictions
- Association of American Railroads (AAR).
- Applicable Code of Federal regulations (FAR), including but not limited to Buy America Requirements including final assembly facilities defined by [49 CFR Parts 661](#) and [663](#). [Ref. 2-8 and 2-9]

The following are the principal, but by no means the only, references to Federal legislation, regulation and guidance by which the grantee's procurement is governed:

- Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR)
- 49 CFR 663 governing Buy America Audits

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- [49 CFR Parts 27, 37 & 38](#): U.S. Department of Transportation regulations implementing the transportation provisions of the ADA. [Ref. 2-10, 2-11, and 2-12]
- The Department of Transportation issued [Disability Law Guidance, Full-Length, Level Boarding Platforms in New Commuter and Intercity Rail Stations on September 1, 2005](#). [Ref. 2-13]
- [FTA Circular C4220-1F Third Party Contracting Guidance](#): This Circular covers procurement practices allowable under Federal Regulation for sub-contracting by Federal grantees, and summarizes the impact of Federal Transit Laws, Acquisition Laws, Common Grant Rules, Executive Orders, and SAFETEA-LU on third party grantees. [Ref. 2-14]
- Other federal regulations (such as regulations governing Interstate Commerce) and state regulations.
- [FTA's Best Practices Procurement](#) – BPPM. The BPPM is a comprehensive guide regarding oversight of transit procurements. [Ref. 2-15]

2.1.2.3.3 Vehicle Procurement Deliverables

Through the vehicle procurement contract, the grantee must obtain and provide supporting information to demonstrate through analysis and testing, including proof of design, maintainability, safety, security, serviceability, reliability, configuration control and management.

Dependent upon the type of vehicles being procured, typical processes include needs analysis, industry surveys, cost estimates, schedule preparation, performance and design criteria, specification preparation, solicitation, contract award and management, conceptual design, preliminary design, final design, first article inspection, manufacture, testing, delivery and commissioning, etc.

Grantee deliverables for FTA review under 49 U.S.C. 5325, 18 CFR 18.36(i), and 49 CFR 633.17 include:

- Environmental Document, EPA exhaust emission and smoke / fire requirements
- Project Description - Grant Application
- Project Specifications
- List of Drawings and supporting information on analysis and testing, including proof of design, maintainability, safety, serviceability, reliability, configuration control, and management
- Quality Assurance and Quality Control Plan for Vehicles
- Schedule, issues potentially impacting schedule, and issues actually impacting schedule
- Vehicle safety issues including:
 - Applicable structural strength and energy absorption for ends, sides and rollover resistance
 - Avoiding single point failures of safety critical components of the vehicle
- Vehicle reliability, availability, and maintainability, including the frequency of failure, expressed as failures per hour or failures per mile

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Issues impacting vehicle operability, including faulty or unreliable vehicle designs or systems
- Known component or material deficiencies and availability of replacement parts
- Testing Program Plan, including test procedure lists for components, systems, vehicles and trains:
 - Weld and assembly testing
 - Carbody structural testing
 - Truck structural dynamic fatigue testing
 - Water tightness testing
 - Systems and components factory testing
 - HVAC Climate Room testing
 - Floor fire resistance and material & components heat release rates
 - Vehicle functional testing
 - Performance test on track

Typical contractual requirements from the vehicle designer include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Evaluation of ADA compliance issues
- Evaluation of accessibility and maintainability of components and assemblies
- Review of issues involving human factors/ergonomics and safety / emergency concerns. Preparation of Ergonomic Analysis and Report for seating and interior arrangement
- Integration of materials, finishes, colors, and arrangements
- Preparation of exterior markings and signage
- Preparation of interior markings and signage
- Selection and presentation of interior materials, lighting, finishes, furnishings, and colors
- Construction of mock-ups required to resolve packaging, spaces, human factor/ergonomics, and ADA issues
- Fire Safety Analysis
- Development of test procedures and conducting tests

Typical final design package shall include, as applicable, the following information:

- System design implementation:
 - system functional description (system, vehicle and train levels)
 - block diagrams (system, vehicle and train levels)
 - system schematics (interconnection diagram)
 - system assembly drawings
 - component and material data sheets
 - definition and list of characteristics for system, vehicle and train interfaces
 - system installation, maintenance access and special tool drawings
 - Manufacturing scheme (who, what, where, when, and how)
- Weight schedule and balance requirements:
 - calculated/actual weights broken down to system component level
- Software Documentation:

- software requirements specification
- software requirements traceability matrix
- software design description
- software verification and validation report
- Reliability, Accessibility, Maintainability and System Safety:
 - reliability prediction analysis with support information
 - maintainability analysis (preventative and corrective)
 - reliability summary
 - safety analysis and traceability matrix
 - emergency evacuations, provisions and tools
 - lowest removal unit list
 - Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI) control plan and shielding of electronic components
 - fire safety analysis and test plan

Grantees are required to follow FTA rules for such items as Buy America requirements and capital leasing, as well as meet other vehicle procurement guidelines.

2.1.2.3.4 Buy America Requirements for Revenue Service Vehicles

A grantee purchasing vehicles to carry passengers in revenue service must ensure that a pre-award audit as described in 49 CFR 663.21 is complete before the entering into a formal contract for the purchase of the vehicles. Similarly, a grantee purchasing revenue service vehicles must also ensure that a post-delivery audit as prescribed in 49 CFR 663.31 is complete before the title to the rolling stock is transferred to the grantee.

The minimum requirements for final assembly differ between bus and rail vehicles. 49 CFR 661.11(r) defines “final assembly” as “the creation of the end product from different elements brought together for that purpose through the application of manufacturing processes.”

The following paragraphs delineate the final assembly differences for bus and rail vehicles:

- (1) Bus: Most heavy duty transit bus manufacturers use a two-stage manufacturing process in which buses are partially built abroad and then assembled in the U.S. FTA no longer requires that bus manufacturers install certain components and subcomponents in the U.S. FTA allows installations abroad which have been shown to be helpful in maintaining the structural integrity of bus frames shipped to the U.S. FTA recognizes foreign assembly of doors, windows, axles and/or wheels, brakes and brake subcomponents may occur prior to shipment to the U.S. for final assembly.
- (2) Rail: For rail vehicles, the domestic final assembly operations, at a minimum, must include the installation and interconnection of propulsion control and cooling equipment, brake equipment, power sources for auxiliaries and

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

controls, HVAC, communications equipment, bogie/truck assemblies (including axles, frames, motors, suspension, and wheels), and factory functional tests on the vehicles in order to qualify for Buy America.

The following are the principal, but by no means the only, references to Federal legislation, regulation and guidance:

- **United States Code**
 - 49 U.S.C. Chapter 53, specifically, Section 5323(j)
- **Regulations**
 - Buy America Requirements, 49 C.F.R. Part 661
 - Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits, 49 C.F.R. Part 663
- **Guidance**
 - FTA's Buy America Handbooks relative to [Buy America: Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits/Reviews](#). [Ref. 2-16]

2.1.2.3.5 Pre-Award Audits Requirements for Bus & Rail Buy America

The grantee must certify through Pre-Award audits that the procurement of new revenue service buses, rail vehicles, and vans, using FTA appropriated funds, is Buy America compliant.

Failure to comply with Buy America requirements can put the grantee's FTA grant in jeopardy.

Pre-award audits are required before a grantee can enter into a formal contract for the purchase of such rolling stock with a manufacturer. The Pre-Award review period begins when the grantee issues the solicitation and ends when the grantee signs a formal contract with the selected manufacturer.

The following certifications are required for Bus Projects:

- Buy America certification, verifying 60% domestic component value for bus
- Confirmation that final assembly of buses will take place in the United States;
- Purchaser's Requirements certification
- Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) certification
- The grantee's compliance with the above requirements as well as those requirements stipulated on the FTA's website at http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12921_5429.html. [Ref. 2-17]

For Rail projects, the following certifications are required:

- Buy America certification, verifying that rail vehicles will contain a minimum of 60% components by cost
- Final assembly of the rail vehicles will take place in the U.S
- Purchaser's Requirements certification
- Grantee's compliance with the above requirements as well as those requirements stipulated on the FTA's website at http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/5444.html. [Ref. 2-18]

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The grantee's certifications and supporting documents are subject to FTA reviews with all due diligence. Attention shall be focused on ensuring that the grantee's Buy America team has "drilled down" to the lowest level required, in order to demonstrate that the 60% rule has been followed and the content claimed is valid.

The grantee must ensure that the vehicle component manufacturing requirements are or were met, and identify instances where there may be doubt regarding a vehicle's Buy America compliance – e.g., where major sub-assemblies of a component are made out-of country but incorporated during the domestic vehicle final assembly.

(1) Pre-Award Purchaser's Requirement - The grantee must verify that the manufacturer's bid specifications are in compliance with the grantee's solicitation specifications. Grantees are advised to consult the FTA Website (http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/08_Buy_America_TriennialGuidance_FY2011.pdf) for recent changes. [Ref. 2-19]

Furthermore, grantees are encouraged to include a requirement for an intermediate Buy America audit in the specification. The intermediate audit should occur at the midpoint of the production contract.

(2) Pre-Award FMVSS Requirements (for Bus and Van Procurements) – The grantee must obtain a letter from the vehicle manufacturer stating the information that is required for the FMVSS vehicle plaque to be provided.

2.1.2.3.6 Post Delivery Audit Requirements

The grantee must complete a Post-Delivery audit before a vehicle title is transferred from the manufacturer to the grantee. Certifications must be kept in the grantee's files for future FTA reviews.

The certifications required for Bus and Van projects are:

- Post-Delivery Buy America certification;
- Post-Delivery Purchaser's Requirements certification;
- Post-Delivery FMVSS certification.
- Verification of compliance with requirements stipulated on the FTA website at http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12921_5430.html. [Ref. 2-20]

For Rail projects, the required certifications are:

- Post-Delivery Buy America certification;
- Post-Delivery Purchaser's Requirements certification.
- Verification of compliance with requirements stipulated on the FTA website at http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/5446.html. [Ref. 2-21]

The Buy America, Purchaser's Requirements, and the FMVSS certifications are similar to the reviews completed for Pre-Delivery certifications, except that for Post Delivery,

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

the review must contain *actual data* instead of the estimated data used in Pre-Award reviews.

For the Rail Vehicle Post-Delivery Purchaser's certification, the grantee that is purchasing any number of rail vehicles must certify that:

- (1) An on-site inspector has performed complete visual inspections and performance tests to demonstrate that the vehicles meet the contract specifications.
- (2) A resident inspector was on-site in the manufacturing facility, during the final assembly period and has (a) monitored the final assembly process, (b) observed that the components assembled on each vehicle are of the same sources as used in the Buy America audits, and (c) completed a final report describing the construction activities and explaining how the construction and operation of the rail vehicles meet the contract specifications.

2.1.2.4 Multimodal Transfer Facilities

Multimodal transfer facilities, after maintenance facilities and new vehicles, are among the most significant capital projects related to bus systems. They require project planning, environmental review, and project management to assure their effective implementation. All changes in facilities' design or location should include PHAs and TVAs prior to final design and the development of construction bid requirements. Additionally, all plans should be reviewed for conformance with principles of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) and Situational Crime Prevention (SCP) to as part of the planning and review process to minimize costs and community resistance to new or enlarged facilities.

2.1.2.5 Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) Projects

FTA is promoting the benefits of BRT. The scopes of some BRT projects exceed those of previous FTA bus fixed guideway initiatives related to busways and HOV lanes, and may be designated NS Projects that would require an FFGA. It is also possible to advance BRT system elements as incremental improvements to bus routes. These could include projects to improve the exclusivity or priority of transit operations, techniques to reduce the stop dwell time, and other enhancements to improve the efficiency and productivity of the bus system. Principles of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) and Situational Crime Prevention (SCP) should be considered in design and placement of stops, shelters, and equipment selected to monitor bus movements.

2.1.2.6 New Technology Procurements

While many procurements to apply new technology (including Intelligent Transportation Systems – ITS) to existing transit systems may be relatively small compared to other capital projects, they are usually complex and require special planning and management attention to assure their effective implementation. These can include

advanced signal, fleet management, communications, fare media, information processing, and security systems that enhance the performance and efficiency of public transit operating and maintenance functions.

2.2 Project Development Elements of Sound Transportation Planning

FTA provides planning funds for Metropolitan Planning Organizations and State Departments of Transportation for Metropolitan Planning required under Section 5303 and Statewide Planning required under Sections 5304 and 5305.

The earliest phase in project development is Planning, during which the project scope is initially defined. In this phase, a broad range of issues are considered, including service parameters, community needs, ROW requirements, environmental impacts and project delivery options. Further conceptual planning will occur during Alternatives Analysis (AA), or in other long or short range studies that consider transit development. Following are descriptions of the various activities that define transit project concepts as early as the Planning phase, even though they may be refined in subsequent phases.

2.2.1 Systems Planning

The codification of the laws authorizing the Federal Transit Program begins by expressing the Congressional finding that "It is in the national interest to encourage and promote the safe and efficient management, operation, and development of surface transportation systems that will serve the mobility needs of people and freight and foster economic growth and development within and between States and urbanized areas, while minimizing transportation-related fuel consumption and air pollution through metropolitan and statewide transportation planning processes", Title 49, U.S. Code, Chapter 53, Section 5303. To implement this policy, each Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO), in cooperation with the state(s) and public transit operators within its jurisdiction, is required to develop transportation plans and programs for its urbanized area(s) within the state(s). Both the FTA and the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) provide funds to states that are in turn provided to MPOs to carry out the transportation planning process. The FTA and FHWA, to achieve consistency in their planning requirements, have also issued joint regulations regarding transportation planning:

- Joint FHWA/FTA regulations, "Planning Assistance and Standards," [23 CFR 450](#) and [49 CFR 613](#) (specifically Subpart B, "Statewide Transportation Planning," and Subpart C, "Metropolitan Transportation Planning and Programming") [Ref. 2-22 and 2-23]
- Joint FHWA/FTA regulations, "Management and Monitoring Systems," [23 CFR 500](#) and [49 CFR 614](#) [Ref. 2-24 and 2-25].

FTA and FHWA have also established the "Transportation Planning Capacity Building" program to deliver products and services that provide information, training, and technical assistance to the transportation professionals responsible for planning for the capital, operating, and maintenance needs of our nation's surface transportation system. The TPCB website (<http://www.planning.dot.gov/default.asp>) [Ref. 2-26] is a

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

one-stop clearinghouse for state-of-the-practice transportation planning information and resources. On this website, you will find planning news and events, regulations, policies, training information, technical resources, and peer exchange reports.

Each state and MPO is required to develop and periodically update a long-range transportation plan covering a forecast period of at least 20 years. The state plan must integrate each metropolitan long-range transportation plan into the larger, consistent plan and must also plan for areas not covered by MPOs in the state. These long-range transportation plans must address all NSP and other major facilities projects, including those earmarked in Federal authorizing legislation.

This metropolitan transportation planning process should develop a regional, multi-modal transportation plan with a 20-year horizon. This plan, among other things, must:

- Identify the projected transportation demand in the area over the period covered by the plan.
- Identify adopted congestion management strategies, including high occupancy vehicle (HOV) treatments and Public Transportation Facilities and Equipment Management System (PTMS) improvements to preserve and make the most efficient use of the existing transportation system (including requirements for operational improvements, as well as operations, maintenance, modernization, and rehabilitation of existing and future transit facilities). (See 23 CFR 500.110, as enacted by the Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991.)
- Quantify the capital investment necessary to demonstrate a systematic approach in addressing current and future transportation demand and to relieve vehicular congestion and enhance the mobility of people and goods.
- Include design concept and scope descriptions of all existing and proposed transportation facilities in sufficient detail to permit determinations under the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Conformity Regulations for metropolitan areas which do not meet air quality standards (known as non-attainment areas or NAA) or in areas which have recently attained such standards (known as maintenance areas). In all areas, all proposed improvements should be described in sufficient detail to develop cost estimates.
- Reflect consideration of the area's long-range land use plan, development objectives, and social and environmental goals.

In addition, 23 CFR 450.306 identified eight factors for planning processes to consider in identifying projects for inclusion in plans and programs:

- Support the economic vitality of the metropolitan area, especially by enabling global competitiveness, productivity, and efficiency
- Increase the safety of the transportation system for motorized and non-motorized users
- Increase the security of the transportation system for motorized and non-motorized users
- Increase accessibility and mobility of people and freight

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Protect and enhance the environment, promote energy conservation, improve the quality of life, and promote consistency between transportation improvements and State and local planned growth and economic development patterns
- Enhance the integration and connectivity of the transportation system, across and between modes, for people and freight
- Promote efficient system management and operation
- Emphasize the preservation of the existing transportation system

The metropolitan transportation planning process defines future demand forecasts on the public transit system. This information is needed to determine performance and capacity requirements of the future transit system. For bus systems, future service requirements would be needed to determine numbers and types of vehicles that will need to be acquired as well as the number, size, and location of maintenance and storage facilities. For rail modernization, future demand forecasts are needed to analyze and size all of the subsystems, such as the system headway requirements used to design control and communications systems.

The need for new starts or other means to increase capacity can be determined once the metropolitan transportation planning process has identified transportation demand, congestion problems, land use and development plans, and social and environmental goals. Local officials can then select and rank competing corridors in order of priority for improvement or new development. An AA can be conducted regarding each corridor among those most in need of improvement to first consider the transportation problems, alternative solutions, and likely costs and benefits of those alternatives, and then to identify a preferred solution.

In planning and programming public transit improvements, consideration must be given to the region's financial capacity to modernize, operate, and maintain its existing transit system. This consideration becomes significant in those regions that have inadequate levels of local financing for modernization of their existing transit infrastructure. Planning studies that address long-term modernization needs can lead to the establishment of enhanced local funding resources or recommendations to reduce the magnitude of the existing system.

An important output of the metropolitan transportation planning process is the Transportation Improvement Program (TIP). The TIPs for the various metropolitan areas throughout the state should then be incorporated into a Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP). The TIP should include a list of all transportation projects proposed for funding over the next three years. As the TIP must be financially constrained by year, it represents a prioritized listing of the area's transportation investments.

Additional guidance regarding the relationship between Capital Program grants and the metropolitan and statewide planning process is provided in [FTA Circular 9300.1B, Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions](#), Appendix A [Ref. 2-27].

2.2.2 Alternatives Analysis

When the metropolitan transportation planning process identifies the need for a major transportation investment, it may then undertake an Alternatives Analysis (AA). The AA process includes what was previously known as a Major Investment Study (MIS). At the discretion of local authorities, the AA may include the undertaking of a Draft EIS (DEIS) or Environmental Assessment (EA).

The AA evaluates an appropriate number of mode and alignment alternatives for addressing a transportation problem. When decision-makers at the state or local level wish to initiate an AA, the specific scope should be determined cooperatively by the MPO, the state DOT, public transit operators, environmental, resource, and permit agencies, local officials, the FHWA, the FTA, and any other agencies that may be impacted by the proposed scope being developed. This cooperative process will determine the range of alternatives to be studied (including alternative modes, technologies, and generalized alignments), the non-capital or low capital intensive options, and the policies and methods to be employed in the study.

The alternatives evaluated in the AA must include a No-Build alternative, a Transportation System Management (TSM) alternative, and an appropriate number of build alternatives. If the local sponsors and FTA agree it is appropriate, the No-Build alternative may also serve as the baseline alternative. The AA develops information on the benefits, costs, and impacts of these alternative strategies.

Factors that must be considered in the AA include mobility improvements, social, economic, and environmental effects, safety, security of the facilities and operating environment, operating efficiencies, land use, economic development, financing, and energy consumption. The AA process is concluded with the formal adoption of a Locally Preferred Alternative (LPA), which must be one of the alternatives analyzed in the AA process, and its inclusion in the MPO's financially constrained long-range regional transportation plan.

Public review and participation is a vital part of an AA. The work conducted in an AA is performed locally by the transit operator, MPO, and agencies of municipal and state government working in collaboration to attain a consensus on an LPA. In addition, environmental agencies at all levels and local officials should be involved. A local lead grantee must be defined and the roles and responsibilities the grantee and the other agencies and consultants clearly established. Participating local and state agencies are responsible for ensuring that the study is conducted in a technically sound manner. FTA and FHWA are also participants in the process, along with other affected agencies such as U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD), and other community development and housing agencies.

2.2.3 Project Management Plan (PMP)

The Project Management Plan (PMP), is the overarching documentation of the project that essentially spans the project period commencing no later than the completion of the Alternatives Analysis Phase (AA Phase) and continuing through the close-out of the planned capital grant for the project, be that a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) grant or any other grant made through the various available capital grant programs of FTA. The PMP will naturally be an evolving document, to be used by the grantee to establish and disseminate its policies and practices for governing all requisite project activities. It will include procedures for grantee management and staff (and all third parties as applicable to project need and/or implementation techniques) that best ensure that performance is (qualitatively and quantitatively) measurable through sound design, engineering and comparable industry practices that are readily identifiable, credible and consistently applied.

The PMP will identify specific administrative and technical procedural documents that the grantee will appropriately develop to implement the policies, practices and approaches necessary for project success as envisioned and contracted through FTA grants.

Project management concepts are developed initially during the AA and should be documented in the Project Management Plan (PMP). FTA requirements for the PMP are defined in Section 49 USC 5327 and [49 CFR 633](#) [Ref. 2-28]. The PMP defines the scope of project implementation starting at least in PE, and the policies for ensuring the sound, risk-informed, performance-based management and control of all project activities. The PMP should also adhere to the [FTA Grant Management Requirements, FTA Circular 5010.1D](#) [Ref. 2-29].

The FTA requires that grantees undertaking an MCP must submit a PMP for FTA's review and approval prior to PE (see Figure 2-1) and before advancing to subsequent project phases. Although FTA has some discretion in determining which capital projects are considered major, major projects are generally defined to include the construction of a new fixed guideway segment, extension of an existing fixed guideway, or modernization of an existing fixed guideway system. Per 49 USC 5327, the grantee's PMP include as a minimum:

- #1 *adequate recipient staff organization, complete with well-defined reporting relationships, statement of functional relationships, job descriptions, and job qualifications*
- #2 *a budget covering the project management organization, appropriate consultants, property acquisition, utility relocation, systems demonstration staff, audits, and such miscellaneous payments as the recipient may be prepared to justify*
- #3 *a construction schedule*
- #4 *a document control procedure and record-keeping system*

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- ☑ #5 *a change order procedure which includes a documented, systematic approach to the handling of construction change orders*
- ☑ #6 *a description of organizational structures, managerial/technical skills, and staffing levels required throughout the construction phase*
- ☑ #7 *quality control (QC) and quality assurance (QA) programs which define functions, procedures, and responsibilities for construction and for system installation and integration of system components*
- ☑ #8 *materials testing policies and procedures*
- ☑ #9 *internal plan implementation and reporting requirements*
- ☑ #10 *criteria and procedures to be used for testing the operational system or its major components*
- ☑ #11 *periodic updates of the plan, especially related to project budget and project schedule, financing, ridership estimates, and the status of local efforts to enhance ridership where ridership estimates partly depend on the success of those efforts*
- ☑ #12 *the recipient's commitment to make a monthly submission of project budget and project schedule to the Secretary*
- ☑ #13 *safety and security management {This subsection added by The Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users, or SAFETEA-LU, P.L. 109-59.}*

The PMP should demonstrate that all phases of the project have been thoroughly considered, giving thought to the methods to be used to execute the project, and the interfaces that will be created among various participants. The PMP should define the objectives of the project, the methods and resources proposed to meet those objectives, the overall risk-informed, performance-based management approach including the technical and administrative means and methods for project control, and the responsibilities, authorities, and measures to robustly gauge the performance for all parties involved.

Table 2-1 provides an example of a PMP outline. This outline is based on a traditional design-bid-build procurement approach. The components would be modified under most alternative delivery approaches. The PMP should be a “controlled document”, i.e., each version should be developed and approved under the project document control and configuration management policy and procedures, with distribution of revisions accurately handled to ensure requisite parties have the latest revision. As indicated, many required elements of a PMP will likely be developed as separate documents, referenced in the PMP with descriptive material on guiding policies, authorities, responsibilities, updating, etc. These referenced documents, too, should be controlled documents.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The PMP should recognize the role of FTA in the oversight and independent review of the project. PMO contractors are assigned by FTA to MCPs as an extension of the regional office staff to monitor and assess the technical aspects of the project. FTA also has Financial Management Oversight (FMO) contractors available to review issues of finance and accounting related to a grantee or a project, including specific methods and systems. These resources should be utilized as appropriate by the grantee's project team.

The PMP, while submitted initially prior to entering the PE Phase, is intended to be a dynamic document that should be expanded and updated as necessary throughout project implementation. Updates should include, but should not be limited to, project budget, project schedule, financing, ridership estimates, and, where applicable, the status of local efforts to enhance ridership when estimates are contingent upon the success of such efforts. The PMP should be updated, as a minimum, prior to advancing into the Final Design and Construction phases. FTA suggests that for large multi-segment projects, a program PMP be developed and modified for each phase of each major segment. The modified PMP should reflect the unique characteristics of each segment/phase, such as the exact scope of work and specific resources, e.g., project staff, budget, and schedule.

The issue of standards for design should be addressed in the PMP. Most particularly is the adoption of policy and management assurance to define and utilize the array of engineering, architectural, safety/security, operations, and maintenance industry standards (and related codes) which are applicable to the project and technologies being considered. The details may often be presented in a separate Design Criteria document that would include detailed descriptions of the project features and succinct definitions of its operational parameters. Requirements of any funding agencies for the use of the metric system should be determined as part of the grant management process.

The PMP should address the need for environmental reviews and for adhering to the resulting mitigation measures in the design and construction phases. The need to address hazards and threats through formal PHAs and TVAs should also be addressed, as should the potential requirements for developing health and safety plans.

Even when a PMP is not formally required by FTA, it can still be a very useful project management tool for non-MCPs, e.g., rail modernization, bus facilities, vehicles, and ITS projects. With or without the development of a PMP, the project management function must be well defined and it must be continuous. The grantee should have project management policies and procedures and an adequate staff of professionals skilled in but not limited to, project controls, QA/QC, cost estimation, scheduling, procurement, transit operations, and public participation. FTA may review this capability periodically through its Triennial Review process.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Table 2-1. Project Management Plan Outline

<p>1. Project Management Plan Overview</p> <p>1.1. Project Description, Definition and Background</p> <p>1.2. Legal and Financing Authority and Requirements</p> <p>2. Organization and Staffing</p> <p>2.1. Project Engineering Organizational Charts (Grantee, 3rd Party, Consultants, etc.)</p> <p>2.2. Key Personnel (with resumes in an Appendix)</p> <p>2.3. Force Account Plan</p> <p>2.4. Interfaces - Internal and External (Including Existing Transit Operations)</p> <p>2.5. Staffing Mobilization Plan (ALL Phases)</p> <p>2.6. Staff Training Plan (ALL Phases)</p> <p>2.7. Grantee Policies – Administrative, Financial, and Others Relevant to Project Delivery</p> <p>3. Project Management Control</p> <p>3.1. Functional and Technical Control – Strategic Risk-Informed and Performance-Based</p> <p>3.2. Project Technical Baseline and Design/Operational Criteria - Configuration , Budget/Cost, and Schedule Control</p> <p>3.3. Design reviews - Process and Approval Control, Including Design Services During Construction and Equipment Procurement Phases</p> <p>3.4. Quality Assurance/Quality Control Programs (ALL Phases)</p> <p>3.5. Safety & Security Program (ALL Phases)</p> <p>3.6. Project Budget and Cost Control</p> <p>3.6.1. Maintaining Baseline Project Budget</p> <p>3.6.2. Strategic Performance Metrics and Measurement – Cost Management Plan</p> <p>3.6.3. Escalation Factor Derivation and Application</p> <p>3.7. Maintaining Baseline Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS)</p> <p>3.7.1. Strategic Performance Metrics and Measurement – Schedule Management Plan</p> <p>3.7.2. Functional Schedules Management (Planning, Design, Real estate Program, Construction Contracts, Equipment & Materials Contracts, Activation Plan, 3rd Parties)</p> <p>3.8. Risk and Contingency Management – RCM Plan</p> <p>3.9. Contracting Techniques and Contract Package Plan (ALL Phases)Cost Allocation Plan</p> <p>3.10. Cost Accounting System and Reporting</p> <p>3.11. Grantee Force Account Plan</p> <p>3.12. Cash Management</p> <p>3.13. Change Control and Configuration Management</p> <p>3.14. Document Control</p> <p>3.15. Data Processing</p> <p>3.16. Public Relations</p> <p>3.17. Other Consulting Services</p> <p>3.18. Identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) Opportunities and DBE Plan Management</p> <p>4. Labor Relations and Policy</p> <p>4.1. Statutory and Regulatory Requirements</p> <p>4.2. State and Local Regulations</p> <p>4.3. Federal Requirements</p> <p>4.4. Wage and Hour Requirements</p> <p>4.5. Local Labor Conditions and No Strike Agreements</p> <p>4.6. Affirmative Action Plan</p> <p>5. Risk Insurance and Management</p> <p>5.1. Scope of Requirements</p> <p>5.2. Risk Identification – ALL Phases</p> <p>5.3. Evaluation of Insurance Alternatives</p> <p>5.4. Insurance Plan (For Professional Services, Construction, Equipment and Materials, Testing/Start-Up)</p> <p>5.5. Indemnification Agreements</p> <p>6. Environmental Assessment, Mitigation and Compliance (ALL Phases)</p> <p>6.1. NEPA Analyses</p> <p>6.2. NEPA and NEPA-Related Compliance</p> <p>6.3. Coordination with State & Local Stakeholders</p> <p>7. Procurement Management</p> <p>7.1. Policy and Procedures for Procurement Including Source Selection Procedures and Plan</p> <p>7.2. Procurement Plan</p> <p>7.3. Project Management Services</p> <p>7.4. Design Services</p> <p>7.5. Legal Services</p> <p>7.6. Appraisal Services and Other Real estate Acquisition and Relocation Services</p> <p>7.7. Construction and Equipment/Materials Contracts</p> <p>7.8. Construction Management</p> <p>8. Procurement of Materials and Equipment</p> <p>8.1. Procedure for Procurement of System-Wide Components and Equipment</p>	<p>8.2. Permanent Materials</p> <p>8.3. Construction Equipment</p> <p>8.4. System Components</p> <p>8.5. Rolling Stock</p> <p>8.6. Quality Assurance Requirements</p> <p>8.7. System and Equipment Test and Evaluation Plan</p> <p>8.8. Fleet Management Plan</p> <p>8.9. Reliability, Availability, Maintainability and Dependability</p> <p>9. Safety & Security Management</p> <p>9.1. Scope of Analysis and Design Criteria</p> <p>9.2. System Safety Program Plan</p> <p>9.3. Safety Certification</p> <p>9.4. Security Management</p> <p>9.5. Emergency Response and Preparedness</p> <p>9.6. Security Design and Operations Criteria</p> <p>9.7. Safety and Security Management Plan</p> <p>10. Design Management</p> <p>10.1. Standards for All Design & Submittals</p> <p>10.2. Design Responsibilities & Supervision</p> <p>10.3. Coordination – Internal & External</p> <p>10.4. Submittals: 30, 60,90, 100%, Bid Documents</p> <p>10.5. Design criteria: Baseline & Updating</p> <p>10.6. Design review Process</p> <p>10.6.1. Discipline</p> <p>10.6.2. Interdisciplinary</p> <p>10.6.3. 3rd Party for Permitting, Etc.</p> <p>10.7. Value Engineering</p> <p>10.8. Constructability Reviews</p> <p>10.9. Operations and Management (O&M) Considerations and Reviews</p> <p>10.9.1. Transit Capacity Analysis (All Elements)</p> <p>10.9.2. Life-Cycle Analysis</p> <p>10.9.3. Reliability, Availability, Maintainability, Dependability, and Safety Analyses</p> <p>10.10. Change Control</p> <p>10.11. Systems Integration</p> <p>10.12. Design Management Plan</p> <p>11. Rights-Of-Way Program Management</p> <p>11.1. Interfaces: Design and Construction</p> <p>11.2. Mapping and Property Descriptions</p> <p>11.3. Uniform Act Requirements Compliance</p> <p>11.4. Utilities (Public & Private)</p> <p>11.5. Appraisals</p> <p>11.5.1. Qualifications</p> <p>11.5.2. Scopes of Work</p> <p>11.5.3. Schedule & Deliverables</p> <p>11.6. Acquisition Plan</p> <p>11.7. Property Management Plan</p> <p>11.8. Relocation Plan</p> <p>11.9. Demolition</p> <p>11.10. Excess property Disposal</p> <p>11.11. Real estate Acquisition Management Plan (RAMP)</p> <p>12. Community Involvement</p> <p>12.1. Meetings with Community Organizations</p> <p>12.2. Interface with State and Local Agencies</p> <p>12.3. Public Hearings</p> <p>12.4. Media Interface</p> <p>13. Construction Program Management</p> <p>13.1. Responsibilities & Authorities</p> <p>13.2. Contract Administration</p> <p>13.2.1. Contractor Schedules & IMPS</p> <p>13.2.2. Contractor Payments</p> <p>13.2.3. Estimates to Complete</p> <p>13.3. Inspection and Acceptance</p> <p>13.4. Utilities Coordination</p> <p>13.5. Design Services During Construction</p> <p>13.6. VE Change Proposals</p> <p>13.7. Claims Avoidance & Change Control</p> <p>13.8. Close-Out</p> <p>13.9. Resident Engineer's Manual</p> <p>13.10. Inspector's Manual</p> <p>13.11. Construction Management Plan</p> <p>14. Pre-Revenue Testing and Start-Up</p> <p>14.1. Rail Activation Strategies and Plan</p> <p>14.2. Staffing, Mobilization & Training</p> <p>14.3. Integrated Testing and Safety Certification</p> <p>14.4. Revenue Operations Opening</p> <p>14.5. Warranty and Spare Parts: Compliance</p> <p>15. Conflict Resolution</p> <p>16. General Joint Development Program</p>
--	--

2.2.4 Rail Modernization Planning

No single set of FTA technical guidelines exists for the planning and prioritization of projects aimed at modernizing existing rail transit systems. FTA is, however, involved with an initiative referred to previously (Section 2.2.1) that builds on the Public Transportation Facilities & Equipment Management System (PTMS) work begun under the ISTEA legislation and now captured as a priority under the “State of Good Repair” (SGR) program.

Rail transit operators should establish a planning process suited to the specific needs of their transit systems and encourage an institutional environment to guide the modernization of existing facilities in a sound and cost-effective manner. The PTMS/SGR information will assist in project identification and prioritization by showing the condition and costs of existing facilities, equipment, and rolling stock by producing schedules for major maintenance or replacement, and by providing estimated replacement costs.

The planning of rail system modernization projects is best accomplished at the subsystem level for which the following categories are typical:

- Civil structures
- Track structures
- Stations
- Fare collection
- Elevators and escalators
- Railcars
- Traction power
- Electrical distribution
- Ventilation
- Train control
- Communication systems
- Vehicle maintenance and storage facilities and equipment

Subsystem planning involves assessment of condition, establishing modernization goals and performance specifications, performing economic trade-off analyses involving life cycle costing principles, and developing implementation priorities. Subsystem planning should include safety and security considerations for each category, particularly those that will involve outside construction or whose final design will be influenced by location, public access, or other factors that play a role in safety and security. For example, design of stations, choice of and placement of fare collection systems and/or gates or turnstiles, location of retail establishments, and placement of elevators and escalators all have safety and security ramifications.

Additionally, the need to perform some advanced engineering to support subsystem development may be associated with this process. For example, advanced engineering could involve analysis to determine capacity requirements of individual electrical substations and verification of the economic benefits of replacing remotely supervised

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

electro-mechanical substations with centrally controlled solid state equipment. Planning also should consider the effect of old, obsolete, and unreliable equipment on the performance of the overall transit system. In addition to purely economic benefits, analyses should consider service reliability and system maintainability. Analyses should also consider security during development, construction, and operations, particularly when designing stations, Fare Collection mechanisms, elevators and escalators, railcars, communications systems, and vehicle maintenance and storage facilities. In addition to the reference cited in Section 2.1.2.1, here are some additional references to assist with prioritization of modernization projects:

- ☞ In *Rail Modernization*, LTI Consultants, Inc. developed a cost-effectiveness methodology [Ref. 2-30].
- ☞ In addition, FTA sponsored a study which resulted in the report entitled: *Rail Modernization Planning: Review of Current Practice* [Ref. 2-31].

The latter study involved an investigation of the processes and techniques being used by most of the nation's largest rail transit systems. It also documented elements of the rail modernization planning process that were used, in varying degrees, by the transit planning and operating agencies to prioritize projects for advancement to subsequent phases, and it includes:

- Prescribing planning/programming requirements
- Establishing centralized planning organization/process
- Establishing goals/objectives
- Establishing quantitative performance goals
- Defining performance measures
- Assessing long-term modernization requirements
- Considering elimination of existing rail lines
- Planning new route(s) to complement existing system
- Establishing life cycle replacement policy
- Defining long-term financing requirements
- Estimating system-wide ridership and capacity requirements
- Developing subsystem plans and implementation priorities
- Performing systems engineering and analysis of alternatives
- Performing economic analyses of projects
- Predicting impact of project on performance measures
- Using a project rating system
- Using a senior management review committee
- Reviewing lessons learned

Depending on the degree to which the rail modernization project extends beyond the bounds of the existing system, environmental assessment may be required. See Section 2.2.7 for a discussion of environmental issues.

In addition, hazard and threat analyses may also be required. See Chapter 3 for a discussion on safety (hazard) and security (threat/vulnerability) issues.

2.2.5 Bus Maintenance Facility Planning

While more narrowly defined in scope and impact, bus maintenance facilities, nevertheless, require adequate planning to achieve their objectives in a cost-effective manner.

- ☞ FTA sponsored the development of *Bus Maintenance Facility Planning Guidelines* which can be used as a resource [Ref. 2-32].

Recognizing that planning for a new or modified bus maintenance facility requires engineering and economic analyses to support effective decision-making, the following ten-step process has been recommended:

- (1) Adopt a design year fleet size
- (2) Determine space adequacy
- (3) Determine structural adequacy
- (4) Determine alternatives (rehabilitation, new construction, expansion)
- (5) Sketch plans for adequately sized facilities
- (6) Estimate construction costs
- (7) Estimate cost of changes in non-revenue operating costs for each new site
- (8) Analyze facility optimization, locations, and route allocations (for multiple facility systems only)
- (9) Analyze engineering economics
- (10) Assess environmental issues

The above process should be fully documented in the grantee's Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP).

An assessment of environmental impacts may also be required. See Section 2.2.7 for a discussion of environmental issues. Following a local decision to implement a specific bus maintenance facility, PE can advance with FTA's concurrence and funding support.

The FTA Construction Project Management Handbook was developed to help guide grantees in the development and construction of such facilities.

2.2.6 Project Risk Analysis and Procurement Planning

As early as the Planning Phase, alternative project delivery methods should be considered within the context of project risk analysis and procurement planning. The window of opportunity to select some methods will close as the project moves through various stages of its development. (see Table 2-2, below) [Ref. 2-33]

Given the nature of the project to be implemented, the most important impacting factors (agency related parameters, legal parameters, and lifecycle issues), and the experience of the grantee, the grantee should select a project delivery and contracting approach that minimizes project risks and provides the greatest likelihood of implementation success. Success can be measured in terms of minimizing costs (and cost overruns) and schedule (and schedule slippages).

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Table 2-2. Timing of Project Delivery Method Selection

Project Delivery Method	At the End of Conceptual Design	At the End of Preliminary Engineering	At the End of Final Design	Construction and Procurement
D/B/B	■	■	○	NF
CMR	■	○	○	NF
D/B	■	■	NF	NF
DBOM	■	■	NF	NF

Legend

- = Desirable
- = Feasible
- NF = Not feasible

Source: [TCRP Report 131, "A Guidebook for the Evaluation of Project Delivery Methods"](#)

The general philosophy is that risks should be assigned to the party best able to manage them. There are also tools available to manage project risk factors in terms of contract provisions that can provide a variety of incentives and disincentives. Project delivery and contracting approaches include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Design-Bid-Build (D/B/B) – The design-bid-build approach is the traditional project delivery method and is characterized by the sequential process of first designing then selecting the construction contractors. Frequently there are multiple prime contractors for both design and construction. The owner is responsible for the details of design and warrants the quality of the construction design documents to the construction contractor. All financing responsibility rests with the grantee. This method is historically the most common and familiar form of project delivery. The grantee manages the entire process including the multiple interfaces between contracts and is responsible for the operation and maintenance of the resulting system. The designer(s) is (are) typically selected on a qualifications basis, then terms are negotiated and 100% design plans are produced.

These plans along with detailed specifications are then put out through a competitive bidding process to the contractor community and are typically awarded to the "lowest-price responsive and responsible bidder". Payments to contractors are made based on unit prices against quantities constructed or on percentage complete. Risks beyond the control of the contractor, such as severe weather, unforeseen underground conditions, etc. are usually borne by the grantee; design risk is usually contractually transferred to the designer, and construction-related risk, such as quality of workmanship or adherence to schedule or bid cost are borne by the contractor.

D/B/B projects can also be awarded on a negotiated basis and/or a best-value basis. It must be noted, however, that D/B/B projects awarded in either of those manners usually requires prior FTA approval. They may not be used if they are in violation of local contracting laws.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Design-Build (D/B) – Design-build is a delivery method where the grantee contracts with a single entity to provide both design and construction services. However, for complex projects such as fixed-guideway transit systems multiple design-build contracts may be used for distinctive elements such as civil, vehicles and systems. Financing responsibility rests with the grantee. The D/B contractor may be a single firm, a joint venture, or most commonly, a general contractor and architect/engineer team, but it still takes full responsibility for the design. The scope of activities in the D/B contract may include permitting, utility relocations and ROW acquisition. While D/B can be selected solely on lowest price, it is normally a fixed fee, best-value selection based on a combination of elements like price, schedule and technical approach to take maximum value from innovation opportunities. Many of the New Starts projects use this approach including the Washington WMATA Largo Metrorail, Minneapolis Hiawatha LRT and Denver RTD Southeast Corridor LRT. The Southeast Corridor was delivered as part of a \$1.7B design-build contract that included both LRT and highway improvements and reduced the delivery schedule by as much as 22 months.

Common methods for procuring D/B contracts are the one-step and the two-step processes. The one-step process provides for competitive evaluation of technical proposals, with the contract award decision based on best-value to the owner agency. The determination of best-value is based on a combination of technical merit and price. The two-step process separates the technical proposal from the price. This method typically uses request for qualifications (RFQ)/request for proposal (RFP) procedures rather than D/B/B invitation-forbid procedures. There are a number of variations on the D/B process, but all involve three major components:

- (1) The grantee develops an RFQ/RFP that describes essential project requirements in performance terms.
- (2) Proposals are evaluated.
- (3) With evaluation complete, the grantee must engage in some process that leads to contract award for both design and construction services. The D/B entity is liable for all design (after the grantee provided PE design documentation and, normally, at a range of 15-20% design completion) and construction costs and must usually provide a firm, fixed price in its proposal together with a firm schedule.

The primary advantages of D/B may include time savings from combining design and construction phases and increased flexibility on construction sequencing, improved risk transfer and improved quality as well as cost savings from shorter and sooner delivery times, potential for innovative cost saving approaches and fewer change orders. The trade-offs relate to less direct control of the design process and specific construction methodologies along with a longer procurement process and the need to create performance specifications and a design-build agreement.

- Design-Build-Operate-Maintain (DBOM) – An expansion of D/B to also give the D/B contractor responsibility for the operations and maintenance (O&M) of the completed transit capital project, usually for a period of 5 to 15 years. While all of the D/B elements discussed above apply, two additional distinctive elements factor into DBOM. The first is that the requirement to maintain the system should incentivize the DBOM contractor to have particular emphasis on both quality and life-cycle costs as well as to complete the project as quickly as possible. This approach can also result in improved operating efficiency. However, it is important that the appropriate contractual relationship exists between the D/B entity and the O&M contractor to assure that synergy is achieved. The second is that in addition to design and construction performance requirements, it is also necessary to develop O&M performance requirements. DBOM approaches are more difficult to use at public agencies that have existing labor agreements unless it is for a new type of service (for example, commuter rail, if existing service is bus and LRT.) The Hudson-Bergen LRT DBOM experience points out the importance of incorporating the right performance standards. New Jersey Transit discovered that, although the consortium received a penalty or bonus for on-time performance, the lack of incentives for station cleanliness or customer notification failed to produce the desired level of positive customer experience.
- Concession or Design-Build-Operate-Maintain/Finance (DBOM/F) – This approach builds on all of the DBOM discussion but expands the private party responsibility to cover project financing responsibilities, possibly including the implementation of joint development. Concession contracts may also be referred to as Public/Private Partnerships or PPPs. Even with the private party involved in the financing, the title for the project will be held by the public sponsor. A DBOM/F can be valuable if the public owner has limits on its total bonded indebtedness or needs a longer term to finance the project. The contracting party for a DBOM/F is more likely to be a concessionaire, a company that has a portfolio of projects financed with a combination of equity and bank debt or taxable bonds. In addition to the provisions in a DBOM, the procurement and contractual documents must also address financing and terms under which the facility will be handed back to the grantee at the end of the lease.

For transit projects, the long-term lease agreement will most likely have a term of 30 – 50 years (or longer) with a payment structure known as an Availability Payment. Availability Payment means that the private party takes responsibility for financing the construction and then starts to receive annual payments after the project is accepted and available for use by the public owner. This provides another advantage to the grantee, as it delays the start of the repayment until after completion of construction. As in DBOM agreements, the full availability payment will not be received unless agreed performance standards are achieved.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

In certain circumstances a private entity may be willing to take up-front development risks for a transit project. As part of an unsolicited proposal, Bechtel Enterprise provided approximately \$28 million of initial project funding for the Portland MAX Airport Extension in exchange for being repaid by the rights to develop a 120-acre parcel adjacent to the airport. This contribution funded 23 percent of the capital expenses and the development was targeted to also increase use of the extension. On the construction alone, it is estimated that over three years in time and \$10-15 million were saved by this approach.

- Construction Manager At Risk (CMR) or Construction Manager/General Contractor (CM/GC) – Under this approach the grantee can retain full control of the design but also engage the construction contractor early in the process to address elements such as constructability reviews, cost estimating and scheduling. When an acceptable level of design is achieved, the parties quickly negotiate the price and begin construction. The owner/grantee chooses both the designer and the CM/CG contractor based on qualifications. During the initial phase, the contractor is paid for its services on a professional services basis. The second phase of the contractor's services is negotiated lump sum or guaranteed maximum price with incentives for savings agreed to after the final design is complete. If the parties cannot agree on a price, the contracting method could convert to D/B/B. Alternatively CM/GC could manage the contract for a fee, controlling general conditions and holding the construction contracts in expectation of direct reimbursement from the owner. The contractor assumes responsibility for the entire construction package with a dual role as *construction manager* for all project work and *general contractor*.

The qualifications approach eliminates the lengthier request for proposals process and achieves price competition through subcontractor bidding. CM/GC does not eliminate design and construction interface issues as the owner still retains responsibility for the design and controls the process similar to a D/B/B. CM/GC may be a challenging approach for some grantees to manage and receive the anticipated value since it is a hybrid approach and involves negotiating a sole source construction price.

A number of additional variations exist across the globe such as Build-Own-Operate (BOO), Build-Transfer-Operate (BTO) or Build-Operate-Transfer (BOT) where the private entity could be responsible for D/B and operation of a project, and retain full ownership (BOO), transfer ownership to the public agency prior to assuming operating responsibility (BTO) or after performing operations for a period of time, e.g., 20 years (BOT). These variations are rare in the U.S., where, due to tort liability risks, title is almost always held by the public owner.

The rationale for early decisions on the overall contracting approach is that it is essential to establish various roles and responsibilities to avoid duplication of efforts or schedule delay. The contracting approach will directly influence the PE scope of work, which, for instance, would need to be different for turnkey than for D/B/B. In addition,

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

the use of an alternative delivery approach will influence the means and methods for choosing the entire consultant contracting strategy. The grantee should recognize that a large fixed guideway transit project can involve combinations of contracting approaches to implement the overall project. The Bay Area Rapid Transit (BART) San Francisco International Airport (SFO) Extension, for instance, included a traditional D/B/B contract for site preparation and utility relocation plus four separate D/B contracts that included one contract for line, trackwork, and systems and three for station and parking facilities.

The identification and management of project risks are discussed in Section 3.5.5. Section 3.6 addresses procurement issues, along with contracting approaches and their relation to risk management, and the experience and potential benefits of project implementation approaches that are alternatives to D/B/B.

2.2.7 Environmental Planning

As an integral part of the overall transportation planning process, Environmental Planning must meet the requirements of relevant National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) regulations, conformity regulations related to air quality, and requirements for historical preservation and protection of public lands. The process for complying with NEPA is defined in the joint FHWA/FTA regulation, [Environmental Impact and Related Procedures 23 CFR 771](#) and [49 CFR 622](#) [Ref. 2-34 and 2-35]. In addition, in non-attainment areas (NAA) or in maintenance areas, transportation plans must contain sufficient detail to allow conformity findings as defined by the [U.S. Environmental Protection Agency \(EPA\) General Conformity Regulations](#) [Ref. 2-36].

Three types of environmental actions have been defined, each with separate requirements to guide planning to address their potential impacts. They are:

- Class 1 actions normally have a significant impact on the environment and thus require an EIS. Major projects, both new starts and modernization, fall into this category.
- Class 2 actions normally do not entail a significant impact on the environment, and therefore do not require an EIS or an EA. These projects are known as Categorical Exclusions (CE) and typically include rail or bus modernization projects constructed within the bounds of the existing ROW, or are new bus facilities constructed in industrially zoned areas without major impacts on traffic.

Environmental Site Assessments (ESAs) are investigative programs that identify soil, groundwater, surface water, or building contamination that are present on a construction site. Discovery of hazardous materials at a site can prove costly in terms of removal activities and delays, and thus should be identified as early as possible.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

A list of actions that fall into this class is contained in 23 CFR 771.117(c). Additional projects can also fall within this category if suitable documentation is provided pursuant to 23 CFR 771.117(d).

- Class 3 actions are those in which the significance of the impacts on the environment are not clearly established and for which an EA is prepared to determine the probable impacts. If significant impacts are uncovered, an EIS will be required; otherwise, a "Finding of No Significant Impact" (FONSI) determination will conclude the NEPA process.
- Within the NEPA process, other applicable environmental laws and regulations are complied with, including those related to historic preservation and protection of public lands. The grantee should determine early in the planning process whether or not there are any environmental issues. Coordination with FTA planning and environmental specialists to develop and carry out the scoping process, outlined in Section 1501.7 of the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) Regulations, before the NEPA process formally begins, ensures that all significant environmental issues are addressed.

There are two options for developing an EIS or EA. In the first option, an AA will provide sufficient environmental information and investment analyses to support the selection of a preferred alternative. In this case, the AA provides input into subsequent NEPA documents. In the second option, a DEIS or draft EA is part of the analysis contained in the AA. The DEIS or EA then becomes the decision document that must be approved by FTA before it is circulated for public comment. The Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) or final EA then is developed during PE. FTA staff is available to provide technical assistance.

2.2.8 Financial Planning

A financial analysis must be undertaken and a financial plan must be developed by the MPO before programming a project into the TIP. The MPO financial plan must demonstrate that TIP projects can be carried out while the existing transportation system is being adequately operated and maintained and that only projects for which funds can be reasonably expected to be available may be included in the TIP.

As stated in the FTA's [2011 Annual Report on Funding Recommendations, New Starts, Small Starts, and Paul S. Sarbanes Transit in Parks Program](#) [Ref. 2-37], FTA encourages project sponsors to fund New Starts/Small Starts projects by overmatching Federal funding with the highest possible local share. The general commitment guidelines for New and Small Starts Projects include the following:

- Any project recommended for a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) or Project Construction Grant Agreement (PCGA) should meet the project justification, local financial commitment, and process criteria established by Sections 5309(d) and

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

5309(e) and should be consistent with Executive Order 12893, *Principles for Federal Infrastructure Investments*, issued January 26, 1994.

- To the extent that funds can be obligated in the coming fiscal year under existing FFGAs and PCGAs, these commitments should be honored before any new funding recommendations are made.
- The FFGA and PCGA define the terms of the Federal commitment to a specific project, including funding. Upon completion of an FFGA or PCGA, the Federal funding commitment has been fulfilled and additional project funding will not be recommended. Any costs beyond the scope of the Federal commitment are the responsibility of the grantee, although FTA works closely with grantees to identify and strategically implement technical and management decision making means and methods to contain capital costs at the level included in the FFGA or PCGA at the time it was executed.
- Funding for initial planning efforts such as Alternatives Analysis is no longer eligible for Section 5309 funding under SAFETEA-LU, but may be provided through grants under the Section 5303 Metropolitan Planning program, the Section 5307 Urbanized Area Formula program, the Section 5339 Alternatives Analysis program, or Title 23 “flexible funding”.
- Firm funding commitments, embodied in FFGAs or PCGAs, will not be made until the sponsors have demonstrated that their projects are ready for such an agreement, i.e., when the project’s development and design have progressed to the point where its scope, costs, benefits, and impacts are considered firm and final.
- Funding should be provided to the most qualified investments to allow them to proceed through the process on a reasonable schedule, to the extent that funds can be obligated to such projects in the upcoming fiscal year. Funding decisions will be based on the results of the project evaluation process and resulting project justification, local financial commitment, and overall project ratings, and considerations such as project readiness and the availability of funds.
- As announced by the Secretary of Transportation on January 13, 2010, these funding decisions will be based on meaningful consideration of the full range of benefits that transit can provide, rather than requiring a Medium or higher rating for cost effectiveness, as was previously the case.

As the maximum Federal share decreases, alternative funding sources become increasingly important. Those sources can include taxes, assessments, fees, negotiated investments, private donations, joint development, and other types of public-private cooperation.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Section 5309, Title 49, Chapter 53, states that: “The Secretary may not approve a grant for a project under this section unless the Secretary determines that ... (B) the applicant has or will have the legal, financial, and technical capacity to carry out the project.” The basis upon which the FTA makes determinations of financial capacity is set forth in [FTA Circular 7008.1A, Financial Capacity Policy](#) [Ref. 2-38]. The FTA also has provided guidance regarding the content and layout of a financial plan that accomplishes the objectives of the legislative mandate placed upon the FTA and encourages all transportation agencies to prepare financial plans consistent with this guidance. See [Guidance for Transit Financial Plans](#), June 2000 [Ref. 2-39].

As an integral component of the planning and development of transit projects, a Financial Plan should include information on the current financial health of the grantee, such as existing O&M costs and funding, existing and forecast capital spending, and anticipated capital funding sources. The financial plan should also include data on specific new projects that are in planning or development. The details of the project financial information will necessarily change and become more reliable as projects advance through planning and development.

A project financial plan is required to adhere to a specific outline contained in the guidance, including a description of the project, agency-wide and project capital plans, an agency-wide operating plan, project operating revenues and costs, and a 20-year cash flow projection. Appendix A provides more detailed guidance on cost estimating and project financial planning.

A wide variety of funds can be used for planning activities, including, but not limited to, FTA Section 5303 Metropolitan Planning Grants, FTA Section 5307 Urbanized Area Formula Grants, State Planning and Research Program funds, Surface Transportation Program funds, Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality (CMAQ) Improvement Program funds, and FHWA Planning Program Funds. Capital program funds, including New Starts funding, can be used to support planning prior to Final Design. Transportation Infrastructure Financing and Innovation Act (TIFIA) loan guarantees are another source of project financing that should be considered.

As a part of transit project financial planning, it may be necessary to coordinate and interface with ancillary projects that are being developed in conjunction with the transit project (street/highway construction or utility modernization) or otherwise complement and reinforce the objectives of the transit project (joint development). Such opportunities for coordination offer potential efficiency benefits for all parties. Opportunities for leveraging local funds can be achieved.

2.2.9 FFGA and Other Grant Requirements

2.2.9.1 Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA)

FFGAs are authorized by 49 U.S.C. § 5309 (e) (7) and are the designated means of providing Section 5309 New Starts funding for projects in the amount of \$25 million or more. An FFGA:

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Establishes the terms and conditions for Federal financial participation in a New Starts project.
- Defines that project in detail, both in project scope and in project description, including the schedule and budget.
- Obligates the grantee to complete construction of the project, as defined, to the point of initiation of revenue operations, and to absorb any additional cost incurred, except under certain specific extraordinary circumstances.
- Sets the maximum amount of Section 5309 New Starts funds that will be made available for that project.
- Establishes the Federal funding schedule, subject to annual appropriations, in support of the project.
- Ensures a grantee's efficient management of the project in accordance with all applicable Federal statutes, regulations, and policies.
- Provides the grantee's commitment to perform a before and after study.

FFGAs can only be executed by the FTA after a New Starts project has advanced into Final Design. Additional guidance on FFGAs is provided in the [“FFGA Guidance”](#) [Ref. 2-40]. Appendix F contains a tabulation of grantee deliverables that must support a request for an FFGA.

While the actual negotiation of the FFGA occurs during the Final Design Phase, except in the case of a non-traditional (e.g., D/B, turnkey, DBOM) project, when it must be completed earlier, much of the information required is initially developed during the Planning Phase.

2.2.9.2 Other Requirements

[Circular 9300.1B](#) [Ref. 2-41] provides guidance regarding all capital program grant applications. Requirements include the following:

- The project proposed is a product of the metropolitan / statewide planning process (included in TIP and STIP).
- The grant applicant has or will have the legal, financial, and technical capacity to carry out the project.
- The grant applicant has or will have satisfactory continuing control over the use of the equipment.
- The grant applicant has or will have the capability to maintain the equipment or facilities, and will maintain the equipment or facilities.

Additional sources of FTA requirements include the following:

- [FTA Circular 7008.1A, “FTA Financial Capacity Policy”](#) [Ref. 2-42], governs the determination of financial capacity.
- The determination of technical capacity is based on [FTA Circular 5010.1D, “Grant Management Requirements”](#) [Ref. 2-43], which sets forth guidelines and management procedures for Metropolitan Planning grants, Capital Program grants, and Urbanized Area Formula grants. FTA will make this determination

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

based on its experience with an applicant or on an applicant certifying that it has the capacity to comply with this circular.

- Standards regarding the issue of satisfactory continuing control are set forth in FTA Circular 5010.1D, as well as 49 CFR Part 18 "[Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments](#)", specifically 49 CFR § 18.31 for real property, 49 CFR § 18.32 for equipment, and 49 CFR § 18.33 for supplies [Ref. 2-44].

2.2.10 Joint Development Planning/Coordination with Transit Project Planning

A wide variety of joint development opportunities may be available in association with major transit projects. These include opportunities that reduce capital and/or operating and maintenance costs of a specific project (e.g., shared use of a freight railroad ROW by a commuter railroad), opportunities that generate revenue for a specific project (e.g., allowing development of space within or adjacent to a rail station), and opportunities that increase ridership (e.g., development of intermodal stations or transit oriented development [TOD] or other economic development). Opportunities for joint development should be considered during systems planning, AA, environmental review, and PE. Once joint development projects are initiated, there must be careful coordination with the transit capital project or the existing transit system to minimize disruption of transit customers and/or to achieve maximum mutual benefits.

More than 25 different transit organizations have used joint development arrangements to augment transit capital projects in many different ways. These arrangements provided a source of private sector financing for a transit project that included ongoing revenue to the grantee in the form of lease payments or fees, utilities or maintenance services for common areas, or just improvement of access to the transit project from surrounding developments.

Transit Oriented Joint Development Opportunities

Rail projects, and any bus project with bus transfer facilities, offer an abundance of joint development opportunities in and around stations. Many grantees have aggressively pursued joint development opportunities to reduce the cost of the system development or expansions, and these public/private deals may even be structured to assist in bringing in operating revenue to the agency.

Joint development projects, however, have not proven to be significant sources of funding for transit. Rather, these projects often are undertaken for mutually beneficial reasons to provide compatible land-use, site design, amenities, or to incorporate customer or community services as might be encouraged through the FTA's Livable Communities Initiatives Program.

Joint development projects require transit agencies to be entrepreneurial and to be effective negotiators. Also, most joint development projects require transit agencies to reach agreements with local governments as well as with private developers.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Experience in several locations has shown that a good working relationship between the grantee and the local government leads to better joint development projects.

Joint development projects can have a major impact on project schedules. The average time to develop an agreement is 25 months, and the average time between finalization of a joint development agreement and project completion is 22 months. Intuition says that, the larger the project, the greater the market risk. Entrepreneurial, development-oriented grantees must still apply sound judgment to properly appraise such risks and minimize them.

To exploit the full potential of joint development in enhancing transit ridership and generating revenues for potential capture by the transit system, attention must be devoted to its design integration with the transit facilities and the adjacent community. The design development process should strive to optimize the site for the benefit of the transit users and to encourage greater transit usage by providing direct and convenient access from all modes to a fixed guideway system and/or from the transit system to local destinations including the joint development. Factors such as location, market, connectivity, access, information, image, user comfort, safety and security, O&M, and management should be addressed. Guidance in this regard is offered in the following reference:

☞ [Market Based Transit Facility Design](#) [Ref. 2-45].

Numerous issues can typically arise in each step of the process of advancing joint development projects. The following guidance is offered to fully comply with the statutes of the Federal Transit Act:

- Establish the physical and functional relationship of the joint development to transit.
- Coordinate the site and functional plans, particularly in relationship to transit facility operation and maintenance, so as to avoid non-incidentals uses.
- Design transit and related services in an integrated manner
- Determine the market and financial feasibility of the transit-related components.
- Have supportive land use policies, urban design guidelines, and transportation management plans to increase transit ridership.
- Establish a joint development agreement to address specific issues and institutional arrangements.
- Comply with statutory and regulatory requirements of applicable Federal laws which typically impact Federally-funded projects, but may not affect private development.

Grantees should refer to the FTA [Grant Management Requirements](#) [Ref. 2-29] and the [Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions](#), FTA Circular 9300.1B [Ref. 2-27]. Appendix B specifically relates to joint development.

2.2.11 Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)

2.2.11.1 Introduction and Background to the SSMP

FTA Circular 5800.1, [Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Project](#) [Ref. 2-46] requires the development of a Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP) as part of the PMP requirements.

This requirement formalizes safety and security program management activities. A grantee may choose to develop either a single SSMP or separate plans for safety and security, respectively. Circular 5800.1, issued in August 2007, except in rare instances, cancels earlier guidance on SSMPs, including Circular 5200.1A. In addition to providing detailed instructions on SSMP preparation, Circular 5800.1 explains what projects are exempt from its requirements and the conditions under which total or partial waivers may be allowed by FTA.

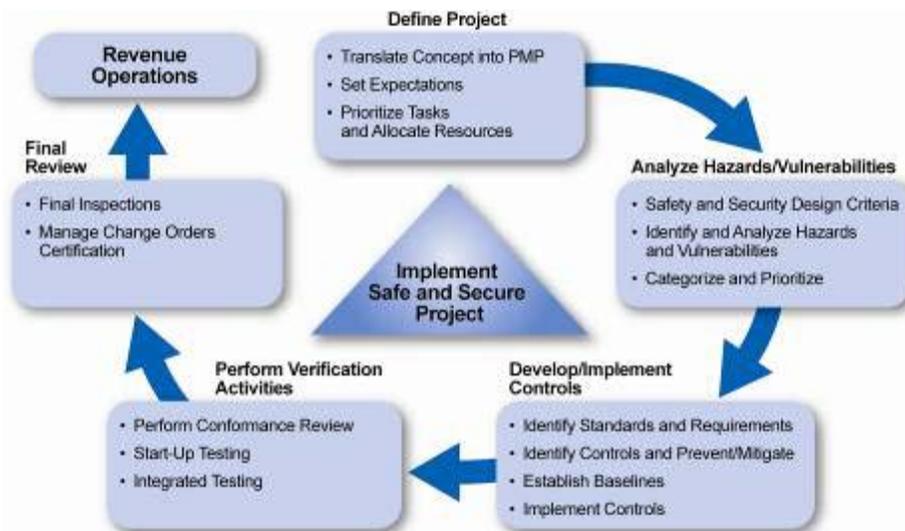


Figure 2-2. Safety and Security Core Management Functions

Thus, for detailed instructions on preparing the initial SSMP and guidance on how to update it as a project moves through its developmental phases, a grantee should review:

☞ *FTA Circular 5800.1, Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Projects* [Ref. 2-46].

Historically, recipients of FTA funding with projects covered under 49 CFR Part 633 described their strategic means and methods for safety and security management and controls as sub-elements of other required PMP sections. This led to considerable variation in how safety and security were handled by different projects. Some grantees performed specific safety and security activities, including hazard analyses, threat and

vulnerability analyses, safety and security certification, or pre-revenue operational readiness assessments, while others did not.

The FTA's aim with issuance of Circular 5800.1 was to strengthen the role of safety and security oversight and management in all phases of project development. FTA was particularly concerned about construction management, where safety and security responsibilities were often devolved solely to the contractor with the grantee organization having very little involvement in day-to-day activities.

2.2.11.2 Authority for and Elements of an SSMP

Based on 49 USC 5327, as amended by Section 3026 of the Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient, Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users ([SAFETEA-LU](#)) [Ref. 2-2], grantees with major capital projects must include an SSMP as part of their PMP for FTA review and approval. Unless it receives an exemption from the FTA, a grantee's SSMP must include the following elements and activities:

- A Policy Statement: issued and signed by the grantee's executive management endorsing the SSMP and stating the project's commitment to safety and security.
- Identification of Safety and Security Interfaces: Identifying who in the project leadership has ultimate decision-making responsibilities for safety and security. Persons must be identified by names, titles, and departments or affiliations and it must be clear how these individuals interface with other project team functions regarding safety and security.
- Establishment of a Safety and Security Organization: The grantee must establish a specific organization to manage safety and security for the project and must identify by name, title, and department or affiliation, all staff and contractors assigned to this organization. Committees established to support the organization must be identified with similar specificity. A staff member must be designated with responsibility to oversee contractor(s) and an organization chart must be provided that illustrates the entire safety and security management organization.
- Identification of Safety and Security Activities by Project Phase: The SSMP must identify the specific safety and security management activities that the grantee will perform for each phase of the project, including a budget and schedule for these activities. There are nine required activities within this subsection. They include:
 - Establishing a program based on formal safety and security analysis techniques to identify and assess safety hazards and security vulnerabilities (generally through reliance on a PHA and TVA that is updated during each phase of the project)
 - Establishing safety and security requirements for the project based on applicable codes, guidelines, and standards established by governmental agencies and industry associations. In turn, these requirements should be

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- memorialized within the project's Design Criteria and kept up-to-date. Procedures must be established to verify that final drawings, technical specifications, and contracts issued for the project conform to its established safety and security requirements.
- Establishing procedures to verify that contractors, staff, and committees build, install, inspect, and test all the project's facilities, systems, and equipment in accordance with the project's stated requirements. (Generally this is assured through an active and ongoing Safety and Security Certification Plan, SSCP, most often overseen by a Safety and Security Certification Committee (SSCC) that is chaired by a senior safety or security staff member employed by the grantee.)
 - Document safety, security, and emergency rules and procedures developed for the project, including safety and security plans, operating and maintenance (O&M) procedures and manual, and rulebooks for revenue operations.
 - Develop qualifications and training programs for all personnel who will operate and maintain the project in revenue service.
 - Document how personnel and/or contractors were trained and qualified to operate and maintain the project and to respond to emergencies. If applicable, the grantee is required to train and document its training of local emergency response organizations regarding operations, equipment, and emergency procedures.
 - Establish and maintain a process to manage open safety and security items resulting from design deviations, change orders, non-conformances, and other sources. Items must be tracked through to resolution (generally fulfilled through checklists established as part of the SSCP that are verified by the SSCC).
 - Conduct emergency exercise or drills prior to revenue service; the results must be documented as an after action or similar report.
 - Complete final safety and security certification prior to placing the project into revenue service; if applicable, this certification must be documented in a final verification report.
- **Ensure Construction Safety and Security:** Plans must include safety and security requirements for construction site contractors that must ensure oversight of contractors, must identify safety and security analyses that contractors are required to perform (including, depending on the location and its potential vulnerabilities, site-specific PHAs and TVAs), and, where appropriate, incentives to promote safety and security, including but not limited to bonuses for low injury rates, theft prevention, and safety awards and recognition programs.
 - **Coordination with External Agencies:** As applicable to each project, the grantee must identify required activities and develop compliance schedules with requirements of all local and state agencies, the PMO, the Federal Railroad Administration (FRA), and the U.S. Department of Homeland Security (DHS), including its Transportation Security Administration (TSA), Office of Grants and

Training (OGT), and others as appropriate. In addition, coordination must be documented with the applicable MPO and with area police, fire, and emergency services organizations.

Where the project delivery method is an alternate to Design-Bid-Build (D/B/B), these policies and procedures within the PMP must identify the requirements and the expressed means the grantee will utilize to ensure implementation by the contractor. This is especially true with Design-Build-Operate-Maintain (DBOM) contracting. In all cases, the grantee remains responsible for the satisfactory consideration and implementation of SSMP elements.

2.2.11.3 SSMP Content

The following draft outline of an SSMP was taken from Chapter IV of Circular 5800.1, where detailed information is available on the suggested approach to developing an effective SSMP:

- Section 1: Management Commitment and Philosophy
 - Safety and Security Policy Statement
 - Purpose of SSMP
 - Applicability and Scope
 - SSMP Goal
- Section 2: Integration of Safety and Security Into Project Development Process
 - Safety and Security Activities
 - Procedures and Resources
 - Interface with Management
- Section 3: Assignment of Safety and Security Responsibilities
 - Responsibility and Authority
 - Committee Structure
 - Safety and Security Responsibilities Matrix
- Section 4: Safety and Security Analysis
 - Approach to Safety and Security Analysis
 - Requirements for Safety and Security Analysis
- Section 5: Development of Safety and Security Design criteria
 - Approach to Development of Safety and Security Requirements and Design criteria
 - Design Reviews
 - Deviations and Changes
- Section 6: Process for Ensuring Qualified Operations and maintenance Personnel
 - Operations and Maintenance Personnel Requirements
 - Plans, Rules and Procedures
 - Training Program
 - Emergency Preparedness
 - Public Awareness
- Section 7: Safety and Security Verification Process (Including Final Safety and Security Certification)

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Design criteria Verification Process
- Construction Specification Conformance Process
- Testing/Inspection Verification
- Hazard and Vulnerability Resolution Verification
- Operational Readiness Verification
- Safety and Security Certification Requirements
- Section 8: Construction Safety and Security
 - Construction Safety and Security Program Elements
 - Construction phase Hazard and Vulnerability Analysis
 - Safety and Security Incentives
- Section 9: Requirements for 49 CFR Part 659, Rail Fixed Guideway Systems: State Safety Oversight
- Section 10: FRA Coordination
- Section 11: DHS Coordination to meet the specific mandates of the SSMP, particularly those that pertain to formal safety and security analysis requirements and to integration with other safety- and security-related documents. Grantees would be well-served to carefully review not only Circular 5800.1, but the following documents produced by FTA or related agencies:

- ☞ [Handbook for Transit Safety and Security Certification](#) (2002) [Ref. 2-47]
- ☞ [Compliance Guidelines for States with New Starts](#) (2000) [Ref. 2-48]
- ☞ [Implementation Guidelines for 49 CFR Part 659](#) (2006) [Ref. 2-49]
- ☞ [Resource Toolkit for State Oversight Agencies Implementing 49 CFR Part 659](#) (2006) [Ref. 2-50]
- ☞ [Hazard Analysis Guidelines for Transit Projects](#) (2000) [Ref. 2-51]
- ☞ Guidelines for Managing Suspected Chemical and Biological Agent Incidents in Rail Tunnel Systems (2002) [Ref. 2-52]
- ☞ [The Public Transportation System Security and Emergency Preparedness Planning Guide](#) (2003) [Ref. 2-53]
- ☞ [Quality Assurance and Quality Control Guidelines](#) (2002) [Ref. 2-54]
- ☞ [Designing and Operating Safe and Secure Transit Systems: Assessing Current Practices in the United States and Abroad](#) (2005) [Ref. 2-55]
- ☞ [Transit Security Design Considerations](#) (2004) [Ref. 2-56]

FTA has also sponsored the development of a course on Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) that is available through the [Transportation Safety Institute \(www.tsi.dot.gov/\)](http://www.tsi.dot.gov/). [Ref. 2-57]

2.2.11.4 Safety and Security Considerations When An SSMP Is Not Required

While the process just described is oriented to MCPs that involve a fixed guideway, the principles are also applicable to other transit capital improvement projects. Projects can include new and modernized equipment and facilities that support all modes of transit operations, both fixed guideway and bus/paratransit systems. Elements might include vehicles, maintenance garages, passenger stations and transfer facilities, and control centers.

Grade Crossing Safety Improvement Programs

Rail transit lines with at-grade operations with/adjacent to and/or crossings with have grade crossing issues that need special attention in design and their operation. These systems are troubled by the problem of impatient motorists driving around lowered crossing gates designed to protect them from approaching trains. A grade crossing safety program should commence in the design phases, and the criteria made part of the project's formal, baseline Design Criteria and Project Definition. The four principal elements of such a program are: engineering/design, enforcement, education, and legislation. For any grantee embarking on projects with grade crossings, it is prudent to reach out to peer properties (and APTA) that have been through the issues for adoption/adaptation of their approaches, as well as the State and local safety departments and regulatory agencies

The process described for grantees required to prepare an SSMP should be adjusted by grantees for other projects based on the scale and requirements of the project being implemented. The principles that assure that safety and security are considered at each phase of a project are just as important for a small project as for an MCP. In fact, because the small project's safety and security staffs may be far smaller than those of an MCP, it is particularly important that these functions not be

delegated to those with little expertise or interest in seeing that they are adequately addressed throughout all project phases.

The minimum requirements per the State Oversight requirements are more fully delineated in 49-CFR-659).

2.3 Engineering and Design

As displayed in Figure 2-3 below, projects are developed and implemented by being advanced along a continuum that includes detailed planning and design activities through and including testing, start-up, and ultimate operation of the transit system project. It is common to define the design and engineering phases as Preliminary Engineering (PE) and Final Design (FD). These fit with the typical FTA process and time-phased development for Major Capital Projects (MCPs) as follows:

- Alternatives Analysis – Draft Environmental Impact Statement (AA/DEIS) Phase
- Preliminary Engineering and Final EIS (PE/FEIS) Phase
- Final Design (FD) Phase

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA)

In these steps for traditional design-bid-construct delivery of projects, the AA Phase coincides with what is commonly referred as conceptual design, or approximately 5-15% of the design development effort. In turn, the PE Phase approximates 20-30% of the design development effort, and the FD Phase completes the design development activities and initiates/completes detailed design to 100% and contract documents for bidding.

Beginning with the PE Phase, the following sections describe the phases and the anticipated products and level of detail that each must address or accomplish to best assure a robust project management and achievement of scope, schedule, budget and quality for the intended project.

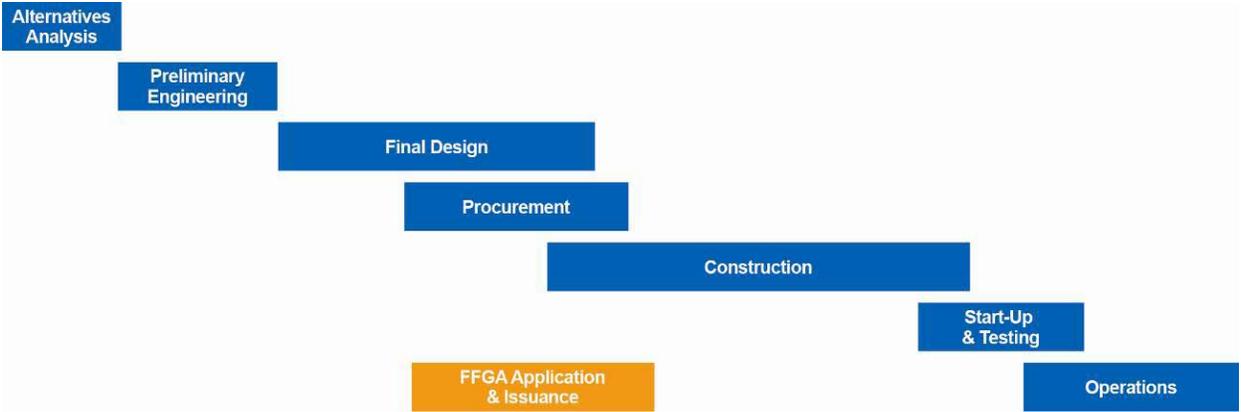


Figure 2-3. FTA Project Development Continuum

2.3.1 Preliminary Engineering (PE)

After a Locally Preferred Alternative (LPA) has been selected for a Major Capital Project (MCP), the grantee may submit a request to the FTA regional office to initiate the Preliminary Engineering (PE) phase of the project development. The request must provide information that demonstrates the readiness of the project to advance, including evidence that:

- the project has been adopted by the Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO) into the Metropolitan Transportation Plan
- the PE work has been programmed in the MPO’s Transportation Improvement Plan (TIP)
- the grantee has the legal, financial and technical capability and capacity to undertake the PE Phase effort

The request must also address the FTA project justification criteria and local financial commitment criteria set forth in [49 CFR 611](#) [Ref. 2-58].

Prior to initiating PE, the following elements of the project should be defined:

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- The overall purpose of the project and the needs it is intended to serve
- The travel corridor to be served and the intended characteristics of the service to be provided (for corridor-based projects)
- Definition of the mode(s) and general technologies to be implemented as part of the project
- Definition of the selected concepts for systems, including vehicles, power/propulsion, signaling/control, communications, safety and security, and Fare Collection. A limited number of systems options may be identified for evaluation during PE
- The general locations and functions to be accomplished by all major facilities
- A limited number of location and/or alignment options that will be evaluated during PE
- Identification of the key interfaces of the proposed project with other transportation systems and adjacent properties
- The inherent NEPA and NEPA-related issues of the alternatives to be studied and evaluated

Appendix D contains a tabulation of grantee deliverables that must support a request to enter PE. The request must address the FTA project justification criteria and local financial commitment criteria set forth in [49 CFR 611](#), Major Capital Investment Projects [Ref. 2-58]. Federal statutes provide that the FTA may only approve the advancement of a proposed project to PE if it meets the statutory project evaluation criteria, and is likely to continue to do so.

The project justification criteria include: Mobility improvements, environmental benefits, operating efficiency, cost effectiveness, and transit-supportive land use. Federal statutes provide that the FTA may approve the advancement of a proposed project to PE only if it meets the statutory project evaluation criteria, and is likely to continue to do so. However, the FTA rule states that the standards on specificity, costs, and benefits are lower at earlier stages of the process. The rule provides an example of local financial commitment which, for entry into PE, may need only to demonstrate a reasonable financial plan that identifies proposed sources of local funds for both capital and operating costs without having ballot measures passed and funds programmed.

During the Preliminary Engineering (PE) Phase of project development, the general project requirements identified during project planning (AA Phase in most cases, although Small Starts may not have done a formal AA) are confirmed and finalized. At the completion of PE all project requirements should be determined and documented including:

- transportation access, capacity, service levels and operating characteristics
- guideway/route functional and operational layouts
- facility functions, capacities and locations
- rights-of-way requirements, including a broad identification of required property acquisitions
- interfaces with adjacent properties
- Interfaces with adjacent transportation facilities and utilities

Any “requirements risks” related to the project should be fully mitigated through design work, environmental analysis and interagency coordination during the PE process. [For more information on “requirements risk” and other defined risks, see Chapter 3]

PE takes the project from a planning state to a level of design that defines all significant elements and allows a more accurate estimate of project costs and impacts. The resultant technical and financial information will be a basis for subsequent funding and implementation decisions. A major objective of PE is to investigate the merits of all sound configurations and designs. These investigations require in-depth analysis of all components, their interrelationships, and their costs. In addition, environmental review requirements are completed.

It is important to note here that the typical PE Phase, though often identified as at a level of completion of 20-30% design, is not typically as refined and complete as that percentage would indicate. Because PE most often contains a variety of alternatives and seeks to complete the NEPA requirements, the level of analysis and design is targeted more at getting details for comparative analyses and total (though still somewhat general) feasibility of alternatives than it is for making final design decisions and consummation of the preferred alternative design.

2.3.1.1 Preliminary Engineering Activities

The PE process should begin with the collection of all baseline information required to support the design process. This includes the collection and assembly of aerial photography, topographic mapping, right-of-way mapping, and other information on existing conditions in the project area. Major utilities and other features that could be affected by the project should be identified. Operational and functional data on existing transportation facilities, as well as baseline information required for environmental planning and analysis should also be collected. As the design alternatives are refined and selected, additional data should be collected to support more detailed design activities and to allow the feasibility of the design solutions to be confirmed. A geotechnical baseline report should be prepared for projects involving tunnels or other underground structures, or where specific structures (e.g., major bridges, retaining walls, levees, or other facilities) will be located on material with questionable or unknown load bearing capacity.

Of the total project design effort, the PE Phase should, at the minimum, enable the grantee to document the selected design solutions in plan and profile drawings, typical and special section and elevation drawings, and other design drawings for all components of the project, including any required mitigation features. These drawings should be at a scale sufficient to perform at least parametric analyses of potential costs, identify the project rights-of-way and facilities therein, identify the relevant environmental issues for impact analysis, and assess the relative constructability issues. The types, sizes, and locations should be determined for all major structures, including bridges, underpasses, tunnels, stations, and maintenance facilities. Design standards and initial design criteria and operations criteria should be finalized and

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

adopted to guide the Final Design process and the specifications for the project elements should be developed in outline form. The PE process should identify the most effective means of meeting the project requirements and confirm the feasibility and costs of the proposed design solutions. The design effort should be focused on those portions of the project that have the greatest risk in terms of cost, schedule, and impacts to third parties.

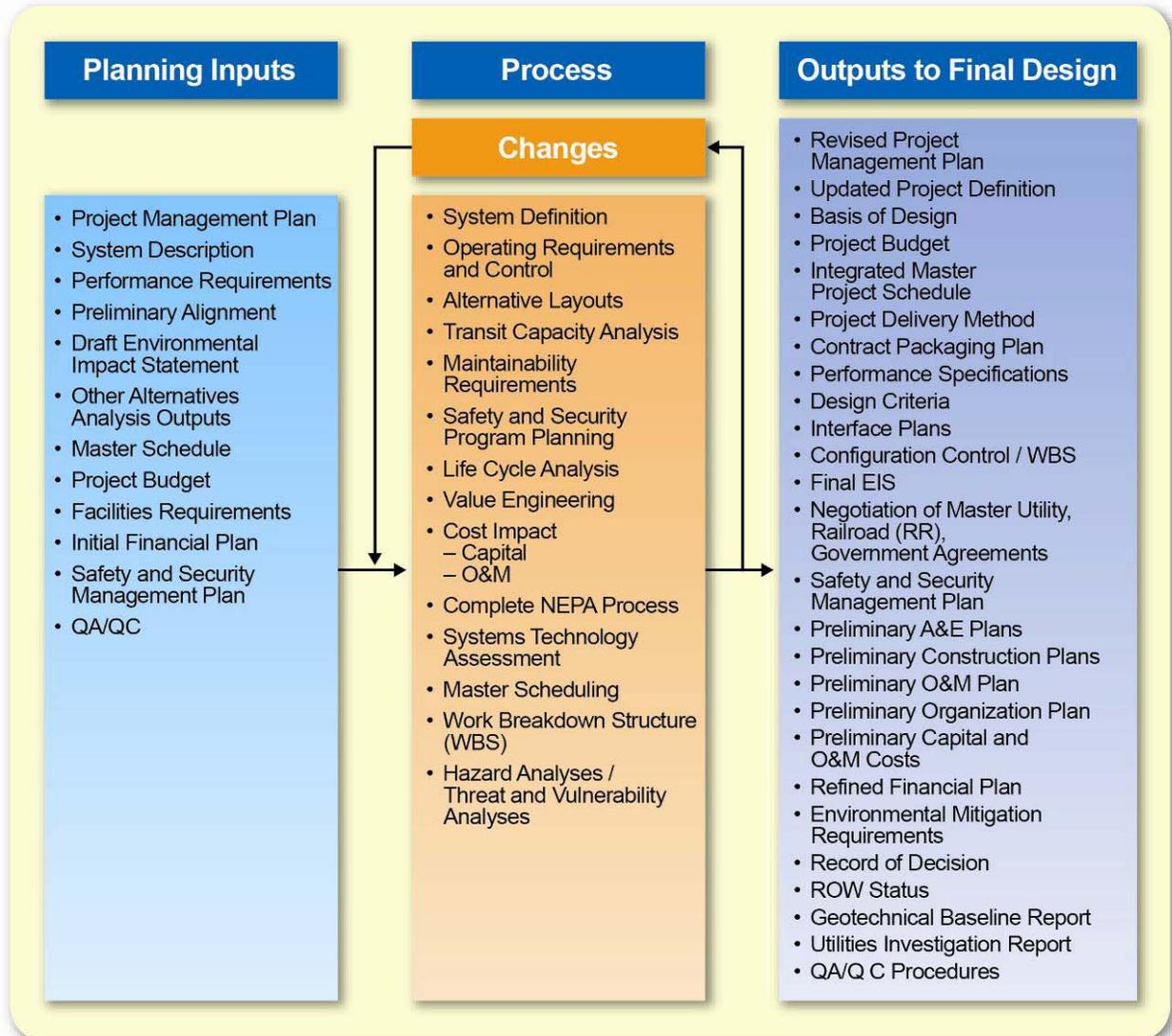


Figure 2-4. Preliminary Engineering Phase Process

All interagency and other third party agreements that will be required to implement the project should be identified during PE and these agreements should be executed to the extent possible. At a minimum, the grantee should seek preliminary agreements from key project stakeholders during PE and establish confidence that the proposed project is acceptable to these third parties, and that required project approvals can be obtained by the completion of Final Design.

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

A Value Engineering (VE) study should be conducted prior to the completion of PE. This study should confirm that the PE phase effort has fully evaluated all feasible and reasonable configurations and design options. The grantee should document the design and configuration alternatives developed during the VE study as well as its own process for evaluating and accepting or rejecting the VE proposals. Any accepted VE proposals should be incorporated into the PE design documents or noted as design refinements to be undertaken as early as possible in the Final Design Phase.

A constructability review should be conducted by agency or agency and consultant staff with experience in construction of similar projects. The constructability review should consider the likely response by contractors bidding on the proposed project as well as the ability to efficiently construct the project including critical interfaces among construction activities, availability of sufficient staging and work areas, ability to maintain traffic and pedestrian operations, and conformance to common construction means and methods for the project area. The grantee also may wish to conduct a peer review involving other transit agencies that have implemented similar projects. Peer reviews are an effective way to incorporate lessons learned from other projects and to identify best practices to carry forward into the Final Design phase of the project.

The contract packaging plan should be finalized during PE. This includes the type or types of contracts to be used to complete design and construction, the approach(es) for packaging the construction work (if more than one construction contract is envisioned) and the roles and responsibilities of the agency staff, consultants and other participants in the project. The selection of the project delivery method should consider a range of factors, including project cost, project schedule, the degree of design control desired by the grantee, the status of right-of-way acquisition and utility relocation, project risks and the ability to manage and appropriately allocate risks, legal and regulatory requirements and the grantee's experience with the various delivery methods. The contract packaging plan identifies all of the consultant, third party, and procurement and construction packages that will comprise the project from Final Design through Project Activation to operations. The contract packaging should seek to maximize design and construction efficiency, minimize conflicts and provide workable interfaces among contracts and contract participants (e.g., design service during construction and the procurement of materials and equipment), and encourage competition among consultants and/or contractors. Larger construction and/or materials/equipment contracts that combine multiple components of the project will reduce the number of contract interfaces to be managed, but a more limited number of contractors may be able to bid on these types of contracts. More complex contracting methods will generally require more active management by the grantee to assure that the interfaces among the contracts are effectively managed. Section 3.2 discusses organizational and management issues as they relate to contracting and project delivery methods.

The contracting strategy and packaging plans for modernization projects need to address factors beyond those considered for new construction. Some rail modernization subsystem projects can be packaged by corridor, rail line, or line segment to facilitate coordination in design and construction. The subsystems for which

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

this is most beneficial are civil structures, track structures, architecture, utilities, signaling, operations control and communications system, and power systems. This permits work on multiple subsystems to be accomplished during a single service outage, minimizing operational conflicts. Coordination is also required between the vehicle and maintenance/storage facility elements, especially when new vehicles are acquired. Stations tend to be somewhat isolated from other subsystems in their modernization, except for assuring physical interfaces such as between the railcar and the platform, and between station security systems and the control center.

For MCPs, a Risk Assessment must be conducted prior to entry to Final Design. The risk assessment is intended to determine if the requirements risks for the project have been fully mitigated through the PE process and to identify the remaining design, market and construction risks. The adequacy of schedule and cost contingencies and specific plans to mitigate the remaining project risks should be evaluated in the risk assessment. The analysis should determine if the project delivery method and the cost estimate reflect an effective allocation of risks to the parties with the best capability to control each risk. Section 3.5.5 begins a further discussion of the requisite risk assessment and management requirements for MCPs, and these contain principles of value for grantees to adopt and enforce for analyses applicable to all transit capital projects.

The PE portion of the total project feasibility analysis and design effort, when properly conducted, will permit the project to move more rapidly into and through Final Design with a minimum of design changes, disruptions, or delays. Figure 2-4 depicts the process of PE including the typical inputs and outputs. While the figure establishes the requirements for NS Projects, the general process is also applicable to rail modernization, bus facilities, and other transit projects. Some differences may exist, however, such as the ability to be excluded from the preparation of an EIS or the need to consider continuity of operations during construction. The inputs in Figure 2-4 are the direct result of the metropolitan transportation planning and, where applicable, the Alternatives Analysis process(es) and the outputs become the basis for the next phase – the Final Design Phase. A major aspect, and significant in assuring the success of the project development process, is the development and continued refinement of the PMP and subplans developed under the auspices of the policies and procedures identified in the PMP, such as, but not limited to, the Fleet Management Plan (FMP), the Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan (RAMP), the Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP), etc.

Some rail modernization subsystem projects can be packaged by corridor, rail line, or line segment to facilitate coordination in design and construction. The subsystems for which this is most beneficial are civil structures, track structures, utilities, control and communications, and power. This permits work on four different subsystems to be accomplished during a single track outage, minimizing operational conflicts. Coordination is also required between the railcar and maintenance/storage facility elements, especially when new railcars are acquired. Stations tend to be somewhat isolated from other subsystems in their modernization, except for assuring physical

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

interfaces such as between the railcar and the platform, and between station security systems and the control center.

Projects to modernize an existing transit system may consider the utilization of grantee staff for roles including design, design reviews, construction, and testing, in addition to start-up. If sufficient safety and security staff exist, they should also be involved in all phases. For systems that lack sufficient staff capabilities in safety and security, contractor personnel must nonetheless be overseen by a competent member of the grantee's staff, possibly with technical assistance from an outside safety/security vendor or from local law enforcement agencies if they have sufficient training and expertise in CPTED and SCP techniques.

Design reviews should consider compatibility with the existing system, from both an operating and a maintenance perspective, and constructability, especially while maintaining safe operations. Force account (i.e., agency or third party stakeholder) labor may also be utilized for certain track, signal, and electrical work, in addition to providing for the safe working environment of contractors.

The utilization of force account resources to support project design and implementation should be planned during PE, but must be justified in accordance with FTA [Circular 5010.1D](#) [Ref. 2-29].

The FEIS (or other NEPA-required document leading to a FONSI or CE), is completed during PE as well as the definition of the more detailed design features for the project. FTA, state, and local requirements must be identified to guide the design process. These encompass, but are not limited to, safety, security, environmental, and design standards, including compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and with the "Standard for Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems" (National Fire Protection Association document NFPA 130).

Following is a list of key deliverables required to define the project definition at the completion of PE:

- Preliminary engineering plans and outlined specifications
- Design Analyses, Project Definition, Design criteria, Value Engineering and Operational Criteria reports
- Capital cost estimate
- Operating plan
- Financial plan
- Project delivery method and contract packaging plan
- Risk assessment
- Project schedule, including detail for the Final Design Phase, and preliminary schedule for Project Activation (testing and start-up)
- Final National Environmental Protection Act documentation (i.e., Categorical Exclusion, CE; Finding of No Significant Impact, FONSI; Record of Decision, ROD based on an FEIS)

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Programming of Final Design Phase and the Construction and Procurement of Materials/Equipment in the TIP and STIP
- All documentation required under the New Starts program (for New Starts MCPs);
- Project Management Plan (PMP) that demonstrates the legal, financial and continued technical capability and capacity to undertake the proposed project
- PMP subplans required by FTA as integral to the PMP document itself or as separate documents with the initial findings and determinations in the area of fleet management, Real Estate needs/acquisition program, safety/security needs and program, etc.

Some of the specific requirements for the deliverables for the PE phase will depend on the selected project delivery method. The selected project delivery method will also influence the development of the grantee's Project Management Plan. Table 2-3 provides an overview of differences in the requirements for selected deliverables from the PE Phase for three basic types of project delivery, including design-bid-build, design-build and public-private partnerships.

Regardless of the project delivery method, the integrated master project schedule (IMPS) and cost estimate must meet minimum requirements.

The requirements for the project capital cost estimate include:

- Identification of all elements of the project consistent with the project definition and work breakdown structure (WBS), and correlation of the WBS with and cross-referenced to the FTA Standard Cost Categories (SCC) budget preparation and presentation
- The estimate methodology, describing the method of assembling the estimate and including all assumptions and references used to construct the estimate, methodology for establishing material, labor and equipment costs and production rates, and basis of identified lump sums or allowances for known but incompletely designed items
- Completed quantity take-offs for defined major components of project including earthwork, guideway structure, track or surfacing, walls, major structures, major utilities, stations, vehicles, individual system elements
- Consistency of estimate basis with procurement/project delivery method
- Documentation of sources of parametric and/or unit costs, reflecting local conditions, current market conditions and project delivery method
- Identification of all soft costs (i.e., non-construction agency, third party, force account, and consultant) components, with sources and methodology consistent with project delivery method
- Force Account costs for construction and specification of labor costs and methodology
- Reflection of project delivery method and schedule in the estimate
- Basis of escalation rates, consistent with schedule and based on current local (and specialty) market analysis

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Contingency amounts appropriate for level of project definition; developed by major cost categories; reflective of complexity, uncertainty and risk of each category and overall project; reflective of project delivery method and risk allocation; contingency clearly separated into allocated and unallocated amounts

The minimum requirements for the project's IMPS include:

- Activities consistent with project definition, work breakdown structure (WBS), project management plan, known external constraints, deliverables, and logic relationships among tasks, and implemented in CPM schedule software (e.g., MS project, Primavera, or other comparable software)
- Schedule Narrative, describing the WBS, critical path, expected durations and logic
- Basis of Schedule, including all assumptions, basis of durations and explanation of approach used to develop schedule
- Schedule Activities shown at appropriate levels of detail:
 - Professional Services Procurement - show procurement for management and design consultants as needed, consistent with project delivery method
 - Project Management Plan and Subplans - Show planned completion or updates for PMP, RAMP, Fleet Management Plans, SSMP, QMP and listing of other proposed sub-plans
 - Environmental Permitting - Show major activities and deliverables for required permitting activities including logic ties to design and construction activities, anticipated contractor initiated permitting activities, and process for confirming design of committed environmental mitigation measures
 - Dates for interagency agreements, Permits, third party agreements, utility and railroad agreements, and other approvals or actions; show logic ties to design and construction activities
 - Final Design - show detailed final design activities by major design package and milestones for 30, 60, 90, 100% design and associated review periods. The 30% design deliverable should be the advancement of the PE Phase feasibility and design development analyses and reports (especially the Design criteria and Operational Criteria) to refined facilities, equipment, materials and vehicle identification. Include incomplete or carry-over activities from PE. Final Design approach consistent with project delivery method. Include activities for plans, specifications, special studies or reports and appropriate logic ties.
 - Real Estate - Outline schedule for real estate acquisition and relocation activities with logic ties to design, procurement and construction. Identify and include appropriate notices of property owners (and tenants), procurement of appraisal services, appraisal and review appraisals activities, grantee review and decision making, relocations, etc. Develop individual schedules for complex or unique property rights transactions
 - Final Design/FFGA (or PCGA) - Show target date for execution of agreements, including required FTA and other governmental review periods
 - Construction Phase Professional Services - Show procurement for Construction Management and any other construction support services, e.g., OCIP, surveying, materials testing, etc., as applicable

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

- Construction and Equipment/Materials Procurement - Show outline level for procurement activities for major construction and equipment/material packages; procurement schedule and activities reflect project delivery method
- Construction and Equipment/Materials - Show outline-level schedule for each major construction and equipment/materials procurement package (5 to 15 activities per package); show critical dependencies among packages, long lead time items, and relationship to owner furnished equipment or materials; identify regulatory or other constraints; construction schedule must be consistent with project delivery method
- Testing and Start-up (also referred as Project Activation, e.g., Rail Activation) - Show preliminary testing, acceptance and start-up activities (including mandatory training) with logic ties to construction and proposed revenue service date(s)

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Table 2-3. Deliverables by Project Delivery Method

Project Component	Design-Bid-Build (D/B/B)	Design-Build (D/B)	Public-Private Partnership (e.g., DBOM)
Design Drawings	Plan and profile drawings, typical sections, elevations, type-size-location for major structures, facility design development	Plan and profile drawings, typical sections, elevations, type-size-location for major structures, facility design development	Plan and profile drawings, typical sections, elevations, type-size-location for major structures, facility design development
Specifications and Design Standards	Outline design specifications; adopted design standards	Performance specifications for design; adopted design standards	Performance specifications for design operations; adopted design standards
Contract Packaging Plan	Identification of planned construction contracts and related final design packages and identification of procurement contracts	Identification of planned design/construction contracts (if multiple contracts proposed) and procurement contracts	Single contract assumed. Definition of operating, maintenance and financing requirements and contract duration. Definition of funding sources and treatment of operating revenues
Cost Estimates	Contract package and project level cost estimates. Documentation of project budget by package to support cost control.	Contract package and project level cost estimates.	Program level cost estimates, including long-term operating and maintenance cost forecasts.
Contract Documents	Scope of work and contract for final design	Design-build procurement plan, including RFP documents, design-build contract terms and conditions and design-build proposal process	Public private partnership procurement plan, including contract terms and conditions, identification of funding
Right-of-Way	Preliminary right-of-way plans, preliminary identification of required property acquisitions	All right-of-way requirements identified and, ideally, all required right of way acquired	All right-of-way requirements identified and, ideally, all required right of way acquired
Utilities	Preliminary utility plans and identification of required utility agreements	All utility requirements identified, utility agreements in place and, ideally utility relocations completed	All utility requirements identified, utility agreements in place and, ideally utility relocations completed
Third Party Agreements and Permits	Third party agreements and required permits identified. Preliminary third party agreements executed.	Third party agreements and permits executed.	Third party agreements and permits executed

- The Integrated Master Project Schedule, or IMPS, consistent with the Project Definition, Capital Cost Estimate and PMP. [Note: At the PE Phase and for all subsequent phases, the grantee most likely develops the IMPS from separate, detailed schedules for definitive categories of project work, e.g., design program and participants, FTA and other governmental approvals, permitting, Real Estate program, individual construction packages, individual equipment and materials procurement packages, etc., setting key milestones of each rolled up into the

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

IMPS to portray the overall project. Thus, the grantee must carefully create the separate, individual activity schedules first, then correlate them to one another, and, finally, use the key milestones, durations and respective critical paths to populate the IMPS and identify the overall project critical path.]

A major aspect of the PE effort, which is significant in assuring the success of the project development process, is the continued refinement of the Project Management Plan and the development and refinement of the required sub-plans, including:

- Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan (RAMP)
- Rail and/or Bus Fleet Management Plan (RFMP and/or BFMP)
- Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)
- Quality Management Plan (QMP)
- Document Control Plan
- Configuration Management Plan
- Risk Management Plan
- Contingency Management Plan
- Force Account Plan

The PMP must demonstrate that the grantee has the authority and the resources required to direct and control the project, with a focus on the subsequent risk-informed, performance-based management of the FD process (for design-bid-build project delivery). Grantees proposing alternative project delivery methods must demonstrate the ability to manage and control the approvals of the design and follow-on construction work, since they will be contracting for the partial or complete delivery of the project before having a 100% completed design.

2.3.2 Final Design Phase

The purpose of the Final Design Phase is to prepare complete and final drawings, technical specifications, and contract requirements documents necessary to advertise and obtain competitive construction (and/or equipment/materials) contract bids. This includes clear statements of testing requirements and acceptance criteria for the safety and functionality of all subsystems. Typically, this phase also includes the preparation of the engineer's estimate and detailed schedule, analysis of the construction bids, and award or recommendation for award, and Real Estate acquisition.

While the definitions for the Final Design and Construction Phases presented here or later in this report are typical for transit projects, there may be situations where design and construction tasks for parts or the entire project could be integrated and the overall implementation time frame could be compressed. Examples include "fast track," Design-Build (D-B), Concession or Public-Private Partnership, or in conjunction with a joint development project.

For traditional design-bid-build project delivery, Final Design is the last phase of project development prior to construction. FTA policy dictates that final design cannot begin prior to NEPA completion as denoted by an FTA Record of Decision (ROD), FONSI, or

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

CE determination. In addition, FTA approval is necessary for entry into final design, following an FTA evaluation of the proposed project according to the same statutory evaluation criteria used when progressing to PE. The FTA can only authorize the project progressing to final design if the project meets those criteria and is determined to be likely to continue to do so.

Appendix E presents a checklist utilized by FTA to keep track of requisite grantee submittals required to enter the FD Phase.

FTA permits a variety of Pre-Award Authority (sometimes referred as Early System Work Agreements or ESWAs), and FFGAs to an applicant indicating a willingness to obligate funds for a project from future budget authority. Another instrument available to FTA is the Letter of No Prejudice (LONP). These funding methods are more fully discussed in Section 2.1.1 and elsewhere in these ***Guidelines***. The Pre-Award Authority allows for reimbursement of preliminary costs of project implementation, including land acquisition, utility relocation, long lead procurements for which specifications are determined, and other activities that will promote completion of the project more rapidly and at less cost. The FFGA commits a Federal share of the cost of construction and a funding schedule, subject to appropriations by Congress. FFGAs are discussed in Section 2.2.9.1.

Figure 2-5 depicts the process of final design, including the typical inputs and outputs. While the figure establishes the requirements for New Starts type projects, the general process is applicable to rail modernization, bus facility, and other transit projects. The inputs are the direct result of PE and the outputs become the foundation for the subsequent phases – Construction, Testing, and Start-Up (also referred as Activation), and Revenue Service. Final design can extend well into the Construction phase in that portions can be designed while other portions are being built and/or operated.

To avoid delays and substantial added costs that are likely to accompany changes in the detailed final design, the project scope should be decided by the completion of the PE and “frozen” at the initiation of final design. Changes in the project definition or scope (with potential and consequential impacts on the project budget and schedule) should be permitted only for compelling reasons, i.e., substantial economies achieved through value engineering, accommodation of changed conditions as a result of construction planning, reduction in funds or changes in funding agency criteria, and other reasons for which the consequences of not changing are substantially more adverse than the risk of delay and the increase in design and/or construction (or equipment/materials procurement) cost.

During the Final Design Phase of a fixed guideway project, FTA and the grantee will negotiate a construction grant contract (e.g., an FFGA for an NS Project) with a fixed ceiling on the Federal contribution, subject to a defined method of adjustment for inflation (see Section 2.2.9.1). All NS Projects, prior to their consideration for an FFGA, are required to undergo project scope, cost and schedule reviews and Risk

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Assessment updates as deemed necessary, along with updated reviews of, technical capacity and capability, the PMP, and relevant PMP subplans.

An FTA grant contract is required for non-NS Projects, but is not typically a "full funding" grant.

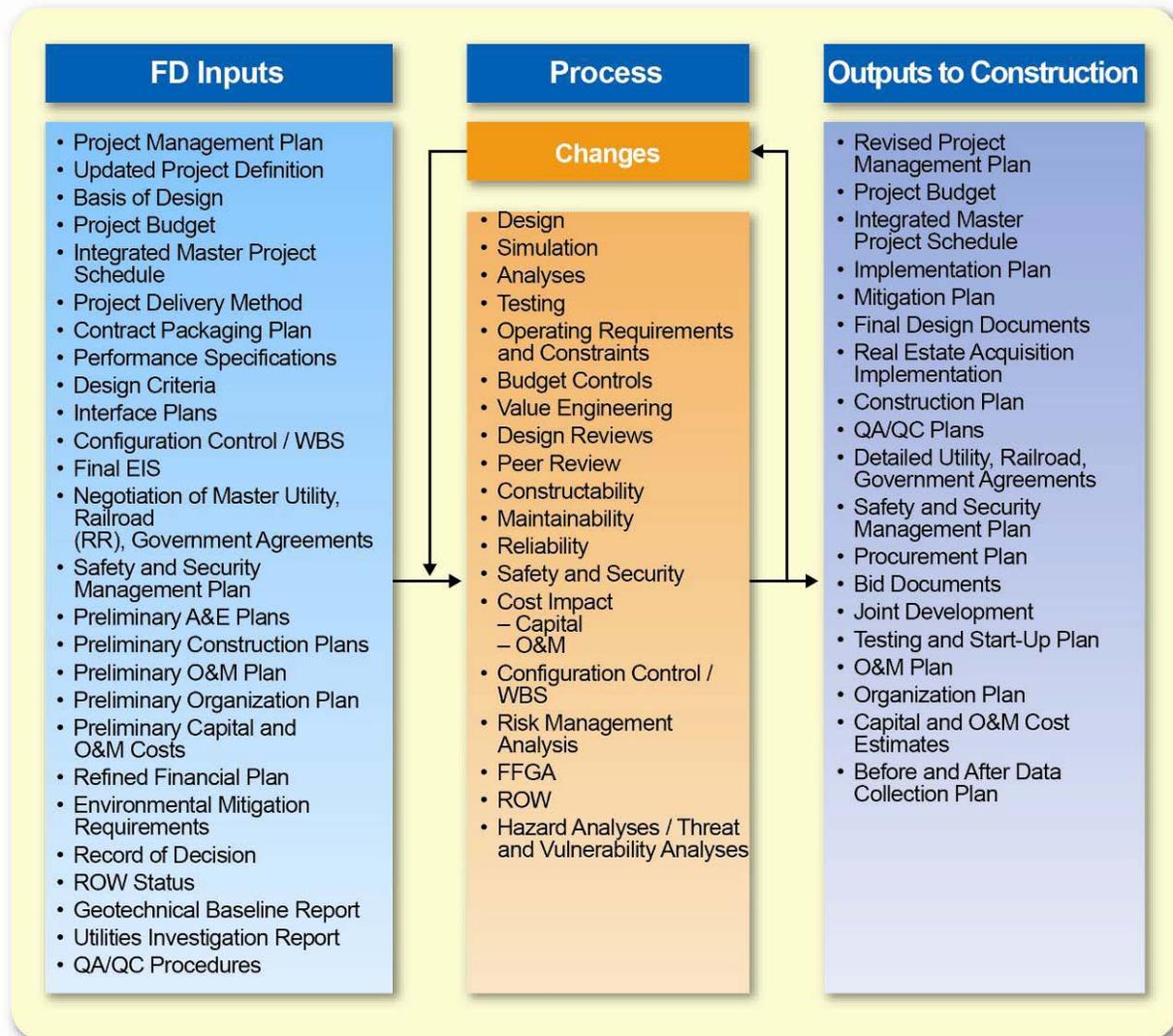


Figure 2-5. Final Design Phase Process

2.3.3 Construction And Equipment/Materials Procurement Phase

The Construction and Equipment/Materials Procurement Phase includes the physical building of all structures of the transportation improvement, the fabrication or manufacturing of the components and subsystems which will be installed with the fixed facilities to form the system, and the testing of all subsystems. Construction bid packages are prepared during final design and are bid upon by contractors for various aspects of work. Particularly for projects in which construction will be divided among a

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

number of bidders, the grantee should consider developing a Construction Safety and Security Manual (to be issued along with pre-bid documents) that explains to bidders the safety and security requirements they will be expected to adhere to at each construction site. Construction management is performed by the grantee or its consultant and involves oversight of the work in progress, both contractor and force account; cost and schedule control; subsystem inspection and testing; quality assurance; and documentation of as-built configurations, QC inspection records, and deficiency lists.

Prior to the award of each construction contract, all real estate necessary to the contract work should be acquired, including land that may be leased for construction plant and access. During the Construction phase, revisions of the design or even redesign may be necessary to accommodate unanticipated site conditions, including those pertaining to safety and security of employees or the site and surrounding areas, or resulting from accepted contractor developed value engineering proposals (VECPs), final manufacturer's drawings, errors, and other factors.

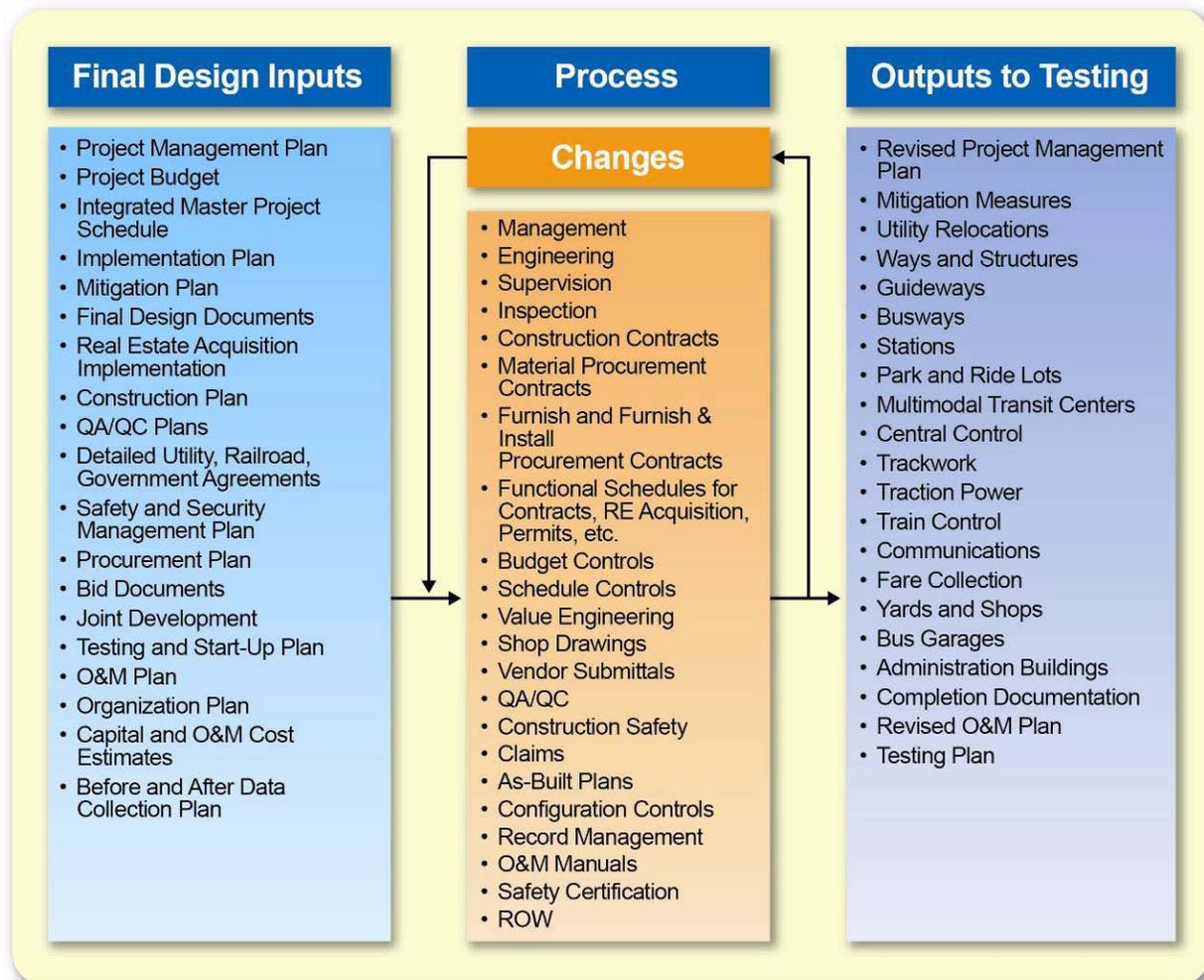


Figure 2-6. Construction Phase Process

Figure 2-6 depicts the process of accomplishing the Construction and Equipment/Materials Procurement Phase, showing the typical inputs and outputs. While Figure 2-6 establishes the requirements for NS Projects, the general process also applies to other transit capital projects. The inputs are the direct results of the Final Design Phase and the outputs are the fixed facilities, equipment, plans, and procedures required for the Testing Phase. To facilitate implementation of the Construction phase, the grantee should develop a Construction Management Plan to assure implementation of the proposed transit improvements in accordance with the designs, specifications, and resources established in the previous phases. Special attention must be devoted to construction activities adjacent to an operating system to assure the safety of transit riders, operating employees, and construction workers during modifications to existing transit facilities. The construction management plan must consider security requirements of a construction site, particularly one adjacent to an existing facility or in a high-traffic or high-crime area. Similarly, for Equipment/Materials Procurement, the grantee should develop a specific plan for each contract to procure system equipment element(s), e.g., signals, traction power and substations, communications, Fare Collection, etc., to assure that the specifications and contract data requirements are being followed, inclusive of subsystems inspection and testing before assembly or shipment to the job site.

2.3.4 Recovery Plan

This is the action that neither grantees nor FTA want to have to invoke. For MCPs in particular, the FFGA and the Project Management Plan (PMP) will each include the requirement that the grantee address negative trends relative to project costs and approved project budget as soon as they appear. Realistically, these negative trends are likely to appear during the Final Design Phase and must be dealt with then, and certainly not ignored on the presumptive basis that they might be mitigated through bidding (“market risk” resolution) or contractor improvements in means/methods or schedule efficiencies (“construction risk” resolution). Based upon a large sample of transit and other major public works projects, negative budget and schedule (with schedule matters also invoking cost) impacts are seen to include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Overruns occurring all too often with the soft costs during design
- The Final Design activities proceeding without adherence to the principle of “design to budget”
- Inadequate change control with concurrent reflection of negative cost and schedule impacts on the Basis for Design, and controls
- Incomplete construction document Quality Control with respect to intradisciplinary and interdisciplinary review of plans and specifications
- Incomplete plans and specifications
- Rights-of Way not being completely and accurately defined and acquired so as to provide straightforward progress by the contractor

The Risk Assessment and consequent development of Contingency funds within project budgets and “hold points” for MCPs will assist in determining if and when a Recovery

Plan may be required. The intent of such a plan is to invoke strategic means and methods of mitigating cost and schedule overruns that are identified through trending and cost to complete analyses. For MCPs, there is a requirement to identify Primary and Secondary Mitigation elements of the project and/or project delivery that may be available to mitigate potential negative impact on either the budget or schedule, or both. Chapter 3 provides more detail on budget development, risk assessment and management, contingencies and overall management process for project phases beginning with PE and running through the Construction and Equipment/Materials Phase.

Mitigation cannot compromise the integrity of the project as it was defined in the FEIS or otherwise approved by FTA via a FONSI or CE. The recovery options that may be available should not alter the project's planned level or quality of service to the public. Grantees are cautioned to monitor and evaluate budgets and schedules rigorously, provide robust trend analyses and cost-to-complete forecasting, and report to FTA any conditions that may adversely affect the project so that a Recovery Plan may be prepared transparently and with FTA input.

2.3.5 Testing and Start-Up Phase

The Testing and Start-Up Phase is also often referred as the Activation Phase (e.g., Rail Activation) and culminates with the acceptance of an operating transportation system (or improvement) in accordance with predetermined criteria, based on the satisfactory completion of the construction of fixed facilities, the installation and test of all equipment and subsystems, and the integration of all components into a fully functional transit system. Tests include manufacturing plant and on-site performance testing of major systems and subsystems and integration testing of the rolling stock, systems, and subsystems in their designed and constructed operating environment. For major projects involving New Starts or significant changes to existing fixed guideway systems, an Integrated Test Plan (ITP) may be required. Acceptance of the system and subsystems by the grantee implies that all design requirements and specifications related to both safety and functionality have been met. Figure 2-7 depicts the process of testing, showing the inputs, in terms of plans, procedures and resources that were defined during final design, and the output -- a final test plan. The completion and acceptance testing is key to the Safety Certification process.

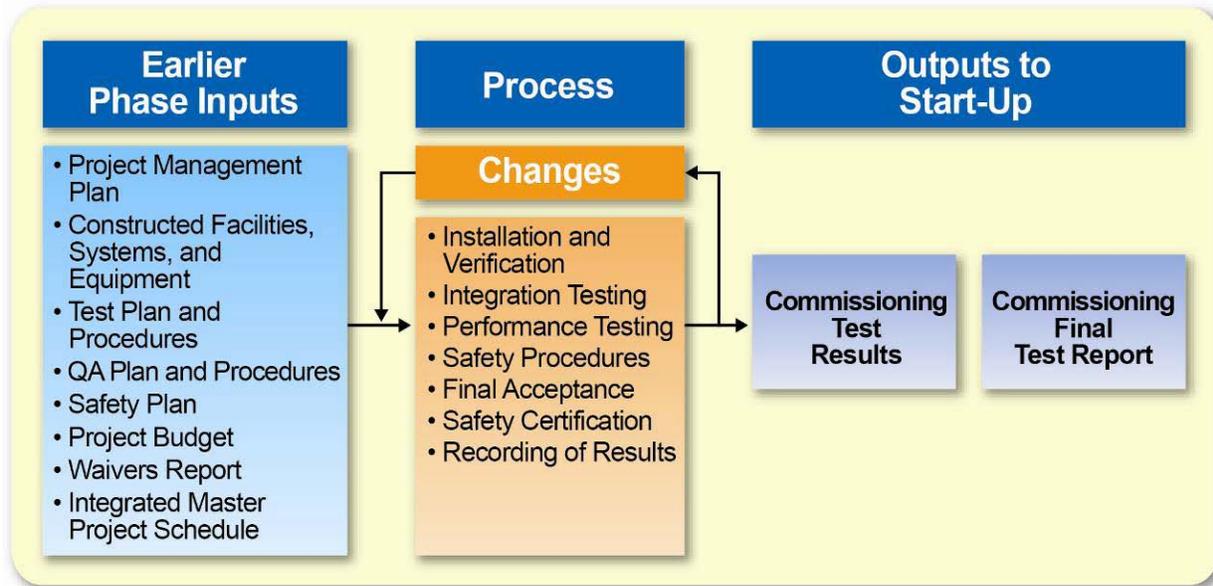


Figure 2-7. Testing Phase Process

Start-up involves the full operation of the accepted fixed guideway system or improvement in a functional test and training mode by the grantee's personnel prior to its use in revenue service. Pre-Revenue typically refers to simulated revenue service operations without passengers. Figure 2-8 shows the key inputs to the Start-Up Phase in terms of the plans, procedures, and resources defined in the previous phases and the resulting plans and reports which create a baseline for the initiation of Revenue Service. While Figure 2-7 and Figure 2-8 establish requirements for NSPs, the general processes are applicable to other transit capital projects. Further Testing and Start-Up responsibilities of grantees are provided in Chapter 6 of this document.

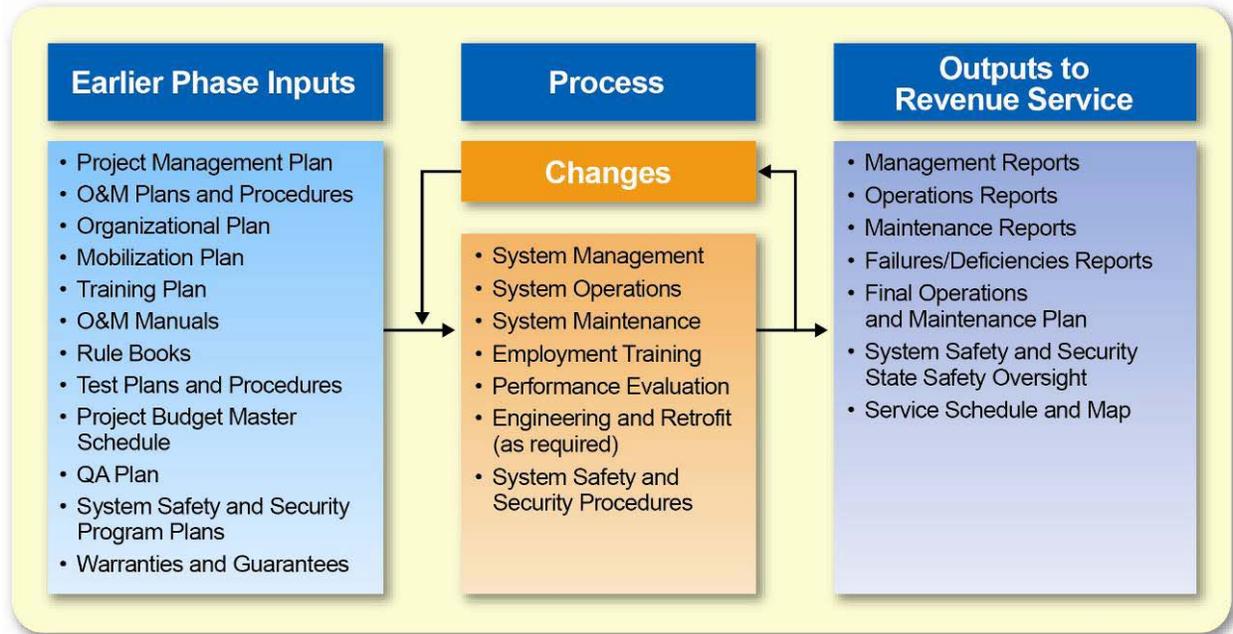


Figure 2-8. Start-Up Phase Process

2.3.6 Revenue Service Phase

2.3.6.1 Operations and Maintenance

The Revenue Service Phase is the period of normal system operations that occurs after the transit capital project has been completed. Revenue Service begins when the system accepts transit passengers for revenue service and when stations, etc., are open to patrons for normal use of the facilities. It should be based on the Operating Plan developed previously.

From the perspective of effective transit project management, grantee attention during the Revenue Service Phase should focus on the safe operations and maintenance of the facility(ies). The grantee should check safety and security installations (such as CCTV cameras, public address systems, placement of Fare Collection equipment, and placement of ADA-required facilities or signage) to assure that they meet the requirements of Revenue Service. Further, attention should be directed to identifying any unanticipated patron volume and patterns of use of any portion of a new facility, as these may result in the need to alter placement of safety and security equipment, signage, or other features. An ongoing process of planning and analysis of performance statistics should be structured to define the need for future projects to modernize or supplement the operating transit system. The grantee may then institute a continuous quality improvement program to identify opportunities for improving the cost-effectiveness of transit service and making modifications to improve performance. The program should include a formal configuration management process governing design, implementation, and ongoing operations that approves and documents system changes.

2.3.6.2 System Performance Monitoring/Assessment

Grantee efforts during the Revenue Service Phase should be directed toward maintaining and improving a high level of system performance and planning for modifications and improvements to the existing transit system. Grantees may undertake planning initiatives related to new routes, new service and extensions, which would be encompassed within the Planning phases as discussed in Section 2.2. The activities and experience of several transit authorities in planning modernization and improvements to their existing rail systems has been documented in *Rail Modernization Planning: Review of Current Practices* [Ref. 2-31], and is relevant to the considerations in this section.

The experience of the Bay Area Rapid Transit (BART) system in San Francisco is applicable to fixed guideway transit systems. Supported by an effective operational performance information system, BART has focused its planning and analysis efforts on overcoming system design deficiencies, improving operational performance, and increasing passenger carrying capacity. This process involves periodically revising the organization's goals and operating performance objectives, developing capital and operating programs, and monitoring ongoing system performance both in general terms and against specific performance objectives.

BART instituted its Reliability Improvement Program (RIP) after that agency's rail line was originally constructed to methodically improve system reliability and safety. The RIP included a definition of key system problems, analysis of their affect on service and measurable performance units, establishment of performance goals, careful assessment of the primary causes of the unsatisfactory performance, design and implementation of the most potentially effective projects to solve the problems, and measurement of the impact of the changes. BART also incorporated a Reliability Centered Maintenance program to augment these processes.

Grantees may also benefit from reviewing and incorporating techniques described in the [FTA's Transit Performance Monitoring System](#) (TPMS) Results [Ref. 2-59].

2.3.6.3 Before and After Study

FTA's December 2000 Final Rule on Major Capital Investment Projects (49 CFR Part 611) included several provisions that incorporated Before and After Studies into the New Starts process. The 2005 SAFETEA-LU amendment of Section 5309(g)(2)(c) required that grantees, as a condition of receiving an FFGA, collect and preserve information on the following five project components generated during project planning and development:

- (1) Project scope
- (2) Transit service levels
- (3) Capital costs
- (4) Operating and maintenance costs
- (5) Ridership patterns and revenues

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

In addition, [FTA's Circular FTA C 5200.1A – Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance](#) [Ref. 2-40], states that a Before and After Study Plan is required by grantees pursuing an FFGA (Chapter 2, Section 11 of this Circular discusses this requirement). This Plan should be prepared during the Final Design Phase, prior to award of an FFGA. The purpose of the Before and After Study Plan is to make sure that data collection and analysis are done in ways that ensure that all comparisons made are complete and accurate. There are many factors (internal and external) throughout a project's life that will result in changes; therefore, this Plan must include the grantee's procedures to capture and document changes, preferably as they occur. However, it is important to note that collection and preservation of project information/data by the grantee typically begins during the Alternative Analysis phase of a project and before entering the PE Phase. Grantees are required to preserve this data at each of the following project milestones:

- Before
 - Entry into PE
 - Entry into Final Design
 - Immediately prior to award of FFGA
 - Prior to start of revenue operations
- After/actual
 - Two years after the start of revenue operations

For further information regarding the preservation of project data, as well as guidance on the preparation of a Before and After Study Plan and the actual Study itself, grantees should reference:

- [FTA Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures](#), issued May 16, 2006 [Ref. 2-60]
- FTA Guidance on Before and After Studies, revised October 2006 [Ref. 2-61]

2.3.6.4 Capital Replacement Planning

FTA has sponsored studies (See also Section 2.1.2.1) that address rail modernization planning and analysis issues. Because of the FTA funding categorization, the term "modernization" has become synonymous with "capital replacement" that encompasses the following:

- *Refurbishment* - The renovation, restoration, redecoration, revamping or overhaul of equipment and facilities to adequate standards of performance and a "State-of-Good-Repair", which, if neglected, could cause safety hazards or serious disruption of service. Refurbishment should occur at the interval(s) recommended by the construction contractor/designer, or the manufacturer or supplier of the system and/or equipment. It can be generally accomplished by transit agency's maintenance staff. Refurbishment should result in the capability to sustain the existing system performance for at least five years with only a nominal increase in life cycle costs.
- *Rehabilitation* - The substitution of new materials, components or subsystems having basically the same fit and function for the worn or weakened original

equipment. Rehabilitation should occur at the design mid-life of the system or equipment. Due to the extensive scope of the rehabilitation work that will require dedicated labor to complete it in a timely manner and to reduce the down-time of the affected system or equipment, transit agencies typically hire an outside independent contractor to perform it. Rehabilitation should result in an improvement in system performance for a range of 5 to 20 years and a reduction in life cycle costs.

- *Modernization* - The use of proven new materials, components or subsystems to meet higher standards of productivity than are possible with the original equipment or materials. Modernization would occur as needed, primarily as a result of the obsolescence, limited shelf-life, or non-availability of a material, component or subsystem. Modernization would typically require a two-phase implementation – first, requiring design, acquisition, and successful testing of a new prototype; and secondly, with a system-wide full-scale replacement. Modernization should result in reasonable improvements in system performance for a period ranging from 10 to 30 years at no increase in life cycle costs.

Each potential grantee should develop a methodology for planning and programming capital replacement projects based on a variety of performance and cost criteria and a process to assist in project identification and prioritization. This process and methodology should document and track the condition and (initial and replacement) costs of existing facilities, equipment, and rolling stock; it should also include schedules for major maintenance or replacement, as well as estimated refurbishment and/or replacement costs.

The capital cost of a “modernization” project may be justified by the corresponding reduction in O&M costs. The ratio of the annual O&M cost savings to the capital cost of the improvement is called the Return-on-Investment (ROI). The time it takes for the annual O&M cost savings to equal the initial capital investment is called the payback period. The greater the ROI or the shorter the payback period, the more attractive is the associated capital investment. An example is the replacement of a manual train control system with a partially or fully automated system. The new system could be economically attractive if the net reduction in O&M cost was high in relation to the capital cost of the automation equipment.

2.3.6.5 State Safety Oversight (SSO)

In 1991, the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) released a series of recommendations to the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) regarding the need for safety oversight of rail transit agencies by state government. In response to these recommendations, Congress added Section 28 to the Federal Transit Act (codified at 49 U.S.C. Section 5330). Based on this new authority, FTA developed a rule creating the first-ever, state-managed safety and security oversight program for rail transit agencies not regulated by the Federal Railroad Administration (FRA). This regulation was published as "[Rail Fixed Guideway Systems: State Safety Oversight](#)" [Ref. 2-62],

TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

subsequently referred to as the SSO Rule or Part 659. The safety requirements for Part 659 went into effect on January 1, 1997, and the security requirements went into effect one year later. FTA revised Part 659 in a Final Rule published on April 29, 2005.

FTA's SSO rule stipulates that, among other activities, agencies designated by states to oversee rail transit safety and security must make annual reports to FTA. To facilitate this reporting, each January, FTA distributes an Annual Reporting Template to all SSO agencies. This template captures data pertaining to all reportable accidents, determined probable causes, corrective action plans, changes to program documentation, and agency resource allocation. SSO agencies submit their completed annual reports to FTA by March 15th of each year for the preceding calendar year.

Rail fixed guideway systems subject to SSO will be governed by the grantee's SSPP, SSP and the activities and requirements of the SSO agency (SSOA). These include internal audits, triennial safety reviews, triennial security reviews, accident investigations and statistical analysis, configuration management, and conformance with policies and procedures to assure the safety and security of the system's employees, passengers, facilities, and the general public.

CHAPTER 3 – GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

3.1 Introduction

This chapter presents the general principles for managing the transit capital project development process. Emphasis is given to those aspects that are not phase-dependent or that apply to more than one phase, and thus can be applied throughout the project development process. These principles supplement the topics presented in Chapters 4 through 6, which are specifically related to the Design, Construction, and Testing/Start-Up Phases, respectively.

The scope of discussion of these topics applies primarily to larger Major Capital Projects (MCPs), but it is also applicable to smaller transit capital projects. Smaller projects have far fewer organizational and financial resources available to address the project management principles, but nevertheless need to define and assign responsibilities as part of their project development process. Any transit project beyond routine capital replacement can be complex and may be the subject of intense public criticism if it is not successfully implemented. Experience has shown too clearly that projects can experience significant cost increases and schedule slippage in the absence of risk-informed, performance-based and robust project management by grantees. Therefore, grantee attention to managing the capital development is extremely important.

While the concept of "project management" encompasses the entire capital development process from system and project planning through operations and maintenance, "construction management" encompasses the Construction phase activities of a transit project. The **Guidelines** are intended to define sound management approaches for the entire process of transit capital project development, encompassing both traditional project and construction management functions. No attempt has been made to differentiate these functions within these **Guidelines** although a grantee may find it convenient to establish the role of a "construction manager" to oversee the Construction Phase as well as to provide review and input to the Final Design Phase activities. Agencies may also retain "program managers" to act as extensions of their staff and to oversee all phases of the project. In such instances, the program manager(s) must report to grantee staff member(s) who are clearly identified in all project documents as the individuals with management and decision-making responsibility.

Professional organizations available as resources to promote the development and practice of project management and construction management include:

☞ The Project Management Institute (PMI)
4 Campus Boulevard
Newtown Square, PA 19073
(610) 356-4600

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

<http://www.pmi.org/> [Ref. 3-1]

- ☞ The Construction Management Association of America (CMAA)
7918 Jones Branch Drive, Suite 540
McLean, VA 22102
(703) 356-2622
<http://www.cmaanet.org/> [Ref. 3-2]

- ☞ The Design-Build Institute of America (DBIA)
1010 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Third Floor
Washington, DC 10001-5402
(202) 682-0110
<http://www.dbia.org/> [Ref. 3-3]

- ☞ The Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering (AACE) International
209 Prairie Avenue, Suite 100
Morgantown, WV 26501
(304) 296-8444
http://www.aacei.org [Ref. 3-4]

PMI addresses project management topics in a generic manner not necessarily related to capital projects such as in the transit industry, while CMAA focuses on issues affecting the construction of capital projects. DBIA is a relatively new organization that supports design-build and other alternative project delivery methods. AACE International serves cost management professionals -- cost managers and engineers, project managers, planners, schedulers, estimators, bidders, and value engineers. All of these organizations have professional development activities and documentation resources that can be used to enhance the capabilities of management personnel involved in implementing transit projects.

The Construction Industry Institute (CII) was founded in 1983 to improve cost-effectiveness in construction by identifying needs, conducting research, and publicizing remedies to construction problems. CII is a consortium of leading owners and contractors who have joined together to find better ways of planning and executing capital construction programs. A list of CII publications can be obtained from:

- ☞ The Construction Industry Institute
3925 West Braker Lane
Austin, TX 78759-5316
(512) 232-3000
<http://construction-institute.org/> [Ref. 3-5]

Local User Councils (LUCs) that exist in most metropolitan areas gather data on local construction activities and problems, provide a forum for information exchange among agencies and contractors, and sponsor educational programs for project and

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

construction managers. Membership and participation by the grantee in the nearest LUC is highly desirable. A list of LUCs and their local contacts is available from:

- ☞ The Construction Users Roundtable (CURT)
4100 Executive Park Drive
Cincinnati, OH 45241
(513) 563-4131
<http://www.curt.org/> [Ref. 3-6]

MCPs are complex undertakings that require a formal, risk-informed, performance-based management approach in order to achieve success. To better understand the processes involved in managing such projects, it is worthwhile to review some definitions:

- Project –Any series of activities and tasks carrying a specific objective that must be accomplished within certain specifications; having defined start and end dates; having funding limits, and consuming resources such as time, money, labor, and materials.
- Project Management –Planning, supervision and control of the project.
- Project Planning – The process of creating the clear definition of work requirements, quantity of work, and resource requirements.
- Project Supervision – The management activity that involves a performance tracking process, comparing actual to predicted qualitative as well as quantitative outcomes, analyzing impacts, and making adjustments.
- Successful Project Management –Achieving the project objectives within budget and on schedule and at the desired performance level (plan, specifications, quality), while using the assigned resources effectively and efficiently.

The management philosophy, project team attitude, and application of project resources are critical to the success of any project. They are established and fostered by the grantee/project manager and, if effective, permeate the entire project team. Hennepin County's Study for Light Rail, for instance, included a succinct list of features necessary for the success of capital projects [Ref. 3-7]:

- *Well Defined Project Concept* – clearly-defined project concept and mission – what, why, when, and at what cost.
- *Strong Project Champion and Local Public Support* - both public and private sector local support, especially by those most directly affected by the project during construction and operations; strong and effective leadership to develop and maintain project consensus.
- *Timely Implementation of a First Line or Initial Segment* – a successful start-up that maintains public support and provides the basis for future financial commitments.
- *Small Project Management Team* – cost-effective use of consultants to permit simple/direct lines of communication, timely/responsive decision-making, and minimal interference with contractors.
- *Appropriate Risk Sharing* – clear identification and allocation of risks through the grantee's procurement/contracting policies and procedures.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- *Early ROW Clearance* – the grantee responsibility, either directly or through separate contracts, for ROW acquisition/clearance, including utility relocation prior to the beginning of construction.

3.2 Grantee and Project Organization

3.2.1 Grantee Authority, Requirements, and Organization

The grantee responsible for any transit capital project must possess the legal authority to carry out all the requirements necessary to effectively plan and implement the project. Statutory authority may be required to perform functions such as:

- Planning, design, construction, ownership, operation, and maintenance of public transit facilities, equipment and rolling stock
- Local financing, including use of public funds, taxation, and issuing bonds
- Receipt of Federal and state grants
- Procurement and awarding contracts
- Real estate acquisition and condemnation

A review of existing statutes should be made to gain a full understanding of the grantee's authority and any legal constraints that may affect the project. The purpose should be to identify requirements and constraints in an orderly and timely manner and to deal with them as the project advances. Failure to recognize and accommodate legal requirements may jeopardize the entire project and, at the very least, severely impact the subsequent grant approval process and project schedule, as well as project costs. The project sponsor must be diligent in maintaining cognizance of changes in the legislative/regulatory environment which may impose future constraints on a project. The ability to anticipate and deal with those potential issues in the Planning/Alternatives Analysis, Preliminary Engineering and Final Design phases may save considerable time and effort during construction. In addition to state and local requirements, specific Federal statutes, rules, regulations, and circular listings, include, but are not limited to, the following topics:

- 13(c), labor protection (Federal Transit Act)
- The Americans with Disabilities Act - ADA (42 U.S.C. 12101 *et seq*)
- Brooks Act - qualifications based procurement method (40 U.S.C. Chap 11)
- Buy America (49 U.S.C. 5323j)
- Capital Leasing (49 U.S.C. 5301)
- Cargo Preferences (46 U.S.C. 1241)
- Clean Air Act, CAA (42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq*)
- Copeland Anti-Kickback Act (18 U.S.C. 874)
- Davis-Bacon Act - wage rates and labor provisions, (40 U.S.C. 3141 *et seq*)
- Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE)
- Equal Employment Opportunity, EEO (49 U.S.C. 5332b)
- Financial Capacity and Guidance for Financial Plans
- Flood Insurance
- Land Acquisition and Relocation (49 CFR Part 24)

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- National Environmental Policy Act, NEPA (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq*)
- National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470)
- National Pollution Discharge Elimination System
- Occupational Safety and Health Regulations
- Procurement
- Rail Safety Improvement Act (2008)
- Rehabilitation Act (accommodations for persons with disabilities)
- System and project safety and security

There is occasionally the perception that State/local laws may conflict with Federal requirements. If one does not defer to the other, the grantee must comply with both. For example, in real estate, state law may necessitate a payment not mandated by Federal requirements. In such an instance, the grantee typically must comply with the state law even if such payment is not eligible for Federal grant participation.

When a transit agency undertakes a capital project, the relationship of the agency's project team to the agency's operating, finance, planning, design, construction and other organizational units must be clearly defined and the interface points between them clearly established to achieve scope, quality, cost, and schedule goals. Through its governing board, the grantee is responsible for performing the following functions:

- Establishing project policy
- Assuring financing of the project
- Approving funding applications
- Approving budgets, commitments, and expenditures
- Approving project scope and definition (Design criteria)
- Establishing change control policies and procedures to control scope, cost and schedule creep
- Assuring quality of all end products
- Approving contract documents
- Approving award of contracts and contract changes
- Acquiring land
- Executing the project
- Determining operational readiness and certifying that the safety and security requirements outlined in the Safety and Security Checklist have been fulfilled

A typical grantee organization will have a chief executive officer (e.g., president, general manager or executive director) who will implement board policies through the day-to-day operations of the grantee. Often this individual will be assisted by heads of departments such as engineering, construction, real estate, finance, procurement, legal, personnel, operations, safety, security, and public affairs. Taking into account the grantee's organization, the project to be implemented, and the grantee's future role and responsibilities in the new project, there are a number of successful organizational approaches with regard to staffing the project. These include:

- Developing or reassigning an in-house staff (with prior successful track record with similar projects) to a project office to undertake the entire project. This in-

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

house staff organization may be augmented by a project management oversight consultant or project advisor to assist in providing independent advice or analysis to senior management.

- Utilizing existing third-party agencies (with prior successful track record with similar projects) such as another transit agency or state or local government agencies to perform the work under a third party contract. This third-party organizational arrangement may be augmented by a project management oversight consultant or project advisor to assist in providing independent advice or analysis to senior management.
- Under the dedicated management team with sufficient resources to oversee and supervise a consultant(s), delegating responsibility to a general consultant for planning, designing, and constructing the facility, or assignment of the management of design, and construction to separate consultants. Consultants must have a successful track record.
- If the grantee does not have adequate and dedicated management resources to oversee the general consultant, grantee can delegate the responsibility of project management to a program/project management consultant.
- Utilizing contractors for alternative project delivery methods, such as D/B, DBOM, and concessions.
- Combinations of the above approaches.

No matter which organizational approach is chosen, the grantee has the ultimate responsibility for the effective management of the project. The project staff may typically be organized in a matrix form of organization delineating engineering and construction activities. The matrix must clearly indicate which grantee staff member(s) are responsible for overseeing and supervising any non-grantee (i.e., contractors, consultants, etc.) activities. A matrix organizational form is often defined with multiple reporting relationships as further explained below.

Figure 3-1 depicts a matrix organization in which line departments with functional responsibilities are shown vertically and project organizations with project responsibilities are shown horizontally. In such an organization a staff person has dual reporting responsibilities to the functional manager and to the project manager. Figure 3-2 further develops this concept to define the project office into which staff can be assigned on a temporary basis while remaining functionally affiliated. This matrix organization is utilized on finite duration projects, such as MCPs, where dual focal points of equal importance are required – technical/scope and cost/schedule. Personnel assigned to the project report to the project manager regarding work priorities (what must be done and when), and to a functional manager for the technical adequacy (how work is to be done). The matrix form of organization permits the integration of technical specialists and firms which may participate on several individual tasks to effectively contribute, along with others, to the accomplishment of the project objectives for which the organization is responsible.

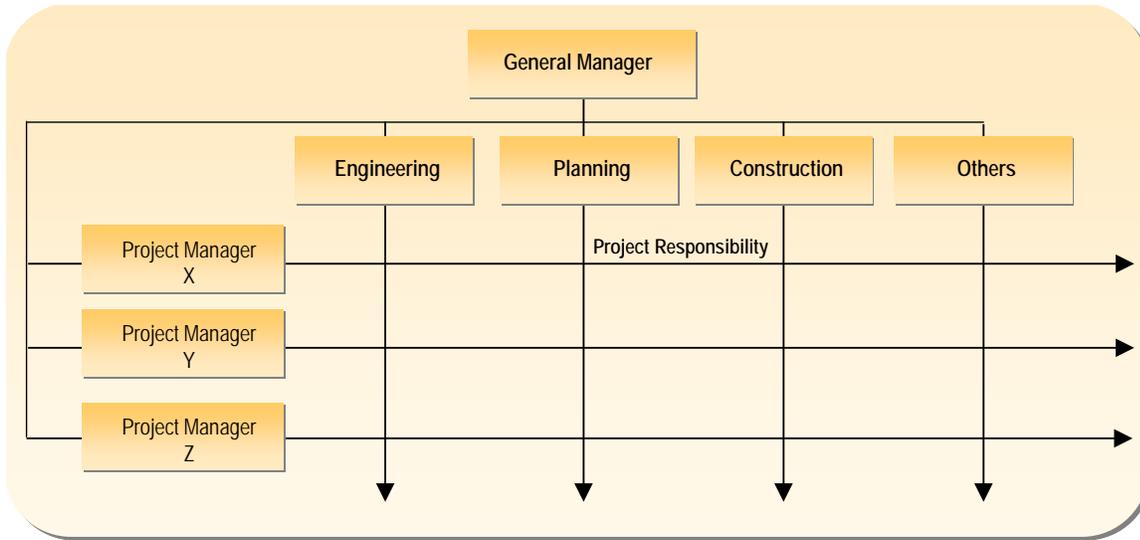


Figure 3-1. Matrix Organization

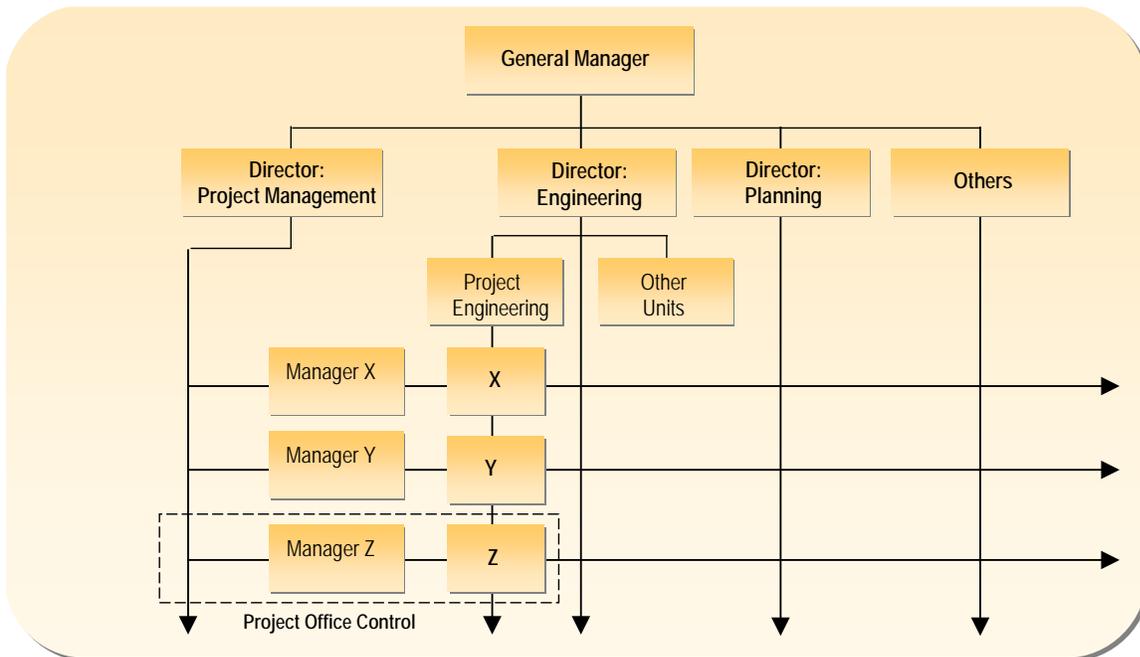


Figure 3-2. Matrix Organization with a Project Office

As a transit capital project, particularly an MCP, evolves throughout its phases from planning to implementation, it will refine its objectives and vary its organizational participation, depending on the specific requirements of each phase. Thus, the project management framework must be flexible to accommodate the needs of each phase.

3.2.2 Project Organization, Staffing, and Training

The goal of the project organization should be the effective and efficient accomplishment of the project objectives for each project phase. This may necessitate

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

the involvement of different personnel and contractors from phase to phase and may even warrant different lead public agencies and project managers.

As a project evolves, however, there is a need for continuity to assure the achievement of its overall objectives. Critical in the structuring of any organization is the flow of authority and responsibility from the grantee through the project manager, functional area managers, and contractor managers to each assigned project participant. Variations in the size and complexity of transit capital projects and the capability of the individual grantee will influence the need for outside consultants and contractors within the project's organizational structure.

The size, qualifications, and availability of existing staff resources must be considered in relation to the human resource requirements and duration of the project. For the small bus operator planning a new maintenance facility or the transit system developing a single fixed guideway segment, it may be prudent to contract for technical studies, design, and project management services, rather than hiring an entirely new or greatly expanded staff. In the case of a large fixed guideway system development, a project may employ consultants initially, until in-house staff capabilities are developed gradually to the point that they can replace the consultants. Agencies also have the option to assign greater responsibility to contractors by utilizing alternative project delivery methods as described in Section 2.2.6 and later in this chapter.

The obvious benefit of using contracted support services for a project of finite duration is the ability to terminate their involvement and associated expense when the project is completed. Even when an outside organization is used, the grantee must have in place its own qualified organization to maintain overall control of the project, provide timely decision-making, and maintain appropriate communication channels with all project participants and stakeholders. Clearly, grantees should avoid any organizational structure that results in duplication of effort, or that would tend to undermine authority. The organizational structure and work scopes for both grantee staff and outside contractors must clearly define their respective responsibilities.

Integrated Management Teams

Teams for the management of major projects must be compatible with the existing grantee organization. Oftentimes they have been set apart from the agency and its support staff (and even, sometimes, its design and operations functions) only to cause unnecessary friction and an inability to take advantage of existing management and control systems. Particularly when the project management team includes the key management and staff of the eventual operator, a failure to integrate the grantee general management and administrative functions and staff misses economies, synergy and the gaining "ownership" by those who will ultimately be operating the completed project.

Organizing and staffing during each of the project development phases should adhere to the following guidelines, which should be addressed in detail in the Project Management Plan (PMP) (See Section 2.2.3):

- Charts should be developed for

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

each phase and should cover all project functions. These charts should identify key personnel in all organizations and clearly define their principal duties, reporting relationships, assigned responsibilities, and delegated authority. Staffing utilization and commitment levels should be indicated (as percent of full time equivalent), and job qualifications provided. The organization chart could be presented as or supplemented with a tabular staffing plan that shows percent utilization, mobilization start date, and release date (where applicable) information.

- Interface points within and outside the project organization should be identified.
- Grantee and contractor organization charts showing the organizational placement of personnel assigned to the project and the interface points should be required for all major project participants.
- A staff mobilization plan that incorporates a schedule of milestone events should be developed.
- The philosophy governing the development of the project organization should be stated and the decision to use contractors or in-house services should be explained.

Delegations of Authority

Delegation of authority levels need to be established by the grantee at the outset of the project. These delegations must also recognize the numerous changes the agency will face during the life of the project. It is wisest for a grantee to adopt the principle of "authority at the level most knowledgeable and aligned with the responsibilities."

Delegations of authority should promote transparency in the making of decisions. Everyone with a responsible charge for making decisions should be accountable for his or her actions, and these actions must be based on clear documentation, sound analysis, and an understanding of their consequences. Contract amendments as well as change order dollar values can and should be assigned to the level most appropriate to deal with and approve the changes.

Assigning levels of authority and dollar value restrictions on that authority can be used to efficiently deal with changes, keep contractors on schedule, and mitigate claims. Each agency/authority may need a differing level of change authority delegation.

It should be recognized that for large, multi-segment, fixed guideway projects (new construction or modernization), a grantee may simultaneously be in several project development phases on individual system segments (e.g., such as Planning or Preliminary Engineering on one segment, Final Design on another, or even Construction and/or Equipment Procurement on a third segment). Detailed project organization charts should be prepared for each phase to show all of the participants and their reporting relationships.

Project management should be sensitive to the appropriate human resource and

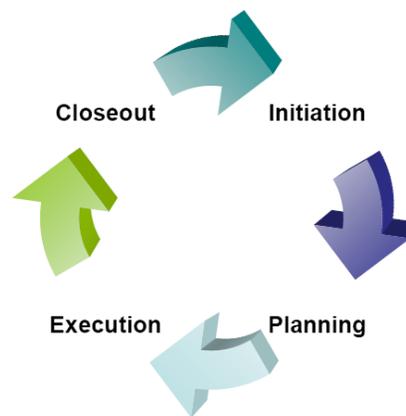
GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

training needs of the project team members in the unique aspects of the project being undertaken. In-house staff may need to be exposed to training on implementation of new project delivery techniques such as D/B, turnkey and DBOM. The grantee should include specific staff management capabilities and training requirements in contract documents. Areas of training could include:

- Issue resolution, elevation and communications protocol
- Project control requirements
- Project team roles and responsibilities, especially with non-conventional project development approaches
- Project partnering and claims avoidance techniques
- FTA guidance for managing MCPs
- Environmental sensitivities and mitigation requirements
- Construction safety awareness and related risk insurances
- Contract packaging and delivery method(s)
- Construction security awareness and breach reporting procedures
- Community impact mitigation requirements and approaches
- Safety, security, and operational concerns when working adjacent to an existing fixed guideway transit system

3.2.3 Work Breakdown Structure

As a means of organizing the project to allow for effective project control, the grantee must establish a detailed Work Breakdown Structure (WBS). The WBS is a deliverable-oriented hierarchical decomposition of the work to be executed by the grantee/program team, to accomplish the project objectives and create the required deliverables. The WBS subdivides the project work into smaller, more manageable pieces of work, with each descending level of the WBS representing an increasingly detailed definition of the project work. The planned work contained within the lowest-level WBS components (work packages) can be scheduled, cost estimated, monitored, and controlled.



The WBS:

- Provides a framework for organizing all of the work and managing approved project scope
- Provides a traceable and easily identifiable record of work and can be used as a check-tool to ensure all work is captured
- Provides a framework for planning, monitoring and controlling the program scope, schedule and cost

The WBS should include all project management life-cycle phases, from project initiation to project closeout, well after revenue operations are underway. Likewise the WBS should include the decomposition of work required of all parties on the program.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Such parties include the Owner, supporting federal, state and local agencies, funding partners, consultants, contractors and vendors. All FTA requirements, guidelines and deliverables should be clearly established in the WBS; especially permits, environmental documents, deliverables and other critical items that require third party review and approval.

The WBS taxonomy can be classified in a multitude of categories such as geography, management oversight group, project delivery methods, contract packaging, Minimal operable Segment (MOS), funding source, etc. It is normally prepared in a hierarchical or multi-tiered fashion with the lower tiers being defined during design and project execution. A number, or alpha-numeric identification, is assigned to every WBS element.

The WBS should be developed to meet the needs of project management, not merely the needs of the control functions or other specialties. A hierarchy of system physical components should be established either within the WBS or separately so that work packages applicable to each configuration item can be identified and followed. Tasking in the PMP or other project master or subordinate plans should be to WBS elements. As example, Figure 3-3 shows the hierarchy of the WBS used for a Los Angeles Metro Rail project.

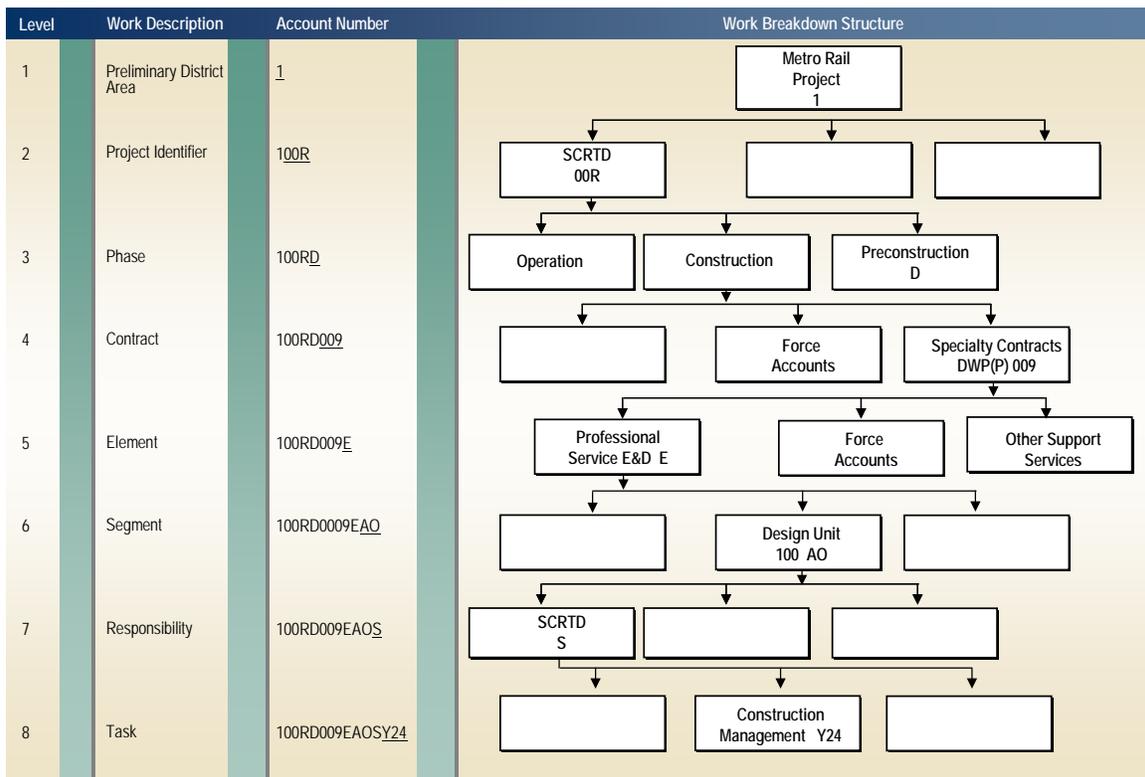


Figure 3-3. Example of a WBS [Ref. 3-8]

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

The WBS concept is applied to project tasks by considering several similar functions or a logical grouping of tasks as a work package that is assigned to a management unit. A management unit is the individual or portion of the organization responsible for supervising design, or procurement, or construction, or combination of tasks included in the work package. By breaking down work into packages, it becomes easier to manage a multifaceted undertaking such as a transit project. The grantee and the project manager must use care in applying WBS techniques only to those situations where there are sufficient supervisory personnel representing the grantee to monitor and control scope, schedule and cost performance of each package.

In summary, the WBS must represent a breakdown of work that is manageable and meaningful, ultimately serving also as a historical record that can be used for initiation of the next project phase and delineating the changes to and current status of scope, schedule and budget.

A final note: In 2005, FTA implemented the Standard Cost Categories, to establish a consistent format for the reporting, estimating, and managing of capital costs for New Starts projects. The cost information gathered from projects across the country will be developed into a database and become a cost estimating resource useful to FTA and the transit industry alike. The SCC Workbook is a project management tool -- project-based as opposed to grant-based. Consequently, all grantees should, from the outset of capital cost estimating, develop their estimates using the WBS while simultaneously populating the SCC formatted budget with data from the same source. (See [FTA's Standard Cost Categories \(SCC\) for Capital Projects](#)) [Ref. 3-9]

Over the life of a project, the consistent WBS format tied directly into the SCC format should make it easier to track, evaluate and control cost changes. Submission of capital costs to FTA in the SCC format is required at the following points:

- Request to enter Preliminary Engineering
- Request to enter Final Design
- Request for Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA)
- Submission for Annual New Starts evaluation
- FFGA amendments
- During construction at regular intervals
- At revenue operations
- Annually until the later of the submission of the Before & After Study or at project close-out and resolution of claims

3.3 Financial Requirements/Resources

For a project to be viable, it is important that it be based upon realistic cost estimates and a credible plan for financing both the capital and O&M costs. Historically, in many situations, capital costs for transit projects have been funded by a combination of Federal government (FTA) and matching funds provided by state and local government sources. Operating costs have traditionally been funded partially by farebox revenues

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

with other major support coming from Federal, state, and local government taxes or other dedicated revenue sources.

Recently, the Federal share of funding for capital projects has been decreased (see Section 2.2.8) while state and local governments have increased their share of the funding for capital projects. As a result, FTA has begun encouraging grantees to consider a number of creative financing arrangements, including private sector participation, to support both capital and operating costs and, in some cases, project implementation and ownership. As the funding sources for transit projects become more numerous and complex, grantee management of them becomes more important. Furthermore, as Federal funding is subject to annual appropriations, grantees must develop alternative plans in case the Federal share is reduced or delayed.

[Guidance for Transit Financial Plans](#) [Ref. 2-39]

FTA provided the guidance referenced above regarding the development of grantee financial plans. These plans are to adhere to the outline set forth below. Key issues related to the elements of the financial plan are discussed in the following sections and included in Figure 3-4.

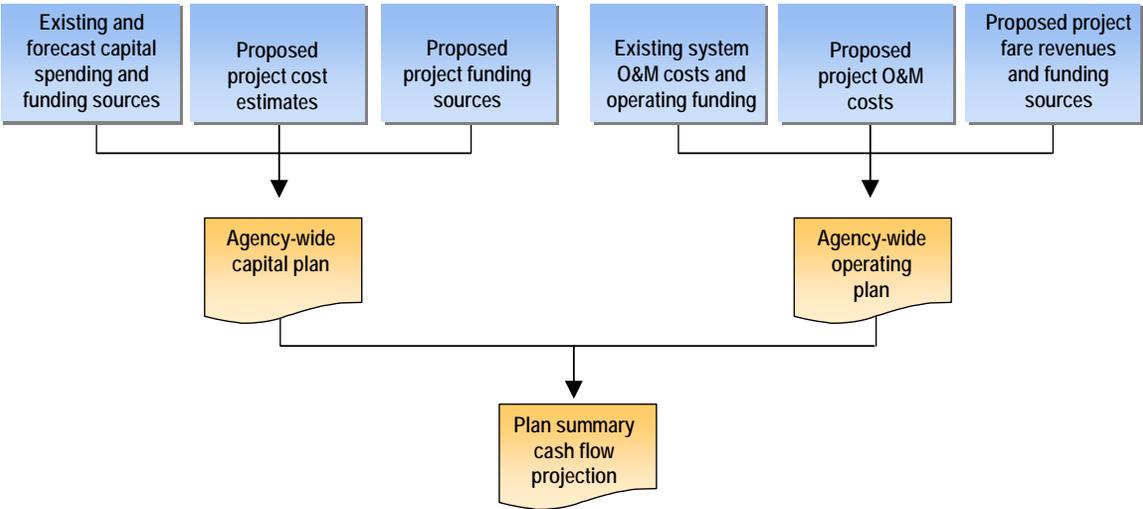


Figure 3-4. Components of a Financial Plan

3.3.1 Capital Plan

The first element of the financial plan is the capital plan, which documents the grantee's capital spending plans and funding sources and describes in detail its plan to fund the construction of the proposed project. The capital plan is composed of three elements: (1) The grantee's 20-year forecast capital spending and funding sources, (2) the proposed project cost estimates expressed in year of expenditure (YOE) dollars, and (3) the proposed project funding sources. The capital plan documentation should confirm the stability, reliability, and availability of all capital funding sources and describe the grantee's capital spending plans 20 years into the future.

3.3.1.1 Project Capital Plan

FTA requires a cost estimate and schedule at each phase of project development, although the format of the cost estimate changes. In AA and PE, project cost estimates and schedules present data in increasingly detailed unit cost breakdowns of the proposed project. When a project proceeds to Final Design (FD) and the grantee seeks an FFGA, the cost estimates are allocated to specific contracts and are based on quantity takeoffs and unit prices of WBS components that can then be tracked and periodically updated as the project continues through the design and construction process.

Capital cost deliverables describe the cost estimation process and segment costs by major cost category (e.g., guideway, facilities, systems, and vehicles). Cost estimates include soft-costs such as the following:

- Real estate/ROW acquisition and relocation
- Utility relocation
- Project management
- Engineering, design, and specialized studies
- Construction management
- Environmental impact mitigation
- Public involvement
- Testing and start-up
- Insurance
- Project financing
- Contingency allowances
- Escalation from the date of the estimate to the date of implementation

The capital plan should document the current cost estimate for the proposed project, describing each major cost component. In Alternatives Analysis (AA), this can be a simple cost estimate, including high contingencies to reflect uncertainties in scope, which can be used for the financial plan before a project enters PE. During PE, the scope of the project should be more accurately determined and additional detail should be added to the cost estimate, forming the Baseline Project Budget that matches up with the Baseline Project Description and forms the Basis for Design. As indicated in Section 3.2.3, this Baseline Project Budget must be prepared following FTA guidance provided in a workbook that collects and assembles the capital costs into FTA Standard Cost Categories (SCC format) as well as by the grantee's planned contract units established through the establishment of a definitive contract packaging method.

[FTA's Standard Cost Categories \(SCC\) for Capital Projects](#) [Ref. 3-9] contains an SCC format sample project budget that all grantees, and MCP grantees in particular, must use at the entry to each project phase. This same reference [Ref. 3-9] also demonstrates the translation of a grantee cost estimate into SCC format. The grantee should keep in mind that the budget format used must be directly correlated and accurately represented in the SCC format.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Construction cost indices are useful in estimating costs. Two national sources for cost indices are *Engineering News Record* and *F.W. Dodge Reports*, both of which are published by McGraw-Hill, Inc. Local cost data are typically published by various construction groups. State agencies and associations publish unit cost data for various construction items. These data are beneficial because local labor rates for various crafts are used, together with labor availability in the area. However, in many instances, they fail to account for some of the cost line items that are unique to transit projects.

FTA has developed a “Capital Cost Database” that, as of this writing, has the as-built costs for thirty-five (35), federally-funded, Light Rail and Heavy Rail projects. These costs are tracked in the FTA’s SCC framework and the costs validated by the project sponsors. This [Capital Cost Database](#) [Ref. 3-10] is available on line, and is being added to regularly.

Additional FTA studies of transit capital costs have documented actual costs by categories for several transit projects:

- ☞ *Light Rail Transit Capital Cost Study* [Ref. 3-11].
- ☞ *Fixed Guideway Capital Costs, Heavy Rail and Busway/HOV Lane* [Ref. 3-12].
- ☞ [The Transit Capital Cost Index](#) [Ref. 3-13].

These studies provide cost information for labor, materials, and equipment, as well as normalized cost information to account for cost differences by project date and city. Referring to these studies will also assist transit agencies in developing local cost estimates by cost component.

Internal FTA White Paper: Cost Estimation Methodology

Cost estimation is a process that provides progressively more accurate information as a project moves from concept through Final Design and awarding of Construction contracts. It establishes initial budget limits and is the crucial element of a project management/control system. FTA relies heavily on a grantee’s ability to develop and monitor an accurate project budget. Over time, budgets should be refined as more detailed engineering information becomes available. The White Paper provides several cost estimation recommendations (see Appendix A).

The capital cost estimates should initially produce data in present day dollars and then escalate them to the year-of-expenditure (YOE), using distinct inflation forecasts for, at a minimum, material and equipment costs, ROW acquisition, labor cost, and general price inflation. The *Transit Capital Cost Index* report contains information on inflation indices. Costs in constant dollars should be budgeted according to the construction schedule. These costs should then be escalated to the year-of-expenditure. The SCC Workbook provides, at the worksheet tab entitled “Inflation”, a formatted spreadsheet grantees are encouraged to use to calculate YOE costs based upon the project cash flow. (See Federal Transit

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Administration - [Standard Cost Categories \(SCC\) for Capital Projects](#) [Ref. 3-9]

During FD, grantees usually break projects into contract units or packages, each with a distinct schedule and cost estimate and a specific contingency amount allocated to each contract at the time of award. An unallocated contingency amount should be maintained at the project level. The initial escalated cost estimate divided into contract units is, as mentioned above, called the Baseline Project Budget and is developed by the MCP grantee before an FFGA is signed. This estimate may be derived from estimated contract costs escalated to year-of-expenditure (generally at the mid-point of construction but sometimes even more specific with respect to at least the anticipated quarter in which expenditures will be booked). Each contract will be awarded and tracked by the grantee throughout the Construction phase.

The cost estimates may change as bids for each of the contracts come in higher or lower than the Baseline Project Budget has projected. If the contingency funds (allocated and unallocated) are not sufficient to accommodate higher bids and future project risk, changes to project scope and contract amendments may be required to stay within budget. The grantee should track these changes in project costs on a separate schedule that provides the current budget forecast for the project. As the current budget forecast changes, the capital plan may need revisions to ensure that the grantee maintains a sound financial position. Grantees are subject to financial spot reviews by FTA and its PMOs to ensure that they have the financial capacity to complete the project according to the terms of the FFGA, as well as to operate and maintain the existing transit system and service levels.

It is imperative that grantees carefully undertake any and all proposed changes in project scope so as not to compromise the project definition enunciated in the project's Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) or FEIS associated programmatic agreements, or jeopardize the provisions of the FFGA or Master Agreement.

3.3.1.2 Force Account

Capital project work conducted by grantee in-house forces to support the work of private contractors is classified as "Force Account" by FTA [Circular 5010.1D](#) [Ref. 2-29]. Force Account work is eligible for Federal funding if properly documented and "warranted" in terms of:

- Cost savings
- Exclusive expertise
- Safety, security, and efficiency of operations
- Union agreements

Control of Force Account Schedules & Budgets

Rail transit agencies have undertaken major capital improvement programs that meet the criteria for Force Account Work, while maintaining nearly normal passenger service. In order to integrate the Force Account budgeting and scheduling with the agency's, the agency may need to establish or designate someone within its Operating Division to monitor the costs and provide the necessary focus for coordination of Force Account and contractual work. The agency needs a process for formalizing the scheduling, documentation, analysis, and methods of communication between the managers of capital programs and operations.

3.3.1.3 Subsequent Modernization Cost

The estimated cost to periodically modernize and replace capital equipment and facilities is considered a capital expense. A sound financial plan should include this cost to assure that the resources will be available to maintain the capital investment. The estimated cost should be based on replacement cycles for the various elements. A capital replacement or sinking fund with regular contributions could be used to assure that funds will be available. Such a fund could also be used for needed capital modernization or as a match for an anticipated state or Federal grant.

3.3.1.4 Contingencies

Cost contingencies provide reserves against the risk of cost increases during the development of the project. These contingencies must be separately identified in the project's financial plan and included in the capital cost estimates. The capital cost documentation should include a description of all the cost escalation risks and identify the range of potential cost impacts. Contingencies can be established as a specific amount or as a percentage of a budget estimate to cover (or both):

- Areas of the budget estimate not fully defined as well as cost and quantity uncertainties
- Escalation which exceeds that predicted for material, labor, equipment, services, and rates of exchange
- Overruns in items of time and cost during project execution
- Unforeseen or changed conditions, design revisions, and estimating inaccuracies

☞ Useful information on cost escalation risks is contained in [Risk Assessment in Fixed Guideway Transit System Construction](#) [Ref. 3-14].

As a project moves through the engineering and design processes, cost increases due to the refinement of design are less likely and, consequently, the contingency should be reduced. Typical working targets for total contingencies start in the 30 to 40 percent of project costs range in the project planning phase, drop to 30 to 35 percent at the entry into the PE phase, drop further to 20 percent at entry into FD, and, at the award of an FFGA, total contingencies will typically have a working target of 15 percent and even that may be reduced after construction contracts have been signed. At 90-100% bid for

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

the grantee, or 90-100% subcontracted for the prime contractor in an alternative project delivery method, the working target for total contingency is 10%. At 50% physically complete for Construction, the working target for total contingency is at least 5%. It would then be prudent, given experience with Testing and Start Up Phases and close-out of project contracts, to hold that 5 percent total contingency through completion of the project.

After an FFGA is signed, the project sponsor is responsible for any cost increases and for fulfilling the terms of the FFGA. Reduced service, delayed construction, or reductions in project scope are not acceptable contingency plans. If it is concerned about project risks and the adequacy of contingencies, FTA may require the creation of a capital reserve account of potential revenue sources to offset potential cost overruns in excess of the sources identified in the FFGA.

3.3.1.5 *Capital Funding*

FTA New Starts Funding is provided through 49 USC 5309. Section 5309 funding also supports fixed guideway modernization, bus, and bus related projects. Other capital funding sources include the Urbanized Area Formula Program (49 USC 5307), Non-Urbanized Area Formula Program (49 USC 5311), and Flexible Funding Transfers. Flexible funds can be used for highway, transit, or other transportation projects, as determined by the regional MPOs and state governments. Examples of such funds are the Surface Transportation Program (STP) and the Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality (CMAQ) funds. A number of transit agencies have been successful in tapping into these flexible funds for transit projects.

Given that the availability of FTA funds is limited and the demand is high, it is advantageous to have in place a capital plan that identifies all potential sources of funding, including non-FTA Federal and non-Federal sources.

The project capital plan must identify the proposed sources of funds for constructing the proposed project and detail the non-Federal share of project costs. The information submitted regarding funding sources should provide documentation for FTA to determine the degree of commitment of each funding source and to help ensure that local match requirements are met. As the project advances in the development and implementation process, the required level of commitment of non-Federal funds should increase. To enter PE, a financial plan must identify a "realistic" funding plan for providing the local share. During PE, the project sponsor is expected to secure committed funds so that the majority of non-Federal funds are committed before the project may advance to FD. All non-Federal funds must be formally approved and programmed to fund the non-Federal share of the proposed project before FTA will recommend or approve a project for an FFGA.

The capital plan must summarize the non-Federal and Federal shares of project costs and provide evidence of funding commitment. Such evidence of commitment may include legislative documentation, resolutions approving funding, account balances, a

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

bonding prospectus and grantee debt covenants, signed joint development agreements, and legally binding agreements with state/local agencies committing funds.

The text accompanying the capital plan must clearly identify all local, state, Federal, and private funding sources, including the name, originating level of government, total dollar amount anticipated, amount currently expended, and the share of total project capital costs in year-of-expenditure dollars. The total dollar amount across funding sources must equal or exceed the project's total capital cost, including total (i.e., allocated and unallocated) contingencies. Before entering into an FFGA, FTA will utilize a Financial Management Oversight (FMO) consultant to review and provide an assessment of the grantee's financial capacity.

3.3.1.6 *Alternative Funding Source*

As competition has increased for the limited amount of Federal funds, FTA has encouraged transportation entities to seek alternative funding sources for transit services and facilities. These and other alternative non-Federal transportation funding sources can be used to fund project capital and O&M costs. Candidate techniques have been documented in:

☞ [Alternative Financing](#) [Ref. 3-15]

and are listed below with locations in which their application has been studied:

- Taxes
 - State Sales Tax and Sales Tax on Fuel (State of California)
 - Motor Vehicle Excise Tax (State of Washington)
 - Local Option Transportation Taxes (State of Florida)
 - Sales Tax (Maricopa County, Arizona)
 - Beer Tax (Birmingham, Alabama)
 - Payroll Tax (Portland, Oregon)
 - Tax Increment Financing (Prince Georges County, Maryland)
 - Lottery (State of Pennsylvania)
- Assessments
 - Transit Assessment District (Denver, Colorado)
 - Special Benefit Assessment District (Los Angeles and Miami)
- Fees
 - Transit Impact Fee (San Francisco, California)
- Negotiated Investments
 - Development Bonuses (New York, New York)
 - System Interface Program (Washington, DC)
 - Transfer Center Investment (Portland, Oregon)
- Private Donations and Initiatives
 - Merchant Subsidy (Cedar Rapids, Iowa)
 - Bus Shelter Development (St. Louis, Missouri)
 - Transportation Corporations (State of Texas)

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Rail Station Construction (Secaucus, New Jersey)
- Use of Property and Property Rights
 - Joint Development Program (Washington, DC)
 - Joint Development of Transportation Center (Cedar Rapids, Iowa)
 - Negotiated Land Leases (Tacoma, Washington)
 - Leasing Facilities (Santa Cruz, California)
- Private Development and Provision of Facilities and Services
 - Privately Financed People Movers (Tampa, Las Vegas, and Irving, Texas)
 - Contracted Bus Service and Maintenance (Johnson County, Texas)
 - Contracted Transit Service (Snohomish County, Washington)
 - Transportation Zones (San Gabriel Valley, LA County, CA)
- Public Private Partnership in Fixed Guideway Corridor Development
 - Rail Transit Corridor Development (Fairfax County, Virginia)
 - Corridor People Mover Development (Orange County, Florida).

3.3.1.7 *Financing Techniques*

In addition to traditional and alternative funding sources, transit agencies also have available a number of alternative financing techniques which can help to pay for capital projects and/or which can smooth over an uneven or discontinuous flow of funds from the ultimate funding sources. For more information on these techniques, see:

☞ *Introduction to Public Finance and Public Transit* [Ref. 3-16]

☞ [*Innovative Financing*](#) [Ref. 3-17]

Capital leasing is one option for grantees that can be used if it is determined to be more cost effective by a cost-benefit analysis on the lease vs. buy decision. The requirements are described in Title 49 Chapter 639 and were codified by TEA-21. For a capital lease, a vendor or financial institution leases a capital asset to a transit agency in lieu of selling it to the agency. The grantee makes lease payments from a combination of Federal (up to 80%) and local funds. All Federal funding for capital investment can be used to lease rather than purchase transit equipment. Capital leases can include: maintenance costs, finance charges, including interest, and ancillary costs, e.g., delivery and installation. Tax-exempt capital markets financing vehicles for capital leases are frequently seen as Certificates of Participation.

Another financing tool available from USDOT is the Transportation Infrastructure Financing and Innovation Act (TIFIA), which provides options for subordinate and flexible loans for up to 33% of project costs, loan guarantees and lines of credit. TIFIA provides Federal credit assistance to major transportation investments (including transit capital projects) and is designed to fill market gaps and leverage private investments by providing supplemental and subordinated capital. Additional TIFIA program information is available at <http://tifia.fhwa.dot.gov>. [Ref. 3-18]

More important than the cost savings available from leasing arrangements, however, are the potential savings that can be realized by using capital market borrowing, which

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

can speed up acquisition or construction schedules and thus avoid some of the impact of inflation. The financial markets provide financing instruments that can be used by transit agencies to borrow funds both to smooth the flow from funding sources, and to allow project schedules to accelerate. FTA will support tax-exempt transit financing through advanced construction provisions of the Federal Transit Act as amended. The use of alternative delivery techniques such as concessions can also provide the combination of delivery and financing risk transfer.

Under advanced construction authority, FTA may approve a grantee's use of local funding for a capital project prior to receipt of FTA capital grant funds. Advanced construction can be used when the grantee can demonstrate cost savings which come from advanced funding of a project. Any source of local funds can be used, including cash, loans, short term notes, or bonds. Interest costs are eligible for FTA reimbursement. Advanced construction is a tool to overcome cash flow constraints.

Following are some of the financial instruments available to transit agencies for borrowing the funds needed for advanced construction or to handle other cash flow shortfalls:

- *Bonds and Notes*: Typically, Revenue Bonds for transit projects are relatively long-term and secured by specific revenues such as a transit-dedicated sales tax. For most long-term bonds, the issuer of the bonds agrees to pay the holder a specified rate of interest and the principal on the bond at a specified time. Variable-rate bonds are also used; they will normally have shorter terms and require guarantees from reliable financial institutions.
 - *Bond Anticipation Notes* are issued to provide an interim source of financing for a project that will eventually be financed through a bond issue. Tax and Revenue Anticipation Notes are issued in anticipation of tax receipts and other revenues.
 - *Grant Anticipation Notes* (GANs) or Revenue Anticipation Notes (RANs) are issued in anticipation of grant funds. They are a type of revenue bond authorized by TEA-21. Both the principal and interest are eligible for FTA capital funding. Typical terms range from one to fifteen years.
 - *Tax Exempt Commercial Papers* (TECPs) have a maximum maturity of 270 days and are generally used until permanent financing for a program can be obtained.

3.3.1.8 Funding Source Forecasts

For each funding source, the capital plan must clearly indicate whether the source is an existing source, such as an active local tax from which revenues are currently collected, or a new source requiring legislative approval, referendum, or other governmental action. For existing sources, the plan should outline the conditions of the funding agreement (e.g., funding formula, percent share of total revenues, etc.) and should provide at least five years of historical revenue data, including the amount available for transit uses. For major funding sources (sources that contribute more than 25 percent of the agency-wide or NSP capital or operating funds), the plan must include 10 years of historical revenue data. For new sources, the plan must indicate when legislative

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

approval or public referendum is expected and the date the source of funds would become effective. For all sources, the plan must contain a 20-year revenue forecast, documentation of any sunset clauses, and provisions to cover project funding beyond the sunset date.

For all revenue projections, the financial plan must be based on conservative rates of growth that do not exceed historical experience for that source.

3.3.1.9 Borrowing, Debt Levels, and Ratings

If the financial plan includes debt, it must include a debt proceeds and debt servicing plan within its documentation. This schedule presents outstanding debt levels, the gross amount, net proceeds, and bond rating of each debt issuance, debt service requirements, and interest rates for the past five years and 20 years into the future. This schedule should identify, on a yearly basis, the most restrictive debt covenant of the grantee, such as debt service ratio requirements, outstanding debt ceiling, or limits on debt expenditures during a specific time period. In addition, the most recent bonding prospectus must be included as supporting documentation.

3.3.1.10 Federal Funding Shortfalls

In some cases, grantees may assume a specific level of Federal funding in PE, but receive less in the FFGA. Grantees should be prepared to move the full scope of the project forward even if Federal funds are less than expected. Evidence of financial capacity to provide additional non-Federal funds could be in the form of cash balances, additional debt capacity, or commitments of additional funds from new or existing funding sources. Service reductions and deferred maintenance within the existing public transportation system for the metropolitan area are not acceptable methods of freeing up additional funds.

After an FFGA has established the Federal share, Federal appropriations may fall short on an annual basis. For instance, the Federal commitment to the FFGA funding levels may be satisfied over six years rather than a planned four-year period. To accommodate this, the capital plan should present alternatives for implementing the project if the annual appropriations are less than planned, including short term financing to cover annual funding shortfalls. The capital plan should show adequate cash reserves, construction reserves, or debt capacity to complete the full scope of the proposed project if annual appropriations are lower than expected. Service reductions on the existing system, construction delays, or reducing the scope or features of the project are not acceptable methods of providing additional funds.

3.3.1.11 Agency-Wide Capital Plan

The components of the project capital plan should be summarized and incorporated into the agency-wide capital plan. The grantee plan must present capital funding and spending for each individual funding source and each individual capital project for the past five years and those planned for the next 20 years. Capital plan documentation is

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

expected to include project names and descriptions, total capital costs and schedules, and proposed Federal funding contributions for each existing, proposed, or planned project. Projects included in the long-range plan and transportation improvement program for the metropolitan area should be identified. The agency-wide capital plan also should include bus and rail fleet acquisitions, replacement, and major rehabilitation consistent with the fleet management plans prepared by the grantee.

3.3.1.12 Project Budget

The PMP is required to contain a budget for the project that must include both hard and soft costs, including those noted above.

The FTA has a required format for cost reporting for FTA funded projects. This system is called GMIS (Grants Management Information System). While most transit projects to date have used other internal systems for tracking costs, they have had to translate these costs into the GMIS system to meet FTA reporting requirements. The GMIS system uses a six digit number to identify the transit mode (bus, rail, or other), type of purchase (rolling stock, transit way or lines, terminals, support facilities, electrification or power, signals and communication, administration, etc.), and project phase or other detail. This FTA reporting requirement should be taken into consideration, along with the SCC format requirement, when developing the cost reporting schemes for the project.

3.3.2 Operating Plan

The grantee must supply an operating plan to document how the grantee intends to fund and operate the proposed project and the existing transit system. The operating plan must document five years of historical data and present 20 years of projected system operating revenues and O&M costs to demonstrate the capability of the grantee to operate and maintain the proposed project while retaining existing levels of transit service.

The Operating Plan should include the following information:

- A description of the Operating Agency, indicating whether the Grantee or a separate Agency will be responsible for operations, whether operations and/or maintenance services will be contracted to a service provider and the extent of such contracting, if planned
- A description of the system, including the type of service (LRT, Heavy or Rapid Rail, Commuter Rail, BRT, etc.), right-of-way, stations (including platform lengths), signal and traction power systems (if any). If the system has a rail component, indicate whether there are joint operations with freight, intercity rail or any other rail carrier
- A description of the vehicle and accessibility plan for individuals with disabilities
- Describe the operating characteristics of the proposed vehicles
- For both opening day and design year, state proposed hours of operation, service frequency, peak, off-peak, weekend and holidays

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Travel times, both end to end and between all stations/stops. Indicate station/stop dwell times and maximum operating speed
- Ridership levels, peak, off-peak, weekend and holidays for both opening day and design year
- Proposed operating schedules, opening day and design year. Discuss simulation studies (if any) that support operating schedules
- Projected peak ridership loading compared to vehicle loading standards for both opening day and design year
- Describe operating crew plan, central control and dispatching plan
- Passenger fares and fare collection methodology. Describe daily, weekly, monthly, multi-trip, peak, off-peak, senior, disabled and promotional fares. Describe fare collection system and enforcement method
- Describe vehicle storage facilities and vehicle maintenance facilities
- Describe vehicle and ROW maintenance plans. Identify facility, equipment and staffing required to carry out plan
- Discuss FRA Rules and Regulations or any other Federal Regulations that apply to the system
- Discuss operating plan for special events
- Describe system security plan, including staffing requirements. Indicate whether security services will be contracted to a service provider or provided by existing municipal security forces
- Describe parking plans for both opening day and design year

In the early Planning and Preliminary Engineering phases, it is not atypical for a grantee to lack a sophisticated simulation model to evaluate the proposed project, which may, in turn, cause it to under- or over-state the capacity of the proposed project to meet ridership demands and power requirements and possibly lead to an ineffective and inefficient layout of critical elements of the project's physical plant and equipment. FTA has assisted in financing studies done under the Transit Cooperative Research Program (TCRP) that address transit capacity analyses. In particular, the TCRP Report 100, 2nd Edition, entitled "[Transit Capacity and Quality of Service Manual](#)" [Ref. 3-19] is a good reference for a grantee to provide such an analysis for its proposed project. Before FTA approves entry into the Final Design Phase, it will charge its PMO contractor with the task of performing a Transit Capacity Analysis to determine the suitability and project budget conformity evidenced in the proposed scope of the project as the grantee defines it.

3.3.2.1 Operation and Maintenance Costs (O&M Costs)

Transit system O&M expenses often increase after a transit project goes into revenue service; this typically requires additional subsidies to continue operating and maintaining the transit system. FTA is obligated to determine whether the grantee has the financial capacity to fund these additional expenses without reducing existing service levels, deferring maintenance, or otherwise causing significant adverse impacts to current service. Consequently, the operating plan must clearly identify how existing operations

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

will be affected by the proposed project. For example, fixed guideway projects often result in significant service realignments. The operating plan should provide details on:

- How the project will impact existing operations, revenues, and O&M costs
- How bus routes will be realigned
- What bus routes will be dropped
- What new feeder routes are planned

The operating plan must contain at least five years of historical and 20-year forecasts of O&M expenses for the existing transit system and for the proposed project. The O&M expenses must be supported by information regarding service characteristics of the grantee such as revenue fleet composition and assignment, projected vehicle revenue miles, vehicles in service, directional route miles, and number of stations and other system facilities.

Changes in O&M costs have three components: 1) inflation for labor and materials, 2) service/operating changes, and 3) changes in productivity. The plan should include inflation assumptions, the planned system-wide operating and service characteristics, and productivity assumptions. The accompanying text must document the O&M cost estimation methodology, preferably resource cost build-up, and must describe the service plans for the proposed project and existing transit system. The cost estimation documentation should provide details regarding operating labor, maintenance labor, security labor, fuel, supplies, administration, and other relevant cost categories used to calculate annual O&M costs. The output of this plan is an estimate of operating statistics that include vehicle-miles, vehicle-hours, peak vehicles, etc., which become inputs used to calculate O&M costs.

With respect to service changes, there are two types of O&M costs – fixed costs and variable costs relative to service level. Fixed costs, such as station lighting, remain constant and are based on the physical facilities of the fixed guideway system, regardless of the service level. A variable cost item is an item of expense that is linked to the service characteristic to which it is most closely tied, such as traction power for an electrified system. A standard system of accounts should be used for the cost model consistent with FTA National Transit Database (NTD) requirements.

☞ NTD information is available on its website at www.ntdprogram.gov. [Ref. 3-21]

During project planning, a unit of the transit system facility, such as length of guideway or number of stations, could be considered a variable with associated maintenance cost per unit. Once the guideway length and number of stations become known, the fixed maintenance costs, which are unrelated to service level, can be calculated. An example of a variable cost related to service level would be vehicle maintenance related to the number of miles traveled or number of hours in service. Other vehicle costs such as inspections, which are performed periodically regardless of the number of miles traveled, are considered to be fixed costs. Some modernization projects may reduce O&M costs that can be used to justify the capital investment. Others, such as adding vehicle air conditioning, can increase O&M costs due to increased electrical

consumption and maintenance requirements. General guidance on estimating O&M costs is contained in:

☞ *Estimation of Operating & Maintenance Costs for Transit Systems* [Ref. 3-22].

Where outside contractors are employed to operate, maintain and/or finance a project, the fundamentals of such contracting must be incorporated within the analysis of O&M costs for the new project as well as the balance of operations, facilities and services.

3.3.2.2 Operating/Maintenance Funding Considerations

The operating plan is required to demonstrate the ability of the grantee to rely on non-Federal funding sources to operate and maintain the entire transit system after the proposed project is in revenue service. The operation and maintenance of the proposed project is likely to place additional burdens on the grantee's local funding sources. Transit agencies usually need to acquire new revenue sources or have existing sources that provide sufficient extra operating revenues to fund the proposed project's operation and maintenance.

The operating plan should incorporate fare revenue forecasts for the proposed project and the existing transit system. Fare revenue forecasts are of necessity based on ridership forecasts and assumptions regarding fare levels. The plan also should provide historical revenue figures and forecasts for all other operating revenue sources and the assumptions used to develop the revenue forecasts. Other sources of revenue typically involve advertising, leases, and concessions, including parking lot fees. Inflation assumptions are critical to revenue forecasts and must be explicitly documented in the financial plan. Often, a source such as a local sales tax that is to be used for local capital funding may also be used for O&M expenses. The plan must include documentation proving that the proposed operating funds are committed to their intended purpose.

3.3.3 Cash Flow Analysis

The overall objective of the grantee financial plan is to demonstrate that the grantee has the financial resources to successfully construct the proposed project while adequately operating and maintaining the existing and planned transit system. For this reason, the cash flow statement should combine the results of the capital plan and the operating plan to summarize the year-by-year financial condition of the grantee throughout the 20-year analysis period. The goal of the cash flow analysis is to demonstrate that the grantee can meet its capital, operating, and maintenance commitments each year, which includes providing an allowance for contingencies.

Cash flow analysis is a valuable tool for project planning. Its application permits project sponsors to develop and test strategic funding scenarios, examine alternative assumptions, and conduct risk analyses as part of the grantee's continuing financial planning activities. These include assessing the impact of delays in Federal or other financing and the issuance of bond offerings at different times and different amounts.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

The cash flow statement must include at least five prior years of actual costs and revenues to provide a clear picture of the historical financial position of the grantee and to substantiate the growth rates assumed in future years.

The cash flow statements must be structured in a way that reflects the grantee's restrictions on operating and capital funds. Many agencies have restrictions on the use of cash balances such as debt retirement, contractual obligations, lease deposits, uninsured losses, or reserve accounts for specific projects. If a grantee is subject to any of these restrictions, the cash flow statement must identify balances in these restricted accounts and not include them as "available" cash.

During the construction stage, the cash flow estimates are incorporated into a cash management process, to ensure that adequate funds are actually available to pay for all obligations as they become due.

3.4 Scheduling

3.4.1 Scheduling Principles

A project must be planned before it can be controlled. Techniques of planning and control have improved; today, computer software programs enable the representation of work flow in networks, permit planning of resource use and cash requirements, monitor actual performance, and aid forecasting. While different methods are available, such as the Program Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), which predominates in research projects, the construction industry relies heavily on the Critical Path Method (CPM).

CPM defines the critical path as the longest path of activities in the scheduling logic measured in time. It follows, consequently, that any critical path activity that is delayed, delays the project completion. Another important scheduling concept is "float". Activities not on the critical path have "float" or "slack". Total float is the difference between when an activity *can* start and when it *must* start to avoid project delay. Free float or non-interfering float, if used, will not delay the early start of succeeding activities.

There are a number of powerful, user-friendly commercially off-the-shelf (COTS) scheduling and schedule risk analysis software programs on the market. Most of these programs use the Precedence Diagramming Method (PDM) rather than Arrow Diagramming of the past. PDM is represented by activity bars (nodes) with lines representing logic connections. Most all schedules developed and maintained in the design and construction industry are based on COTS using PDM.

A CPM network diagram serves as a visual representation of the sequence of activities needed to fulfill project requirements. As such, it should:

- Show graphically, in logical sequence, each of the activities necessary to complete the project or project phase.
- Identify the duration of each activity and identify all predecessor and successor activities.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Show all interfaces, including interdependencies and relationships with operations of consultants, contractors, and suppliers. The information needed to show these interfaces should be furnished by the grantee.
- As an option, identify the resources needed to complete an activity using CPM scheduling. Resources include labor, major equipment, materials, and the funding required to support these resources. Resource utilization is an optional technique used to build and maintain schedules. When done correctly, resource utilization is an excellent and preferred technique to best plan for the allocation of major resources to meet peak demand and evaluate what-if scenarios when time extending problems arise.

Given the above description for each activity to be scheduled, a CPM network diagram will provide the following information for each activity:

- Critical Path
- Activity ID and description
- Original Duration, Percent Complete, and Remaining Duration
- Early start and late start dates
- Early finish and late finish dates
- Total float

3.4.2 Scheduling Process

During the project life cycle the grantee will manage several types of schedules developed and maintained by several various departments and entities. Each schedule is an integral component of the overall Master Program Schedule or Integrated Master Program Schedule (IMPS). In this instance, “program” refers to a portfolio of multiple projects.

Schedules are one of the management tools that project managers at all levels use to maintain accountability for activities taking place. In addition, schedules permit managers to anticipate upcoming activities, to review progress (i.e., planned vs. actual accomplishment), and to modify work plans, as necessary, to meet essential milestones. The following lists includes the most common types of schedules used on a typical transit project:

- (1) Master Program Schedule or Integrated Master Program Schedule – A high level summary schedule containing information from all other project schedules currently developed and maintained on the program. This schedule comprehensively includes all project life cycle phases and is managed by the grantee or its representative consultant/agency.
- (2) Right of Way Schedule – Developed specifically to address Real Estate acquisition of partial and full takes, easements, potential condemnation process, etc.
- (3) Design Consultant Schedule or GEC Schedule – A schedule specific to engineering design for one or more design contracts. Typically a

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- contractual requirement between the grantee and the engineering design firm.
- (4) Proposed Construction Schedule – A proposed construction schedule usually developed by a GEC, PM or CM with input from the grantee. Proposed construction schedules may include one or more construction contracts according to contract delivery methods and packaging.
 - (5) Vendor/Supplier Schedule – Schedules developed and maintained by major vendors or suppliers for rolling stock, Fare Collection equipment, substations, etc.
 - (6) Construction Schedule – A construction contractor schedule in accordance with the CPM Schedule specification requirements. The grantee or its representative must perform compliance review of every contractor schedule submission and ensure all vendor, design and construction contractor schedules are coordinated in accordance to the IMPS Plan.
 - (7) Commissioning Schedule – Usually required for the commissioning of facility buildings, control centers, vehicle maintenance facilities, etc.
 - (8) Start-up and Testing Schedule – Developed and maintained by the grantee, systems integration consultant or contractor. This schedule is highly recommended for all projects and especially needed for minimal operable segment revenue operations, “soft openings” of revenue operations, and coordination with third party operators and intermodal center adjacencies.
 - (9) Time Impact Analysis Schedule or Fragnet – Usually prepared by a construction contractor seeking equitable adjustment for compensable damages and or requesting excusable delay warranting a time extension. A Time Impact Analysis can also be performed by the grantee or its representative to counter a contractor claim.
 - (10) Schedule of Record – Sometimes referred to as an “As-Built” schedule simply documenting the actual dates and sequence of events specific to the contract (design, vendor or construction).

The grantee will receive and manage most all of these schedules as the various consultants, vendors and contractors engage the program. Inherently, each of these schedules will ultimately be summarized into the IMPS and managed by the grantee. In order to facilitate this process, all schedules and scheduling parties must conform to a standard set of Schedule Management Standards.

Before the grantee begins scheduling, it must develop scheduling standards that are robust and flexible enough to allow for multiple scheduling parties and expansion and contraction of program scope. The standards should address at least the following topics:

- (1) Grantee Project Control Organization
- (2) Schedule Type Definitions
- (3) Anticipated Scheduling Parties
- (4) CPM Schedule Specifications

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- (5) Schedule Development Procedures
 - a. Basis of Schedule Narrative
 - b. Schedule Software (requirements and training)
 - c. Software Settings
 - d. File Naming conventions
 - e. Calendar Library
 - f. WBS
 - g. Activity Coding and Custom User Defined Fields (UDF)
 - h. Resource Library
 - i. Cost Resource standards (Cost Breakdown Structure if used)
 - j. Report layouts and formats
- (6) Schedule Update Process
 - k. Submittal Package
 - l. Submittal Process (Review and Approval)
 - m. Work Progress Measurement
- (7) Claims: Time Impact Analysis Process
- (8) Reports (Custom per reporting audience)

Best Practices and avoiding common mistakes

The following list includes best practices used to prevent schedule management and program control mistakes:

- (1) Develop a clear Grantee Organizational Breakdown Structure (OBS) and orchestrate it with a staffing plan to ensure technical capacity and capability necessary to develop and implement a Project Management Control System. More and more grantees are using “blended” organizations consisting of partnering agencies and consultants. Key level management positions must be carefully evaluated to determine which agency or consultant team is best capable of filling the position.
- (2) Develop WBS, OBS and a Responsibility Assignment Matrix (RAM) to clearly identify the position descriptions, roles and responsibilities all of departments, individuals and entities on the program.
- (3) Establish Schedule Management Standards before or during the PE phase.
- (4) Use project control tools to assist with the evaluation and analysis of determining project delivery methods.
- (5) Use Schedule Risk Analysis tools (Monte Carlo / Latin Hypercube) during the design phase when developing proposed construction schedules and contract time determinations for each contract (design, procurement or construction).
- (6) Synchronize the project budget cost estimate and IMPS when revisions to either document are made.
- (7) Develop ROW schedules in sufficient detail and integrate them properly with the contract packaging plan, engineering design efforts, permitting, and utility coordination efforts.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- (8) Use CPM Schedule Specifications that are comprehensive, well communicated and well understood by all parties.
- (9) Enforce construction contractor schedule conformance strongly and properly. Baseline CPM Schedules should be reviewed and approved prior to construction NTP.
- (10) Use progress update reporting to comprehensively decipher, properly analyze, and summarize data in order for management to make decisions and corrective course of actions.

Procedures for schedule control must be included in the PMP. Following are five elements that make up schedule control:

- *Schedule Baseline or Baseline Integrated Project Master Schedule* – Establish a project schedule that includes all of the activities that must be performed to complete the project, duration of the activities, and resources required to accomplish those activities.
- *Monitoring/reporting system* – Regular task status reporting by WBS element is required. Include activity commencement and completion and accomplishment of other milestones and monitored them in the schedule baseline. At a minimum, monthly progress reports should be required in contracts.
- *Performance measurement system* – Using the data from the monitoring/reporting system, provide a means to compare actual work performed to the scheduled work and analyze any variances that may occur. This comparison should result in the submission of timely status reports to responsible managers.
- *Schedule forecast* – Provide a system for routinely forecasting the expected schedule for completion of work packages and the total project.
- *Schedule review and update* – Make work package schedule forecasts available to the immediately responsible managers. Perform a continuous review of progress against the schedule so that resource reallocation or other corrective action can be undertaken as early as possible. Schedule changes that impact on other work packages should result in timely alerts to higher level managers. Project managers should perform reviews of the project schedule on a regular basis to identify developing trends and to point out potentially significant problems in the schedule forecast. Schedule updates should only be made by the person specifically assigned that authority. The official project schedule at any point in time is known as the Integrated Master Project Schedule, or IMPS.

3.4.3 Integrated Master Project Schedule

The grantee must be able to manage and control the Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS). This schedule should be developed in the early planning stages of the project and should include all project phases, culminating in project closeout activities subsequent to revenue operations. The grantee should refine detailed schedules for each phase and significant activity (e.g., NEPA requirements, FTA reviews and anticipated actions, the entire Real Estate program, permitting or other approvals by third parties, etc.) therein as the project progresses, thus integrating these to produce a true Integrated Master Project Schedule. As these lower tier or major

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

phase activity schedules are integrated, they may show where the IMPS will require changes to eliminate inconsistencies and meet the external schedule requirements. The detailed schedules -- in showing all significant project activities, especially all that could affect the critical path, including permitting, real estate acquisition, bidding and procurement, system integration, testing, and start-up -- will roll-up into the IMPS.

An initial baseline IMPS should be developed during the PE Phase and refined during the Final Design phase such that it accurately depicts a logical project implementation process that will require minimal revision as the project progresses. To develop a reasonably accurate IMPS, experienced engineering design, project control, and construction management personnel should determine the time requirements of the activities within each work package to implement the scope of work. The design activities scheduled must be closely monitored and updates incorporated into the IMPS.

Considerable experience may be required to understand the complexities of the work, particularly where underground construction is occurring, where there is a need to maintain transit service during construction activity, or where there are numerous contractor interfaces. In addition, expertise from those responsible for Real Estate and permitting should be used to determine realistic schedules for real estate acquisition and permitting time. Finally, the expertise of those responsible for the project budget (as "time is money" and schedule constraints impact likely bid considerations by contractors) should determine budgeting issues which might impact the IMPS planning and analysis, such as contractor allowances, overhead costs, and the cash flow implications to the grantee.

3.4.4 The Construction and/or Procurement Schedule(s)

Most large transit construction projects require contractors to provide detailed schedules for their work to the project's controls group in a format compatible with the scheduling software used by that group. The information needed to evaluate progress, including labor loading charts and equipment schedules, should be specified in project directives and contract bid documents. Project organizations should submit a schedule update and supporting data to the control office monthly. The updated network diagram should be prepared in accordance with the following:

- All activities should be updated and reported on as of the same date.
- The updated logic schedule report should discuss completed activities, any revision of the logical sequence of the activities, and the critical path of activities based on the current update.
- The supporting data for the updated schedule should include a listing of the actual starting dates for each activity in progress and actual starting and completion dates for all completed activities. In addition, an analysis of changes to expected completion dates should be included that identifies which activities contributed to the changed completion date and why.
- The supporting data also should contain all information needed to indicate the current status of the project, such as design policy memoranda or other technical data issued by the grantee or its representative, design/development progress in

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

prime contracts and specialty procurement contracts which necessitates revision to current contracts, changes required by utility companies or local agencies during the course of construction, finalization or revision of agreements between the grantee and public agencies, revisions to ROW agreements, and revisions necessary to accommodate changed or unforeseen field conditions or changes at interfaces of adjacent contracts.

FTA provides guidelines for coordinating and monitoring contractor schedules that should be incorporated into contract specifications:

- ☞ Review of Project Management Control Systems on Selected FTA Funded Projects [Ref. 3-23].
- Schedule control during the Procurement and Construction phases is generally the most difficult. This is because there are usually several contractors performing work on different elements of the project, often with overlapping work areas involving different trades. Controlling or monitoring the schedule performance of more than one contractor involves more effort than monitoring the status of a single design consultant's work.
- Contractor schedules should be compatible with the scheduling software utilized by the grantee. Contractors should be required to submit copies of the schedule in electronic format. Ease of integration is important to maintaining the Project Master Schedule with current contractor schedule data. All contractor updates should be integrated and checked for impacts to other project elements within the Project Master Schedule. When contractors submit monthly CPM updates, all milestone dates should be checked to determine that they are within the contract parameters and whether the dates scheduled are attainable based on the contract status.
- Schedules are generally submitted in more than one part. One part consists of a schedule indicating the work to be performed during the first 60 to 90 days of the contract. This submittal is usually required to be presented within two weeks of notice-to-proceed.
- Between 45 and 60 days, an additional schedule submittal is made that encompasses the full contract duration and includes a breakdown of all activities to a level of detail specified in the contract documents. Updates and narrative reports concerning the updates and schedule status are usually required on a monthly basis.
- Receiving the initial CPM submittals and updates in a timely manner is important to the development and maintenance of the IMPS. Enforcement provisions within the contract scheduling specifications help agencies ensure the information flow necessary to keep the IMPS current, making them a useful tool for managing the project. The most common enforcement provision gives

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

grantees the option to withhold progress payments pending submittal of acceptable CPM schedules and updates in accordance with the contract. Progress payments are generally based on updates of the contractor's cost loaded CPM schedule. Without an acceptable schedule status update, progress payments should not be made. An alternative schedule submittal enforcement provision is the Santa Clara Valley Transportation Authority (VTA) model that requires a separate bid item with specified minimum bid amounts for schedule submittal. Portions of this bid item are withheld and forfeited for untimely or missing schedule submittals.

- The WBS on which the bid and contract's schedule is based should be adequate for the project. The optimum level of detail is dependent upon the complexity and needs of a particular project. Cost loading of the contractor's CPM schedule should be tied to the bid breakdown which is generally tied to the WBS.
- Requiring cost loaded CPM schedules provides an increased ability to monitor the status of a contract, specifically the progression of the work and the corresponding expenditures. Also, the completion date for the contract and cost to complete can be monitored. The larger the contract, the more useful and practical the process and the greater the benefits derived. For a smaller project, the required cost-loaded schedule could be difficult to prepare, maintain, and administer due to the need for full-time experts in scheduling personnel on both the contractor and construction management staff.
- Grantees may prefer to award contracts on a lump sum or unit price basis. Cost loading a lump sum contract CPM requires allocating percentages of the various bid line items to particular activities. Monitoring and updating is based on incremental percentages of each item that make up the lump sum bid price. To facilitate progress payments, it is helpful to require that activities be 100 percent completed before being eligible for the release of payment. This effectively shortens the contractor's activity durations to promote payments that closely match the work in place. Verification of 100 percent completion of activities is also easier than estimating or measuring incremental portions thereof.
- On unit price contracts, the activities are tied to costs associated with unit price quantities. Quantity overruns and underruns must be monitored so that accurate indications of the project's status are maintained.
- CPM scheduling enables the grantee to maintain its IMPS. Each IMPS has a critical path of its own that must be closely monitored to complete the project within the established time constraints. Each IMPS has a critical path that may traverse activities on several individual contracts throughout the total project duration. The grantee's designation or recognition of critical project elements is important in the project control process.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Where elements of a particular WBS within individual contracts or contract completion dates are crucial to the execution of a project, contract milestones must be established and incorporated into the contract documents. These include milestones required for the work by other follow-on contracts to proceed. These crucial milestones normally become the basis for the critical path of the individual contracts. A major benefit of contractor CPM schedule requirements is the ability of the grantee to monitor the progress of the contractor on the critical path. Progress on the critical path means progress toward contract milestone or completion dates that may impact the project's completion if not successfully met.
- Being able to integrate the individual contractor's schedule into the Project IMPS benefits the grantee, who should require that the software utilized by the contractor in developing its CPM schedule is compatible with the grantee's. The grantee should also require contractors to provide electronic copies of all schedule submittals to facilitate integrating the contractors' CPM schedule submittals and updates into the IMPS.
- Monitoring the contractor's CPM schedule includes monitoring its critical path. Where critical path activities fall behind by a specified number of calendar days of meeting a milestone or the contract completion date, a recovery schedule should be required for the contractor to establish a plan for accelerating or adjusting its schedule in order to meet the specified milestone or contract completion date.
- All milestones or contract completion dates critical to the project completion should have commensurate penalties (liquidated damages) established for failure to meet the contractually mandated schedule. To truly enforce liquidated damages, there should be a bonus clause for early completion of commensurate value.

3.5 Controlling the Project

3.5.1 FTA Requirements

As part of the Federal grant making process, FTA places explicit requirements on grantees regarding their control of the major transit projects that it funds. These requirements can be satisfied by developing effective PMPs with sound implementation, as discussed throughout this document. Elements of sound control systems are described in the following sections, and are organized around the concept of a Work Breakdown Structure, or WBS (see Section 3.2.3).

**Earned Value/Progress Measurement,
Integrated Cost,
and Schedule Control**

The Earned Value (EV) concept, first developed in the aerospace industry, has proven effective on other types of engineering projects across the nation. It provides the capability for the routine and in-depth analysis of project status from an integrated cost/schedule perspective. The implementation of the EV concept is one means to improve management of the project by allowing use of more effective project control information.

3.5.2 Integrating Time and Cost

The fundamental concept of controlling time and cost establishes a baseline and compares progress update information against the baseline. Metrics must first be established in order to define how actual work is measured and compared to the baseline -- the most traditional method uses earned value. The most critical element in this process is understanding how and when to establish a baseline (schedule and budget). It is never too early to establish a baseline -- without it, progress updates and variance analysis cannot be performed to support management decision making and corrective courses of action.

Baseline scope, schedule and budgets can be revised at any given point in the project life cycle phase. Such revisions do need to be clearly documented as part of the configuration management process in order to document an accurate baseline revision history. A schedule baseline cannot be established without a budget baseline, and vice versa, as the two are interdependent.

In order to adequately perform progress status measurement and control, the program WBS must be established and incorporated into all baseline documents. Depending on the detail of the WBS, a Cost Breakdown Structure (CBS) may be needed to support the schedule and budget earned value and cost forecasting reporting. The CBS is typically a more detailed WBS that contains a cost account classification necessary to support the grantee financial management system, consultant and contractor progress payments, FTA record keeping requirements, and the means for maintaining a valuable historical record. A combination of the WBS or CBS also supports budget and schedule fund management, cash flow reporting, and commitment curve projections.

Project costs and the project schedule are integrated at a high level in the Cash Flow Analysis. This integration strengthens as more definitive information becomes available during the evolution and refinement of the project life cycle.

For example, during PE of a fixed guideway project, the costs of the guideway may be evenly allocated over the anticipated construction period. As part of the development of the schedule and the construction contracts, the anticipated costs of each contract must be allocated in accordance with the proposed schedule and compared with the anticipated revenue stream. If funds are inadequate during any period, either the proposed schedule must be revised or steps must be taken to adjust the revenue stream (e.g., issuing of Revenue Anticipation Notes, RANS, Grant Anticipation Notes,

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

GANs, or bonds). A similar review should be conducted as bids on the contracts are received and before the contracts are executed.

The appropriate methodology for assuring the proper integration of schedule and cost is to relate cost control monitoring activities to the WBS-derived work packages. Responsibility for developing baseline cost budgets should be assigned to managers of work packages to maintain those baselines consistent with the WBS, schedule WBS, and overall costs. Authority to revise the baselines should be assigned and coordinated with the configuration management plan. The work packages should be identified using a coding system compatible with the project accounting system to facilitate establishing a computerized cost tracking and reporting system.

Special attention must be paid when Force Account activities (or support activities) are on the critical path, since managing these activities is generally separate from managing contractor activities. Separate management may result in separate priorities, which could, in turn, result in the scheduling or diversion of the Force Account manpower to perform maintenance tasks, thereby delaying critical path activities. Such delays could result in exposure to claims for adjustments by private contractors as well as delays in the total project. The scheduling of Force Account activities should, therefore, be integrated into the total project schedule.

3.5.3 Controlling Costs

Proper cost estimating is key to controlling costs. When the National Research Council was asked to study the causes of increases in costs in construction projects, the Subcommittee on Management of Major Underground Construction Projects (Committee on Tunneling Technology) included in its recommendations the following:

“Realistic cost estimates, based on the best available information, must be used from project inception. Recognizing that early estimates are based on many uncertainties and variables, and therefore that costs may be overlooked or underestimated, realistic factors for uncertainties and contingencies should be taken into account during early phases. Particular attention must be given to realistic estimating during the preliminary engineering because such estimates are usually the basis for project financing. Estimates need to be revised periodically to accommodate changing circumstances.” [Ref. 3-24]

Table 3-1, following, reveals capital cost variation in total project costs for thirty-eight (38) transit capital projects. The data clearly reveal significant increases in costs from the PE Phase through to start-up and revenue service. ([TCRP Report G-07](#)) [Ref. 3-25]

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Table 3-1 Capital Cost Variation in Total Project Cost

ID	Case Study Projects	Planning/ DEIS			PE/FEIS			Pre Eng to Final Design			Pre Eng to Operations			F D / FFGA			Final Design to Construction			Construction			Planning or PE to Operations		
		Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%	Millions YOES	Millions YOES	%
1	Atlanta North Line Extension	\$422.4	\$16.5	3.9%	\$438.9	(\$57.6)	-13.1%	\$33.7	7.7%	\$381.3	\$91.4	24.0%	\$472.7	\$50.2	11.9%										
2	Boston Old Colony Rehabilitation	\$447.2	\$28.9	6.5%	\$476.1	\$75.8	15.9%	\$88.9	18.7%	\$551.9	\$13.1	2.4%	\$565.0	\$117.8	26.3%										
3	Boston Silver Line (Phase 1)	\$318.1	\$66.3	20.8%	\$384.4	\$29.0	7.5%	\$220.0	57.2%	\$413.4	\$191.0	46.2%	\$604.4	\$286.3	90.0%										
4	Chicago Southwest Extension	\$453.0	\$43.0	9.5%	\$496.0	(\$145.1)	-29.2%	(\$21.4)	-4.3%	\$350.9	\$123.7	35.2%	\$474.6	\$21.6	4.8%										
5	Dallas South Oak Cliff Extension	\$347.1	\$170.1	49.0%	\$517.2	\$0.0	0.0%	(\$80.0)	-15.5%	\$517.2	(\$80.0)	-15.5%	\$437.2	\$90.1	26.0%										
6	Denver Southwest Line	\$138.0	\$14.1	10.2%	\$152.1	\$24.3	15.9%	\$25.0	16.5%	\$176.3	\$0.8	0.4%	\$177.1	\$39.1	28.3%										
7	Los Angeles Red Line MOS 1				\$695.8	\$264.5	38.0%	\$794.4	114.2%	\$960.3	\$529.9	55.2%	\$1,490.1	\$794.4	114.2%										
8	Los Angeles Red Line MOS 2				\$1,116.6	\$408.0	36.5%	\$805.0	72.1%	\$1,524.6	\$397.0	26.0%	\$1,921.6	\$805.0	72.1%										
9	Los Angeles Red Line MOS 3				\$1,113.3	\$232.3	20.9%	\$114.3	10.3%	\$1,345.6	(\$118.0)	-8.8%	\$1,227.6	\$114.3	10.3%										
10	Minneapolis Hiawatha Line	\$581.0	(\$32.4)	-5.6%	\$548.6	\$126.8	23.1%	\$166.7	30.4%	\$675.4	\$39.9	5.9%	\$715.3	\$134.3	23.1%										
11	New Jersey Hudson-Bergen MO	\$775.0	(\$136.4)	-17.6%	\$638.6	\$353.5	55.4%	\$474.4	74.3%	\$992.1	\$120.9	12.2%	\$1,113.0	\$338.0	43.6%										
12	New York 63rd Street Connector	\$488.4	\$49.5	10.1%	\$537.9	\$107.1	19.9%	\$94.4	17.5%	\$645.0	(\$12.7)	-2.0%	\$632.3	\$143.9	29.5%										
13	Pasadena Gold Line	\$997.5	(\$193.7)	-19.4%	\$803.8	(\$109.9)	-13.7%	(\$126.2)	-15.7%	\$693.9	(\$16.3)	-2.3%	\$677.6	(\$319.9)	-32.1%										
14	Pittsburgh Airport Busway Phase	\$170.2	\$115.0	67.6%	\$285.2	\$41.6	14.6%	\$41.6	14.6%	\$326.8	\$0.0	0.0%	\$326.8	\$156.6	92.0%										
15	Portland Airport MAX Extension	\$125.0	\$0.0	0.0%	\$125.0	\$0.0	0.0%	\$2.0	1.6%	\$125.0	\$2.0	1.6%	\$127.0	\$2.0	1.6%										
16	Portland Banfield Corridor				\$214.0	\$72.5	33.9%	\$32.8	15.3%	\$286.6	(\$39.8)	-13.9%	\$246.8	\$32.8	15.3%										
17	Portland Interstate MAX	\$313.4	\$16.5	5.3%	\$329.8	(\$15.0)	-4.5%	\$19.5	5.9%	\$314.9	\$34.5	11.0%	\$349.4	\$36.0	11.5%										
18	Portland Westside/Hillsboro MAX	\$531.9	\$381.1	71.6%	\$913.0	(\$2.8)	-0.3%	\$50.5	5.5%	\$910.2	\$53.3	5.9%	\$963.5	\$431.6	81.1%										
19	Salt Lake North-South Line	\$276.9	\$8.7	3.1%	\$285.6	\$26.4	9.2%	\$26.2	9.2%	\$312.0	(\$0.2)	-0.1%	\$311.8	\$34.9	12.6%										
20	San Francisco SFO Airport Ext.	\$1,175.3	(\$1.4)	-0.1%	\$1,173.9	(\$6.9)	-0.6%	\$376.3	32.1%	\$1,167.0	\$383.2	32.8%	\$1,550.2	\$374.9	31.9%										
21	San Juan Tren Urbano	\$965.0	\$157.0	16.3%	\$1,122.0	\$128.0	11.4%	\$1,128.0	100.5%	\$1,250.0	\$1,000.0	80.0%	\$2,250.0	\$1,285.0	133.2%										
22	Santa Clara Capitol Line				\$147.1	\$12.7	8.6%	\$15.4	10.5%	\$159.8	\$2.7	1.7%	\$162.5	\$15.4	10.5%										
23	Santa Clara Tasman East Line	\$197.7	\$78.1	39.5%	\$275.9	(\$0.8)	-0.3%	\$0.3	0.1%	\$275.1	\$1.1	0.4%	\$276.2	\$78.5	39.7%										
24	Santa Clara Tasman West Line	\$251.3	\$76.5	30.5%	\$327.8	\$4.7	1.4%	(\$47.2)	-14.4%	\$332.5	(\$51.9)	-15.6%	\$280.6	\$29.4	11.7%										
25	Santa Clara Vasona Line				\$269.1	\$44.5	16.5%	\$47.8	17.7%	\$313.6	\$3.2	1.0%	\$316.8	\$47.8	17.7%										
26	Seattle Busway Tunnel	\$314.1	\$45.6	14.5%	\$359.7	\$35.7	9.9%	\$251.4	69.9%	\$395.4	\$215.7	54.6%	\$611.1	\$297.0	94.6%										
27	St Louis Saint Clair Corridor	\$337.3	\$39.4	11.7%	\$376.7	(\$37.5)	-10.0%	(\$40.2)	-10.7%	\$339.2	(\$2.7)	-0.8%	\$336.5	(\$0.8)	-0.2%										
28	Washington Largo Extension	\$397.1	\$36.8	9.3%	\$433.9	\$0.0	0.0%	\$22.1	5.1%	\$433.9	\$22.1	5.1%	\$456.0	\$58.9	14.8%										
29	Denver I-25 Bus/HOV Project	\$269.9	(\$6.4)	-2.4%	\$263.5	\$18.8	7.1%	\$48.0	18.2%	\$282.3	\$29.2	10.3%	\$311.5	\$41.6	15.4%										
30	Houston SW Freeway	\$144.3	\$0.0	0.0%	\$144.3	(\$7.3)	-5.1%	(\$10.0)	-6.9%	\$137.0	(\$2.7)	-2.0%	\$134.3	(\$10.0)	-6.9%										
31	Jacksonville Skyway	\$97.9	\$0.0	0.0%	\$97.9	\$77.5	79.2%	\$119.2	121.7%	\$175.5	\$41.6	23.7%	\$217.1	\$119.2	121.7%										
32	Miami Metromover Extension	\$345.9	\$0.0	0.0%	\$345.9	\$0.0	0.0%	(\$7.1)	-2.1%	\$345.9	(\$7.1)	-2.1%	\$338.8	(\$7.1)	-2.1%										
33	Sacramento Starter Line	\$202.9	\$0.0	0.0%	\$202.9	\$8.4	4.1%	\$69.6	34.3%	\$211.3	\$61.2	29.0%	\$272.5	\$69.6	34.3%										
34	San Diego East Urban Corridor	\$159.5	\$0.0	0.0%	\$159.5	(\$11.5)	-7.2%	(\$4.3)	-2.7%	\$147.9	\$7.3	4.9%	\$155.2	(\$4.3)	-2.7%										
35	San Francisco Colma Extension	\$133.1	\$31.7	23.8%	\$164.8	\$62.4	37.9%	\$62.2	37.7%	\$227.2	(\$0.2)	-0.1%	\$227.0	\$93.9	70.5%										
36	San Jose Guadalupe Corridor	\$305.3	\$142.8	46.8%	\$448.1	\$100.3	22.4%	\$99.6	22.2%	\$548.4	(\$0.7)	-0.1%	\$547.7	\$242.4	79.4%										
37	San Jose Tasman Corridor Ext.	\$527.0	\$104.8	19.9%	\$631.9	(\$187.9)	-29.7%	(\$31.8)	-5.0%	\$444.0	\$156.0	35.1%	\$600.0	\$73.0	13.9%										
38	St Louis Metrolink	\$427.7	\$76.1	17.8%	\$503.8	\$20.0	4.0%	\$81.8	16.2%	\$523.8	\$61.8	11.8%	\$585.6	\$158.0	36.9%										
Sum		\$12,636.6	\$1,328.1		\$17,520.6	\$1,692.7		\$4,943.0		\$19,213.4	\$3,250.3		\$22,463.7	\$6,271.2											
Unweighted Project Average				13.8%			10.0%		23.2%			11.9%			36.2%										
Revenue Weighted Project Average				10.5%			9.7%		28.2%			16.9%			38.7%										

Cost control can be applied even during the period when cost estimates are being formulated. For Atlanta’s rail transit, the Metropolitan Atlanta Rapid Transit Authority (MARTA) found that using clauses in design contracts for no-fee redesign was a very effective technique to restrain costs if the estimate for the designers' final product exceeded an established cost limitation. This is often referred to as “design to budget.” Initiating close coordination between designers and construction cost experts will also result in cost-controlled designs. The concept can be expanded to include consideration of O&M costs – life cycle costs – that include both initial capital and recurring future costs. Procurements that include O&M responsibilities (e.g., DBOM), permit contractors to optimize designs to minimize life cycle costs. Value Engineering (VE) offers another tool for considering the O&M implications of design decisions.

The following principles of cost control and features of a formally approved cost control program should be considered and incorporated as part of the project capital plan (Section 3.3.1.1):

- Because the baselines for cost control are projections, allowances for inflation must be included. Inflation allowances should be defined and applied to specific cost categories (construction labor, materials, services, etc.).

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- A contingency fund should be established, which may include additional inflation allowances. A system should exist for determining and distributing the contingency funds to provide for cost escalation caused by unanticipated inflation or such factors as changed site conditions, design revision, and estimating uncertainties. The contingency allowances can be held at the project level or, especially in larger projects, can be distributed to lower levels of management in the WBS. Strict controls should be established over the disposition of funds from these accounts. Further, the cost control program must include an unallocated contingency at the project level to reflect a careful risk analysis. The unallocated contingency must be sufficient to address and overcome increases in cost that are due to potential risks (uncertainties), and for which no other mitigation (primary or secondary) measure is available. Taken together, allocated and unallocated contingency provide what FTA refers to as total contingency in MCPs.
- All budget transfers should be documented. If a line item is projected to underrun its budget, funds should be moved into the contingency account even if they are reallocated to another line item. All funding increases to line items should come from the contingency category to better facilitate tracking costs in the future.
- The participation of a cost engineer(s) throughout the life of the project is prudent.
- A program must be established for cost risk identification and management. For MCPs, a Cost Management Plan has to be developed by grantees, as well as a Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP).
- Care should be taken in estimating the costs for ROW and real estate acquisition programs, construction management, and administration. A study of five recently-completed rail transit projects found that at least three of the five projects experienced more than 20 percent cost growth in these categories, in comparison to the estimates made during design. However, in some cases, increases in these costs led to overall project savings. In three cases, major changes in alignments impacted design and ROW acquisition programs (two were impacted negatively and one positively). Reorganizations in two cases had major positive impacts on project control. In one case, a major design change had a significant positive impact on project cost [Ref. 3-26].
- Depending on the item or service being procured and the applicable conditions, care should be exercised in selecting the proper contract type (firm fixed price, unit price, cost plus fixed fee, various incentive fee arrangements, etc.) to ensure cost-effectiveness. Selection of contract types to support alternative project delivery methods also can be considered.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Contract package size and scope should be selected with proper regard for the management and financial resources available to the grantee to obtain the greatest efficiency and economy in using the resources. More contractor interfaces mean a more complex and difficult to manage project.
- A system should be established and responsibility assigned for predicting cash flow requirements and for providing for timely receipts and payments.
- Strict control of project expenditures is an inherent obligation of the project management team. The team must have adequate delegated authority and flexibility in the management of expenditures and the determination to use and control them. Authorization should be documented for capital expenditures, for issuance of work orders, and for additional work orders. Procedures should be established for verification of requested payments and processing of partial payments and final payments.
- Procedures should be developed and responsibility assigned for identifying, evaluating, and accommodating changes that may occur during design and construction, steps generally assigned to configuration management.
- Project management must adopt cost/schedule/progress monitoring and financial reporting systems with sufficient detail to enable key managers to make timely decisions. Senior managers should participate in developing the reporting system to ensure that it meets their needs. The monitoring system should identify problems or necessary actions before they become critical (or historical) so that problems may be avoided or actions taken in proper time.

[More on the FTA requirements for MCPs relative to risks and contingencies may be found in Section 3.5.5.]

3.5.4 Controlling Project Configuration and Changes

Throughout all phases of the project, there must be consistency in how various physical and technical aspects are defined and recorded. Descriptions of both physical and technical aspects are used to articulate the project definition. During both design and construction, this project definition is used to ensure that its original concept is followed and that the completed system will function as designed.

Configuration management consists of the evaluation, coordination, and approval or disapproval of changes in the configuration of a component, system, or process after its baseline has been defined. The project is typically baselined at the completion of the PE Phase to allow accurate and comprehensive monitoring of any and all changes that follow and to establish the basis on which the project cost estimate is determined. In the case of MCPs, the baseline for the project definition will be established during the initial Final Design phase activities but prior to FTA considering an FFQA, as it is those details (in drawings, specifications, contract packaging and scheduling) that must be

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

carried forward and be implemented. A similar approach is taken by FTA with regard to Project Construction Grant Agreements (PCGAs) for non-MCP projects.

In an effective configuration management program, drawings are uniquely numbered and otherwise identified. Specifications follow a standard format and each section, subsection and paragraph is identified. Complete drawing lists are established and the total number of drawings, the titles of the drawings, the revision status, and the dates on which the drawings were approved are recorded. Procedures are established and changes to approved drawings or specifications should only be made in accordance with these approved procedures. Permanent files are maintained of all contract documents that include historical information relating to all project changes. As the project is implemented, configuration management evolves to include the documentation of the completed improvement in terms of "as-built drawings."

Configuration management ensures that the correct, approved status of the evolving design is known or is available to all project personnel using that information. When done properly, configuration management ensures that replacement equipment or components capable of meeting the original equipment requirements can be procured at a later date.

Brief definitions of the physical and technical components of a project definition follow:

- *Physical* - Describes the total system in sufficient detail to permit preliminary design concepts to be prepared. This includes location descriptions, trackage layouts, facilities, interfaces with existing systems, proposed passenger vehicle configuration, above and below ground segments, landscaping, crossings, overpasses, and any other physical definitions of the system which will provide a full appreciation of the system's overall suggested characteristics.
- *Technical* - Defines the interrelationships and functions of the system in sufficient detail to guide construction. This includes design/construction considerations and techniques, systems, connections/interfaces with existing systems and utilities, maintainability of the fixed facilities, system operations and characteristics, and any other data which explains or details system operations/performance.

A project's definition must evolve in an orderly manner throughout the project development process. To arrive at the definition, design criteria and the desired performance characteristics of the completed project must be developed early in the project. Design/performance criteria should exist for the following elements:

- *System-wide* - capacity, safety, security, emergency procedures, system dependability, vehicle availability, ride quality, accessibility, comfort, convenience, aesthetics, environmental, etc.
- *Subsystem* - vehicles, control, communications, power distribution, Fare Collection, support equipment, etc.
- *Fixed Facilities* - guideway, stations, station amenities, access/egress, parking, intermodal features, central control facility, maintenance and storage facilities, administration facilities, etc.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Once the project definition is established during design, it becomes the standard for accomplishing construction; more importantly it is the "blueprint" for describing how the system will look and function. The project's physical configuration provides specification detail for the project definition. The configuration baseline includes the drawings, lists, calculations, specifications, and reference documents that completely describe the project. Among the most important management considerations relating to the system configuration and performance are the following:

- *Design Documentation* - Once design criteria have been established, standards should be developed in each area. Each design task within an organization's area of responsibility should be scoped, planned, and scheduled in the same manner. Task statements which include requirements, assumptions, and a detailed list of deliverables should be prepared and identified using a definitive Work Order Breakdown (WBS) structure. The design tasks should result in the preparation of drawings and/or specifications, calculations and analysis reports (or technical memoranda) for all items and systems.
- *Interface Definition* - A critical activity in the system definition process is the identification and documentation of system interfaces which may place constraints on its design or performance (e.g., power supplies, other utility and service interfaces, physical constraints). The preparation of interface drawings, calculations, specifications and analysis reports (or technical memoranda) should be undertaken during the design process.
- *Reliability and Maintainability* - Evaluating system and equipment reliability and maintainability; developing System Reliability Plans and System Maintainability Plans, and carrying out Reliability and Maintainability Program activities have a significant impact on a system's configuration, detail design, and operation.
- *Peer Review* - A structured, independent review of an organization or project by a team of experts. Such reviews cover all design phases and categories, including organizational, project management, and aspects of project design and functionality, construction, operations, or maintenance. Typically they are organized and conducted to focus on special topics or situations with a specified purpose, scope, format, and duration.
- *Value Engineering (VE)* - VE is a formal, systematic, investigative technique with potential for reducing both capital and O&M costs of major transit projects. VE reviews a product, system, or facility in order to identify and analyze the functions it has been designed to perform. A project's total life cycle costs (costs incurred by constructing and utilizing the product as designed) are calculated, and alternative designs are generated to determine the most cost effective method of performing the identified functions, consistent with requirements for quality, reliability, maintainability, and safety. A VE study is a creative, multi-disciplined team effort that FTA requires at the end of Preliminary Engineering (PE). In some instances VE might be beneficial during Final Design (FD) or even Construction. A consultant with experience in conducting VE studies for transit

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

projects may be used to manage the study, although a qualified team of professionals could also be selected to participate. Participants are most effective if they have not been significantly involved in the design being studied. The Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE) provides certified training for VE. See Sections 4.7.6 and 5.2.7 for additional guidance on VE.

- *Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Interface* - It is important to address O&M concerns in design and construction, particularly during the design phase. A continuous review by the owner, consultants, and O&M personnel ensures that the final design incorporates those features that are consistent with projected O&M needs and costs. Early development of system operating plans and their corresponding projection of operating statistics, operating costs, and operating revenues are essential elements in selection and design of the system configuration. The grantee should develop a System Operating Plan and a System Maintenance Plan and evaluate the evolving design with respect to them. Consideration should be given to life-cycle costs and issues such as system continuity, safety, security, and reliability in relation to budgeted construction costs.
- *Constructability Reviews* - "Constructability is the optimum use of construction knowledge and experience in planning, design, procurement, and field operations to achieve overall project objectives." [Ref. 3-27]. Throughout PE and continuing through 80 percent design, it is important to review the constructability of the proposed project to avoid subsequent adverse cost and schedule impact. Constructability should be considered in the development of a contracting method and in the development of overall project schedules. Basic design approaches must consider major construction methods. Site layouts should promote efficient construction as well as efficient operation and maintenance. Prior to final approval, a constructability review of the planned construction contract should be performed. These reviews can be included as part of more general design reviews.
- *Design Reviews* (in addition to QA/QC practices)- To ensure that project objectives are being met, design reviews by the owner, consultants, and operational staff are held to focus on consistency with design criteria, possible errors and omissions, and constructability. The extent of the review(s) should be based on consideration of the consequences of failure, the grantee's experience with the design organization's in-house checking capability, and aspects of the QA program. Just as with QC procedures, it is essential that design review comments are documented, tracked and that formalized closure is brought to all issues in a timely manner.
- *Test Program* - Performance requirements should be translated into test requirements and then into specific test and inspection plans. Policy should be established for acceptance testing of materials, components, and systems. Specific responsibilities should be assigned for preparation of individual unit or

equipment test and inspection plans, conduct of the tests, and approval of the results. When applicable, an overall system operational test plan should be prepared. To the greatest extent possible, all aspects of system operation, which determine whether the system performance is satisfactory, should be tested prior to acceptance.

- *Contract Documentation* - Design requirements must be reflected in the items constructed or purchased. As a result, grantees or their representatives should prepare detailed specifications for procurement and conduct a thorough technical review of the final procurement documentation (Requests for Proposals as well as proposed contracts in final negotiation). In some instances, it may be prudent to pre-qualify contractors to ensure capabilities and capacities before accepting bidders; this would become a two-step bidding process. (See Section 2.2.6) Evaluation of bids should verify that the requirements are being properly addressed by the proposed contractors.
- *Training* - In its initial operational stages, system performance is influenced by the familiarity of personnel with the system. The more a new system differs from existing systems in operational and maintenance procedures, the more important it is to address expected manpower needs and training programs. For larger projects, the use of training mock-ups or simulators and tabletop or onsite drills should be considered.

Procedures should be developed for identifying, evaluating, and accommodating changes that may occur during project design and construction. Procedures should: (a) specify clearly who holds the responsibility to initiate and approve changes; (b) permit results to be achieved rapidly; (c) provide for full evaluation of the impact of the changes; and (d) specify how changes will be documented and the records maintained. Grantees are encouraged to establish a Change Control Board (CCB) with charge to attain independent and thorough cost/schedule/functionality reviews and prompt resolution of change issues may help to reduce delays, negative cost impacts and/or claims. *Judicious* delegation of monetary authority to approve change orders at the field level can expedite the change order process. A recent FTA research report found that construction risks can probably be decreased by allowing field personnel to exercise a maximum amount of discretionary judgment regarding change orders [Ref. 3-26].

3.5.5 Risk Assessment and Management

The process of managing risks by grantees is depicted at Figure 3-5 and can be generalized by the following steps:

- Identify risks inherent to any and all phases and all aspects of the project (inclusive of grantee and consultant activities during PE, FD and Construction phases)
- Assign risk metric (e.g., cost, time, functionality impact)
- Measure and evaluate risks across all phases of the project

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- Analyze risk treatment alternatives, i.e., avoidance, prevention, mitigation/ cost control, and Insurance (purchased or self-insured)
- Select mix of risk control practices and procedures
- Establish metrics and systems to be able to assess performance of project participants depended upon for risk mitigation across all project deliverables (products)
- Monitor and evaluate performance of measures instituted



Figure 3-5. Risk Management Process

Potential risks that are identified should be evaluated and available mitigation measures identified. The risk management program should provide for a process in which parameters are rechecked continually. The project overview by the risk managers should be ongoing, multidisciplinary, and include every significant part of the project.

A risk management program should be established for all transit capital projects and is required to be established for all major transit projects. A risk management group from among grantee management and staff and its consultants should be organized to provide a multi-disciplinary overview of the project and its elements, and to determine how risks affect the technical, legal, political, social, and financial aspects of the project from beginning to end.

Guidance to grantees for development of a risk management program may be found in the following:

[Risk Assessment](#) [Ref. 3-14].

The guidance will assist in recognizing the financial and technical uncertainties that may impact a project’s budget and schedule. Almost 90% of large construction projects

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

surveyed were prone to budget overruns, ranging from 13% to 106%. Reasons for the overruns included scope changes, optimistic scenarios yielding low estimates of cost and high estimates of benefits, incomplete information about project objectives and features, estimating errors, and delay in construction start dates. Although political and social factors will also affect overruns, the design, construction, and financial risks affecting a project's budget and schedule cannot be overlooked.

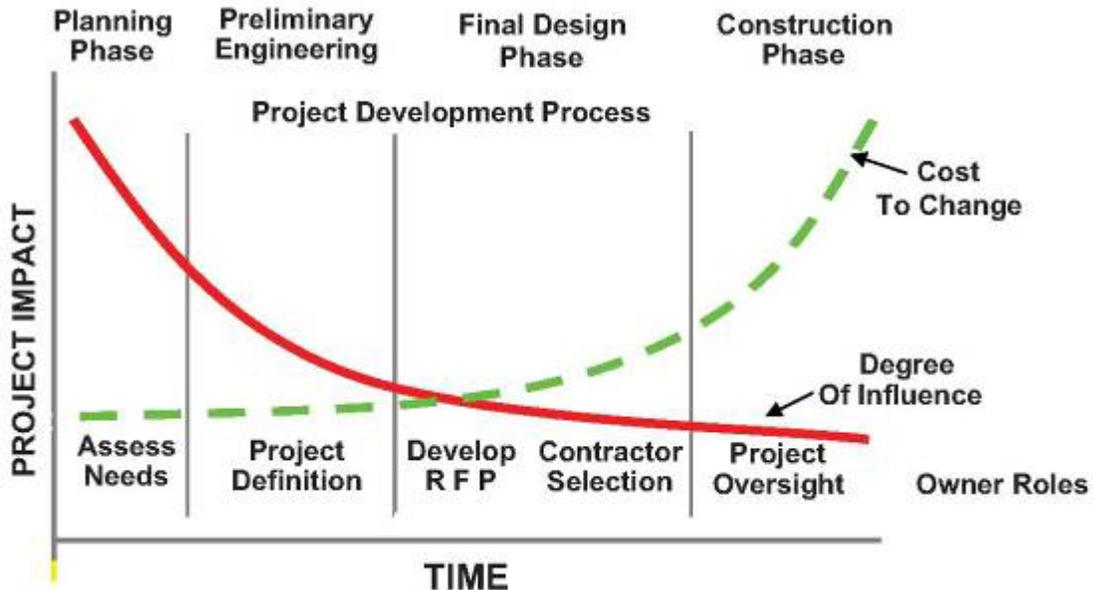


Figure 3-6 Cost Impacts & Mitigation Capability By Phase

With risk-informed, performance-based project management, risk will typically diminish as a project proceeds through the development continuum, from Planning through to Revenue Service Date (RSD), as depicted at Figure 3-6.

FTA has also commissioned a guide for MCP grantees on the New Starts project risk review that is required at Entry into PE, Entry into FD, and at Request for an FFGA milestones. This risk process also carries forward with updates and analysis during the construction and equipment/materials procurement phase. Appendix G contains this grantee guidance.

3.5.5.1 Projects Involving Construction of Tunnels

Risk associated with inadequate geotechnical engineering scope definition during preliminary and final design has led to significant cost growth from the final design estimate to the contract award amount on numerous transit projects involving underground construction. Within the Project Management Plan (PMP), a Geotechnical Program Plan (GPP) should be developed that functions as a subplan for the project and as the parent document to all geotechnical reports.

The PMP should describe the timing and use of the GPP, Geotechnical Data Reports (GDRs), Geotechnical Interpretive Reports (GIRs), the Geotechnical Contracts Risk

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Allocation Plan, and the Geotechnical Baseline Reports (GBRs). An effective GPP will provide management with the tools to control the process, deliverables and reviews; provide traceability of the decision making process to allocate or retain geotechnical risk; and will identify the process for establishing the transfer of specific risks and associated financial resources.

FTA's experience with GIRs indicates that they should contain construction considerations sections which address how the subsurface conditions affect alternative approaches to design and construction, how project risks relate to alternative construction approaches, and how construction impacts adjacent facilities and utilities. These report sections should be reviewed by the project construction project managers and estimators. In addition, the GIRs should be kept current as the project configuration changes. During the Final Design phase, the GIRs should form the basis for cost estimates and schedules.

The Technical Committee on Geotechnical Reports of the Underground Technology Research Council has prepared suggested guidelines titled "Geotechnical Baseline Reports for Construction", Randall J. Essex, Editor, published by the American Society of Civil Engineers, 2007. [Ref. 3-28] This document serves as a reference for preparers and users of Geotechnical Baseline Reports (GBRs), and to inform owners of the importance of the contents of GBRs as related to the allocation of financial risk. These Guidelines provide a checklist of items to be considered when preparing GBRs. This publication also describes the intent and purpose of GDRs, GIRs and GBRs and distinguishes between each type of report. This document notes that the GBR should be prepared by experienced and knowledgeable professionals. It recommends that preparation of the GBR should begin only after most of the design has been completed and it should be a collaborative effort among the design team and owner. GBRs should translate the facts and opinions about subsurface conditions to be encountered into a set of relatively simple statements and the statements are best described using quantitative terms that can be measured and verified during construction.

The document recommends that the GIR be renamed as a Geotechnical Memorandum for Design (GMD) because that title better portrays its intent and timing within the design process and distinguishes this preliminary interpretive report from the GBR.

The "Geotechnical Baseline Reports for Construction" guidelines recommend that the GDRs and GBRs be incorporated into the construction contract and that the GBR should be given precedence over the GDR within the Contract Document hierarchy. Regarding GMDs/GIRs, interpretations made may conflict or be superseded by subsequent interpretations and baseline statements made in the GBR. As such, it is generally agreed that GMDs/GIRs should not be part of the Contract Documents and the GMDs/GIRs should contain disclaimers to preclude their use for construction. If they are included in the Contract Documents, they should be prepared specifically in conjunction with the design and thoroughly reviewed to verify that there are no inconsistencies between them and the GBR.

3.5.5.2 Risk Identification

Risk is defined in different ways by various agencies of the government and across various industries. Essentially, risk can be defined as a reasoned assessment of the potential inability to achieve project objectives within defined cost, schedule institutional and technical constraints. The risks can and should be defined first at the project level and subsequently at the contract level. Identifying and quantifying uncertainties (risks) with their potential impacts on a project's budget and schedule requires a clear and comprehensive baseline project definition (elements of which are scope, design criteria and quality, cost estimates and schedule). It is crucial for the grantee in a MCP to ensure the validity and thoroughness of the documentation supporting the baseline project definition. If there are key components missing, costs understated, or the schedule inaccurate/unrealistic then the identification of potential risks could engender untold uncertainties and a higher likelihood that project objectives will not be achieved.

Risk identification plays a significant role in the overall risk management process. Sufficient efforts should be made to ensure that adequate resources and processes are used to develop a thorough listing of risk events, appropriate to the current project phase. This listing provides the basis for development of risk assessment and then risk mitigation action items. For MCPs, the FTA requires grantees to develop and implement a Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP) that will best ensure that the project team organization has effective procedures in place to identify and ultimately deal with project risks.

Risk can be characterized as belonging to any of the following categories, which are listed in chronological order. Generally, risk is categorized as associated with the category during which the risk may be identified the earliest and have the best opportunity to be mitigated. The categories are listed below. If a risk event is not disposed of during a particular phase, it may survive into the following phase.

- ✓ **Requirements Risk** relates to the establishment and variability of fundamental goals and conditions of a project to which the design must respond, as well as the activities of the grantee to actively identify these goals and conditions. Requirements risk is associated with all project development activities from earliest concept through Alternatives Analysis. Some examples are: meeting NEPA analysis and requirements; establishing local funding sources and requisite local funding capabilities; development of a project organization with the technical capability and capacity to develop the project; and all other relevant areas impacting upon basic project development activities.
- ✓ **Design Risk** is associated with the performance and variability of all design-related activities occurring after Alternatives Analysis. Substantially complete design risk is indicated when no material design-related non-conformances are detected in the scope, when the budget estimate indicates that basically all construction direct cost activities are shown on both design deliverables and in cost estimates, and when the Integrated Master Project Schedule(IMPS)

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

indicates that no project level critical path element or procurement activity exceeds 45 calendar days in duration.

- ✓ **Market Risk** is related to the procurement of construction services, materials, and equipment and the variability associated therewith. This risk refers to both the effects of the open-market pricing of goods and services, as well as the effects of the grantee's contract packaging methods and contract terms and conditions.
- ✓ **Construction Risk** includes both risks that are due to the inevitable variability of the project's environment—including such items as unusual weather, unexpected subsurface conditions, and unexpected construction contractor failure—as well as performance risk that is manageable by the grantee and its consultants and contractors—for example uncertainty surrounding mobilization of a tunnel boring machine and its planned production rates. Construction risk should be subdivided into: Early Construction Risk (composed of Geotechnical/Utility activities, usually associated with approximately a 20% completion level), Mid-Range Construction Risk (associated with coordination of contractors, etc.), and Start-Up/ Substantial Completion Risk (associated with approximately 90% of construction and/or procurement contracting complete).

Table 3-2 provides a risk checklist from a grantee's point of view. The checklist reflects the variety of risks that should be considered for an MCP. For more information on how to assess these risks, see Appendix B of [Risk Assessment](#) [Ref. 3-14].

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Table 3-2. Risk Checklist [[Ref. 3-29](#)]

<p>I. Project Feasibility</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Technical feasibility B. Long-term viability C. Political circumstances <p>II. Funding</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Sources of funding B. Inflation and growth rates C. Accuracy of cost and contingency analysis D. Cash flow E. Exchange rates F. Appropriation <p>III. Planning</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Scope B. Complexity of the project C. Technical constraints D. Sole source material or service providers E. Constructability F. Milestones (schedule) G. Time to complete (schedule) H. Synchronization of work and payment schedules <p>IV. Engineering</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Design and performance standards B. Unreliable data C. Complexity D. Completeness of design E. Accountability for design F. System integration <p>V. Type of Contract</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Lump sum B. Unit price C. Cost plus <p>VI. Contracting Arrangement</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Turnkey B. Joint venture C. Single prime contractor D. Several prime contractors E. Innovative procurement methods 	<p>VII. Regional and Local Business Conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Number of bidders B. Unemployment rate in construction trades C. Workload of regional contractors <p>VIII. Contractor Reliability</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Capability B. Capacity C. Credit worthiness D. Personnel experience <p>IX. Owner Involvement</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Management of project B. Supplying of material C. Testing and inspection D. Safety programs E. Communications and problem solving F. Partnering G. Start-up operations H. Quality Assurance/Quality Control <p>X. Regulatory Conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Licenses, permits, approvals B. Environmental regulations and requirements C. Patent infringement D. Taxes and duties E. DBE involvement <p>XI. Act of God</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Storm B. Earthquake C. Flood D. Fire E. Impact of site location on any of the above 	<p>XII. Site</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Access B. Congestion C. Underground conditions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Soil conditions (rock vs soil, etc.) • Water • Utilities (existing and new) • Archeological finds • Hazardous wastes D. Noise, fume, dust E. Abutting structures F. Security G. Disruption to public <p>XIII. Labor</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Productivity B. Strikes C. Minority representation D. Sabotage E. Availability F. Work ethics G. Wage scales H. Substance abuse I. Local rules J. Unions K. Materials L. Workman's compensation <p>XIV. Loss or Damages</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Owner's responsibility B. Contractor's responsibility C. Engineer's responsibility D. Vandalism, sabotages E. Accidents F. Third Party Claims <p>XV. Guarantees</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Schedule B. Performance C. Consequential losses D. Liquidated damages
---	--	---

3.5.5.3 Risk Assessment

A risk management program should provide analysis and assessment of risks to determine the maximum protection and strategies for responding to risks at the earliest time in project development. Particular attention should be given to cost elements that represent high likelihood or magnitude of cost risk (or both) or schedule activities on or near the project's critical path. It is important to keep in mind that risks originate at the earliest stages of a project (Requirements risks), extend through the preliminary and final design activities (Design risks) and construction/procurement bidding cycle (Market risks), and do not go away before final contract close-outs (Construction risks). As with construction or procurement contracting, PE and FD phases entail activities and costs with performance metrics and accountabilities for which the grantee should establish strategic means and methods for the assessment and mitigation of risks to keep the project on track during the design phases.

In an engineering context, risk can be viewed as a measure of the difference between actual performance or status of project requirements being dealt with, design development, pre-construction (procurement) planning, project control deliverables, outcomes, outputs and the known best practices for performing or satisfying the requirement, the deliverable, etc.

Potential risks that are identified should be evaluated and available mitigation measures identified. The program should provide for an audit in which parameters are rechecked constantly. The project overview by the risk managers should be ongoing, multidisciplinary, and include every significant part of the project.

An assessment of the magnitude of a risk and the comparative impact among several risks will enable attention to be devoted to those risk mitigation measures most valuable to successful project implementation. To quantify the impact of risk, two basic approaches to risk measurement are common:

- *Deterministic Approach* – Past experience is used to estimate the range of impact of a particular risk. Such information could be used to establish a contingency reserve based on the characteristics of a given project. For instance, it is accepted that the risk of underground construction is much higher than at-grade, thus justifying a higher contingency rate for that portion of work. Power distribution, on the other hand, has much lower risk and, consequently, may have a lower contingency factor. The budget for each line item can then be adjusted by its appropriate contingency rate; these line item adjustments are called “allocated contingency”. In turn, these line item allocated contingencies can be summed for all line items to calculate the allocated project contingency. In addition to the allocated contingency there should be a reasoned additional or unallocated contingency that reflects further uncertainties (based on as yet unmitigated potential risks). Combining these two contingency categories (allocated and unallocated) will produce the total project contingency.

- *Probabilistic Approach* – This approach relates various levels of risk exposure to the probability of their occurrence. The objective is to understand the likelihood of needing a certain level of contingency. This approach develops a model to predict the project schedule or cost with various elements of the project treated as random variables. Once the total distribution range of risk (which could be either cost or schedule risk) is known, it is possible to compute the probability of schedule slippage or cost overruns of various magnitudes across the entire project. A few models for calculating total project risk have been developed. The “bottom-up” model, often employed by grantees that self-perform project risk assessments, accumulates estimated magnitudes of individual identified risks. The “bottom-up” model uses a calculation technique called a “Monte-Carlo simulation” (described below). A second model, the “top-down” model is utilized by the FTA to perform an independent analysis of project risk. The “top-down” model assesses project risk mathematically at a summarized level of cost categories; a more detailed description of this process may be found in Appendix G. Each method has found success in practice, and each method requires practitioners skilled at defining and calculating risk using the respective model.
- The Monte Carlo simulation, used in the “bottom-up” cost model and in all schedule risk assessment, is a randomized simulation used to determine a probability distribution of total project schedule or costs. Tasks and cost items are assigned random durations or amounts within a range of defined parameters, and then the project completion date or total project cost is calculated; this process is repeated hundreds or thousands of times. The percentage of times that a particular project completion date or project cost occurs is tallied, and the result is a graphical representation of the likelihood of completion dates or project costs. If a particular completion date occurs more frequently than any other, it is projected to be most likely to occur in practice. Although the data demands of probabilistic approaches are great and the results may be more difficult to explain to decision makers, the high cost of MCPs justify this sophisticated analysis. Many texts are available that explain this process in more detail.

3.5.5.4 Risk Response

Risk response refers to the process of managing risk in the most effective and efficient manner, so that project goals remain intact. Components of a comprehensive approach to risk response include:

- *Risk Avoidance* – This is available when a project element that is associated with certain potential risk events may be alternatively delivered through a less-risky process or design, or may be eliminated altogether. Keep in mind that when a design alternative, or a management process, is selected, there is no guarantee it will avoid the risk unless it is carried out with careful implementation and its deliverable(s) follow a robust project controls mechanism.
- *Risk reduction* – Where possible, the grantee should take steps to reduce risks, either through reducing the likelihood of a risk event occurring or by reducing the

magnitude of loss if a risk event does occur. Examples of risk reduction programs include developing a strong community outreach program for a project, utilizing a well-developed PMP, conducting constructability reviews, having strong project controls, expediting change orders, settling claims promptly, using partnering techniques, performing advance investigations of underground conditions, etc. Insurance may be obtained to reduce the magnitude of a potential risk event. Insurance can be obtained, for example, for Acts of God, and wrap-up insurance or Owner Controlled Insurance Program (OCIP) can protect against third party claims even while reducing insurance costs for the project (See Section 5.6.2). Performance and payment bond requirements mean that a surety company takes some responsibility for the contractor's performance. The utilization of an OCIP might be both a cost savings and an incentive for better pricing by consultants, contractors, etc. In short, a well managed, risk-informed project will have less risk.

- *Risk transfer* – Risks may be contractually transferred to designers, construction contractors, equipment/materials contractors, to other consultants, or to third party agencies for some situations. For example, for projects of fewer than 24 months, a contractor might be expected to absorb any inflation in prices. Engineers can be expected to be responsible for design errors or omissions. Making contractors purchase their own materials other than long-lead items will eliminate the logistics problems for the grantee. Contractors should be responsible for accidents, their own worker safety, and for securing the work site and equipment as well as for employee possessions and tools. Caution should be applied when considering risk transfer—risk that is transferred to a party that is not capable of managing or reducing the risk, or that may be incapable of withstanding the consequences of the risk, may price the risk beyond the cost of the grantee's retention of the risk.
- *Risk sharing* (a form of Risk Transfer)— There are opportunities for a grantee to share risks with consultants, contractors or other governmental organization in the form of contract requirements, warranties, insurance policies, etc. For example, a grantee might specify that long range inflation costs will be shared by some fixed percentage, or that escalation costs will be based on a given index. A grantee might provide an on-site quality assurance person at a manufacturing facility. Incentives for a good safety record might be provided.
- *Risk acceptance* – This results from the recognition that further reduction of a particular risk would only come at the expense of the project's fundamental goals, such as service loss or cost increase. In some cases, the grantee must accept risk to avoid excessive bid costs or notices of claims. For example, the grantee may be expected to accept risks due to political uncertainties, long range inflation, grantee-caused delays or other delays beyond a contractor's control, such as, for example, obtaining licenses and permits, Acts of God, or differing site conditions. The grantee may want to take responsibility for procuring long-lead materials to assure their availability once contractors have been

selected, or, in some jurisdictions where appropriate, allow the use of a tax exempt purchase order from the grantee. In such cases, the grantee's protection against this retention of risk takes the form of establishing either cost or schedule contingencies.

3.5.5.5 Alternative Project Delivery/Contracting Methods

Prompted by the FTA Turnkey Demonstration Program (TDP) [Ref. 3-30] that was mandated by ISTEA, in recent years alternative delivery and contracting methods have been used to implement many projects. One purpose of these alternative approaches was to assign certain project risks, traditionally borne by grantees, to contractors. For instance, a single D/B contractor becomes responsible for coordinating the design and construction activities that traditionally involved separate entities for design and numerous construction contractors coordinated by the grantee. The TDP *Turnkey Evaluation Guidelines* [Ref. 3-31] identified 24 areas of risk associated with MCPs. Table 3-3 relates examples of instruments for managing those risks and defines possible responsibilities for the grantee and contractors for alternative delivery methods.

Several of the instruments in Table 3-3 relate to project delivery and contracting methods that are alternatives (described in Section 2.2.6) to the conventional D/B/B approach that include the following:

- Design/Build (D/B)
- Design-Build-Operate-Maintain (DBOM)
- Concessions – for example, Design-Build-Maintain-Operate (DBOM/F) or Build-Operate-Transfer (BOT)
- Construction Management-At-Risk (CMR)/Construction Manager/General Contractor (CM/GC)

One advantage in using D/B, DBOM or Concessions is that the grantee's project cost risk is reduced earlier in the process because bids are received early – after basic design has been completed. In addition, these contracts may include contractual monetary incentives (and penalty clauses defining liquidated damages) related to the time of completion, retention of key personnel, and adherence to DBE participation commitments, etc. The pre-qualification process combined with best value selection approaches that normally are part of the procurement process significantly increases the assurance that the selected contractor and its approach are best suited to the project.

A fundamental effect that occurs when considering risks under alternative project delivery approaches is that the grantee not only quantifies risk or makes it explicit through such means as legal contracting language, but, more importantly, shares the risk with, or transparently shifts the risk to, the contractor. Because the contractor wishes to know in advance who is bearing which risk, it will charge the grantee accordingly in its bid prices. A benefit of a thorough risk analysis and allocation process

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

is to produce a rational assessment of the appropriate risks for the owner to retain, share or transfer to the contractor. This process is optimized by an industry input and review process during procurement.

Table 3-3. Instruments for Managing Risk [Ref. 2-42]

Problem Category	Instrument for Managing Risk	Risk Related to Transit MCP	Grantee Responsibility	Contractor Responsibility
Political Assurance	FFGA Record of Decision Letter of Credit Board Resolution	Political	Full	
		Funding	Full	May Participate
		Speculative Effort	Before RFP	Before RFP
Margin of Safety	Reserve Funds Contingency Funds Dedicated Taxes	Financing	Full	May Participate
		Inflation	Prior to Award	After Award
Hedging	Bonding Insurance Multiple Contracts Indexing	Act of God		Full -Insurance
		Seismic	Apply Standard	Meet Standard
		Right-of-Way	Full	Up to Full
Explication/ Allocation	Fixed-Price Contract Contract Agreements Liability Caps Public/Private Partnership Subordinated Debt	Failure to Complete	May Share	Full (capped)
		Regulations	Regulatory Changes Only	Full Compliance
		System Integration	Traditional	Turnkey
		Changed Req'ts	Full	
Contract Performance	Project Mgmt. Oversight Pre-Qualifications Corporate Guarantees Schedule/Cost Reporting QA/QC	Operating	Design/Build	DBOM
		Market (Ridership or Revenue)	Design/Build	DBOM (limited)
		Construction Performance	May Share	Full
		Subsystem Test		Full
Risk Minimization	Risk Isolation Information Accommodation Incentive Clause	System Integration Test	Identify Sub-System Defects	Correct Sub-System Defects
		Schedule	Define Requirements	Conditional Requirements
		Bid Exceed Est.	Full	
		Geotechnical	Discretionary	Discretionary
		Hazard. Materials	Discretionary	Discretionary
		Underground Utilities	Discretionary	Discretionary

In addition to the transfer of certain elements of coordination risk to contractors under these alternative contracting forms, other benefits arise, largely due to the increased scrutiny associated with contractual risk allocation. A benefit of grantee risk assessment and allocation has been the reduction of large risk premiums in bid prices, since grantees often assume or share risks that were often previously assigned to contractors that contractors were not able to control. Examples include responsibility for unidentified conditions such as hazardous materials, geological aberrations, or heretofore unknown archeological finds.

If the risk analysis and allocation process is effectively applied to alternative delivery mechanisms, incentives to improve quality, cost-effectiveness and timeliness of a project result. Effective risk allocation can minimize risk premiums and delineate rational strategic risk-sharing plans for difficult to control items such as hazardous

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

materials. As an example, early in the process for the Largo Metrorail Extension, WMATA determined which risks it wished to assume and segregated those elements into a D/B/B site preparation contract reducing risk premiums on the D/B portion of the work.

To the extent that risk is effectively allocated to those parties most able to reduce the probability of adverse consequence or withstand the costs of such consequences, real savings and increased certainty (reduced risk) are possible. There are several key elements necessary to realize this potential. First is the appropriate assignment of risk as indicated. Next is early identification of the risk elements where additional information will increase the contractor's certainty and reduce any risk premiums. Another critical aspect is assuring that the grantee's contract management and oversight activities do not interfere with the contractor's ability to control its assigned risks, as this may altogether void or reduce the risk transfer.

New approaches to transit development have been implemented by the TDP participants, including such turnkey methods as public/private partnerships, as in the case of the Los Angeles Union Station Gateway, or contractor-based funding/ financing, as in the case of the New Jersey Transit Hudson-Bergen Line. The most innovative transit alternative delivery programs currently underway involve the FTA's Penta-P program. The Denver Regional Transit District in Colorado is pursuing a long-term concession agreement under an availability payment structure, where the private party will finance, design, construct, operate and maintain two new commuter rail lines – the East and Gold. Partnerships such as these allow for sharing of risk and responsibilities, and, given appropriate procurement, contracting and oversight, establish a level of mutual concern, trust, and a new spirit of cooperation. Properly constructed partnerships should align both the grantee and the contractor goals and focus on mutually agreeable outcomes.

Tools to mitigate risks that are included in most alternative delivery contracts include:

- *Insurance* – used to offset professional liability for design and the risk of injuries and property damage during construction and the O&M of the completed transit project. Project-oriented insurance alternatives allow for each contractor to have its own insurance (conventional) and to have a coordinated program provided by the grantee that covers all project participants (OCIP). It is also common for transit agencies to be self-insured for all or part of its risks associated with O&M.
- *Performance Bonds* – FTA requirements are defined in [Circular 4220.1F, Third Party Contracting Guidance](#), Section 11 [Ref. 2-14]. The practice of surety bonding was developed within the context of traditional procurement approaches, wherein the design and individual construction activities are performed by separate entities and in separate stages of project development. In this environment, the bond provides protection against a construction contractor's failure to meet the design specifications produced by the design firm. An issue that has arisen with large single-contractor (e.g., D/B and turnkey) procurements is the capacity of the surety industry to insure for the full value of the contract.

This particularly creates a problem for large contract sizes – it limits the number of proposers who can compete and may impose an unnecessarily high cost for such bonds which do not provide sufficient incremental value. Reduction of bond requirements in such circumstances may be considered in discussion with the FTA.

- *Parent Guarantees* – Parent company guarantees are a standard requirement of most procurements that either involve large projects or those being submitted from a consortium that has developed a special purpose entity. This formal back-up guarantee holds the large parent company liable for assuring that the contract terms are met.
- *Financial Guarantees* – Where the private party is responsible for providing financing for the project there is also the requirement to provide alternative forms of security such as irrevocable letters of credit from major banks. The government may draw on these letters of credit in the event the private party fails to close the transaction.
- *Partnering* – a process to improve the relationship between grantees and their contractors (see Section 3.6.4).
- *Contingencies* – incorporated in cost estimates and schedules to account for the risk associated with uncertainties, be they design application, unknown site conditions, etc.

3.5.6 Project Documentation and Reporting

Cost and progress reporting should be integrated with the schedule planning and reporting system. The integrated cost/schedule/progress reporting system should provide management with promptly issued, accurate data on costs, budgets, and the progress of the many entities of the organization. The grantee should require reports of the principal project tasks at the frequency and in the format necessary to properly monitor the project. Frequencies of at least monthly are necessary, and even weekly or biweekly may be warranted for specified activities or tasks. The grantee also has an obligation to prepare reports at least quarterly on the project's financial status and to provide such reports to the sponsoring government agencies.

Detail and summary level reports should provide periodic and cumulative costs, comparison of actual costs to the planned costs of each element of work, analyses of any variances from the planned costs which may occur, cost relationships with schedule and progress, and variations in the defined scope of project work. The system should include reporting of engineering and administrative costs as well as construction and procurement costs. The system should provide forecasts of the expected costs of work packages at completion and of the total project.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

In addition to routine cost forecasting, as design develops and contracts for materials, equipment, and services are awarded, provisions should be made for periodic reviews and updates (conducted from an overall management perspective and preferably monthly, or on at least quarterly or semiannual basis) of the system-wide estimate. Elements of the project's cost estimate should be subject to varying degrees of re-estimating depending on the status of project development, changes in previously predicted economic conditions, unfavorable experience in contract awards, or refinement of quantities. Project managers should determine the degree to which re-estimating is to be performed, recognizing its cost and the extent to which it will interfere with ongoing performance. Schedule impacts are essential for consideration in conjunction with these periodic cost estimate reviews, as time is both money and in the case of a project under an FFGA essential to understanding whether or not alternative courses of action are necessary to comply with the contracted Revenue Service Date (RSD). The cost/schedule/progress reporting system should include an exceptions report that focuses on current problems or items that appear to be causing problems and proposed solutions to those problems. The exceptions report should also indicate perceived changes in material costs, labor rates, and cash flow that may occur. Anticipated areas of concern and specific problems should be identified and discussed.

Current practice in large transit construction projects is to require contractors to develop cost loaded construction schedules, which are used as the basis for progress reporting and payment requests. It is also a growing practice in the design area to provide metrics to evaluate performance of consultants (and staff or third parties); adopting "earned value" techniques with contracts and accounting/reporting practices is one means toward this sound risk-informed project management approach.

Additional Grantee project reports for updating as warranted by changes and/or progress should include the following:

- Updates of the Project Management Plan (PMP)
- Updates of the Project Procedures Manual (PPM)
- Documentation Control, Records and Configuration Management
- Document Control Logs
- Updates of Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP) for MCPs and others as warranted
- Updates of the project Quality Assurance Plan and Quality Control Procedures
- Updates on Quality Control activities, especially related to interdisciplinary reviews and the satisfactory closure of all review comments
- Updates on the Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan and the program status
- Schedules and Updates
- Project Progress Photographs
- Reports to Management
- Cost Accounting and Reporting
- Lessons Learned Program

In all cases of substantive change in cost, schedule or functionality, the relevant Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) dictionary and definitions by WBS of activities should be updated whenever changes occur. It is essential for all involved to make WBS updating mandatory for design phase and construction phase activities, and especially for cost estimating and scheduling WBS details.

3.5.7 Available Technology for Project Management

Today, project managers are able to use personal computers armed with the latest in project management software to perform a host of functions once done by hand. Project management software now assists the manager in project planning, cost estimating, project administration, scheduling, document control and configuration management, and data management. The grantee should define computerization requirements for all consultants to assure compatibility. The following sections discuss typical capabilities of full-powered project management software.

- *Project planning* - This relates project activities to time, required resources, and any required preceding activities. Activities can be specified by sequence or precedence, such as how the activities depend on each other and which must be completed before others can begin. The program can determine the project's critical path, which is the sequence of activities that must be done on time if the project is to be completed on schedule. Project planning can be accomplished in concert with the essential Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) developed for the project.
- *Resource management* - After breaking the project into tasks and their relationships, available resources must be identified, allocated, and assigned to each task. Programs permit "resource leveling," the process of smoothing out the use of resources over time to meet constraints on resource availability. The "earned value" techniques are also made more efficient, transparent, accurate and effective for the planning and design activities of staff and consultants.
- *Tracking progress* - Start and finish dates and other scheduling matters can be determined using project management software, after which actual progress can be assessed. Various displays are possible that permit comparison of actual to the baseline.
- *Reports* – Graphs and plotted reports of the project's plan and status are additional program tools that can ease updating project reports, including:
 - Network diagram – CPM or PERT charts which show all project activities and their precedence relationships, as well as status comparisons to planned progress on deliverables, outcomes, etc..
 - Gantt (bar) charts, which show each activity as a horizontal bar extending along the project timeline, milestones, and planned activity progress versus actual progress.

- Network schedule, which is a tabular listing of all project activities with their earliest and latest start and finish dates that also shows how much float, or slack time, each activity has.
- Resource reports, which include a tabular listing of all resources and their assignment to activities. Resource histograms, vertical bar charts showing assignment of resources over time, are also possible. Some histograms also show load limits such as the maximum allowable assignment of a resource.
- Cost and Schedule reports that provide detailed breakdowns of assigned costs and time are a minimum requirement. Also useful are cumulative cost reports to depict cash flow requirements. More powerful programs will calculate and graph out earned value as the project progresses. An “earned value” graph compares project completion with costs expended. These reports will also show the estimated cost and/or time to complete the project.

Numerous project management software packages are available for various phases of a transit capital improvement project. The grantee must define its requirements for record-keeping and compare the products. After considering periodic reviews in publications or discussing its needs with other recipients, managers should consider a software’s cost, its capabilities, user friendliness, training requirements, flexibility, and available tech support. Also, grantees must be sure that requisite software and process requirements are identified in Requests For Proposals (or For Bids), spelled out in contracts, and, lastly, enforced to affect and realize their benefits.

3.5.8 Managing Hazards and Threats

Risk management is a well-known component of project management. Less-well known are two aspects of managing risk that FTA Circular 5800.1 mandates as part of the SSMP, itself part of a project’s PMP. These are a Hazard Analysis and a threat and vulnerability analysis. Both entail processes that are similar to risk analysis, but each has unique aspects and each requires skills particular to safety (in the case of hazards) or security (in the case of threats and vulnerabilities) analysis and management.

A hazard analysis is a safety study, while a threat and vulnerability analysis is a security study. The difference between safety and security is in intention; safety is defined as freedom from *unintentional* harm, while security is freedom from *intentional* harm. This section outlines hazard analysis and threat and vulnerability analysis procedures and requirements. Both must be successfully conducted and documented for a project to receive an FFGA.

Hazard and threat analysis programs should be established in all major transit projects. If the grantee’s safety or security staff is not large enough or knowledgeable in Hazard Analysis and resolution or threat and vulnerability analysis and resolution, consultant staff may undertake this role, but, as in all SSMP components dictated by FTA Circular 5800.1, a specifically identified grantee staff member must be responsible for and must oversee the consultant’s work.

In situations where an architectural or engineering firm is responsible for a project's design, a safety or security sub-consultant may undertake the Hazard Analysis and/or the threat analysis as part of the package of plans that are submitted to the grantee. Both analyses must be updated at each phase of the project; the first iteration should be part of a project's environmental evaluation (EE) and basic engineering phases. Depending on a project's size and scope, the grantee should consider separate safety and security assessments for civil and system components of a project.

Although there is considerable overlap between hazard and threat analyses, each is discussed separately to assure that project managers understand the key differences and do not allow the similarities to blur the need for each type of analysis to be undertaken by an experienced professional and to be managed by a responsible project staff member.

3.5.8.1 Hazard Analysis and Management

In general, the Hazard Analysis is known by two names within the transit industry; some call the document a Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA) while the process itself is sometimes called Hazard Assessment and Resolution (HAR).

The PHA (or HAR) is often referred to as a "living document," because hazards will change over a project's lifecycle, which is the reason the PHA must be updated at each phase of a project.

Hazard analysis is a process that is used to identify, analyze, and resolve potential hazards related to elements of a transit system or project. Hazards may be caused by personnel, passengers, system visitors, contractors, and the facilities and equipment themselves.

In developing a hazard management program, grantees should be guided by:

☞ [Hazard Analysis Guidelines for Transit Projects](#) (2000) [Ref. 2-51]

The steps in a hazard (safety) analysis, similar to risk analysis, include:

- Identifying known hazards
- Categorizing the hazards based on their potential severity and probability of occurrence (similar to risk management's step in assigning risk)
- Analyzing the hazards for potential impact
- Resolving each hazard by relying on such alternatives as design, engineering, use of warning devices, procedures and training programs to counter the hazards, or through any variety of other methods
- Project managers must continuously monitor the project to evaluate the performance of measures instituted

3.5.8.2 Hazard Identification

Hazard identification is the most critical step in a PHA; if a hazard is not properly identified it will not be measured and its potential to cause damage to the project will be ignored. The FTA lists five basic methods for hazard identification. They are:

- (1) Data from previous accidents or operating experience; these are similar to case studies, where a past event is analyzed to determine how it can be prevented in the future
- (2) Scenario development and judgment of knowledgeable individuals
- (3) Generic hazard checklists
- (4) Formal Hazard Analysis techniques
- (5) Design data and drawings

3.5.8.3 Hazard Measurement

Once Identified, hazards are measured in terms of the consequences that would occur if they were to be activated (their severity). For hazards whose consequences are not negligible, the analysis must determine the probability (or frequency) of such occurrences.

The transit industry relies on four categories to provide a qualitative measure of outcomes: Catastrophic, Critical, Marginal, and Negligible. They are illustrated in Table 3-4.

Table 3-4. Severity Categories

Severity Category	Consequences of Occurrence
I Catastrophic	Death, system loss, or severe environmental damage
II Critical	Severe injury, severe occupational illness, major system or environmental damage
III Marginal	Minor injury, minor occupational illness, minor system or environmental damage
IV Negligible	Less than minor injury or occupational illness, less than minor system or environmental damage

3.5.8.4 Hazard Probability (Likelihood or Frequency)

Once the severity of a hazard is determined, the analysis team must consider the probability (likelihood) of it occurring. Here, too, recognized categories are used: frequent, probable, occasional, remote, and improbable. They are illustrated in Table 3-5.

Table 3-5. Probability Categories

Probability Level	Individual Item Probability	System-wide Probability
A Frequent	Likely to occur frequently	Continuously experienced
B Probable	Occurs several times in item’s life	Likely to occur frequently
C Occasional	Likely at least once in item’s life	Occurs several times
D Remote	Unlikely, but possible to occur	Can be expected to occur
E Improbable	Assume no occurrence	Unlikely, but possible

3.5.8.5 Risk Determination

Each hazard that is identified must be assigned a severity (I, II, III, or IV) and a probability (A, B, C, D, or E). This results in its consequence being defined by one of 20 risk indices. For example, the highest Hazard Risk Index (HRI) would be labeled I-A (representing 1 = catastrophic and A = frequent) and the lowest HRI would be labeled IV-E (representing IV = negligible and E = improbable).

Because it would be cumbersome to work with so many indices, the FTA hazard guidelines rely on only four HRIs. They are illustrated in Table 3-6.

Table 3-6. Risk Categories and Determination

Risk Category	HRIs in Risk Category	Acceptance Criteria
High	I-A, I-B, I-C, II-A, II-B, III-A	Unacceptable
Moderate	I-D, II-C, II-D, III-B, III-C	Undesirable
Low	I-E, II-E, III-D, III-E, IV-A, IV-B	Acceptable with review
Trivial	IV-C, IV-D, IV-E	Acceptable

3.5.8.6 Hazard Resolution (or Mitigation)

Risk resolution (or mitigation) provides a guide to how management must mitigate the risks that have been identified and quantified. The resolution will be based on the determination of risk category. Thus, if a hazard is:

- *High* – The risk cannot remain and must be mitigated, which means that executive-level management must direct project managers to eliminate the risk or reduce it to a lower, acceptable category.
- *Moderate* – The risk is undesirable and should be reduced.
- *Low* – The risk is acceptable with review by management. In low risk situations, management may decide to leave the hazard in its plans but may identify it for future action that would further reduce the risk.
- *Trivial* – The risk is acceptable; no action need be taken to address a risk that the analysis team places in this category.

The standard order of priority for mitigating hazards should be followed to bring a hazard to an acceptable risk level. The transit industry recognizes the following priority for mitigation of defined hazards:

- Design to eliminate the hazard
- Design safety device(s) to control the hazard
- Design warning device(s) for the hazard
- Develop procedures and provide training to better manage the hazard

3.5.8.7 Threat and Vulnerability Management

A Threat and Vulnerability Analysis (TVA) is the security counterpart of the PHA (or HAR) process. Like the PHA, the TVA is also a “living document”—this is because threats will change over a project’s lifecycle, which is the reason the TVA must be updated at each phase of a project.

The main goal of a TVA is to assess threats at each phase of a project and to assure that existing security mechanisms in place provide satisfactory provisions for the detection, deterrence, and response to malevolent acts in the planning, design, construction, and operation of a transit system. Where existing systems are not satisfactory, the TVA should recommend improved mitigations for management to select to lower the vulnerability of the project.

Generally, two principle goals are established for all TVAs:

- The security and well-being of the local community, general public, contractors, patrons, and employees are given top priority in all phases of a project’s development, culminating in an operating system where people may move freely throughout the system with a high level of actual and perceived security
- The protection of facilities and equipment should reduce potential problems that could lead to disruption of the project during developmental phases or of the system once it is operational; problems might include increased maintenance, operating, and legal costs associated with disruptions caused by foreseeable events

The definition of security is, in some ways, broader than that of safety and, therefore harder to quantify. Also, safety is a well-established discipline within the transit industry and within all construction projects; security, on the other hand, has historically been treated as an adjunct of safety, with little direct focus on it except in very large transit systems with their own in-house police departments.

One way project managers can assure that security receives appropriate attention is to separate the two fields in their thinking and in their actions. Rather than continue to assume that the word “safety” also includes security, recipients and project managers must recognize that the two are different, require different types of expertise, and must be addressed separately in meetings, bid documents, and in oversight of all phases of a project.

3.5.8.8 Threat Identification

Complicating the study of threats and vulnerabilities is that the tasks go beyond traditional crime-fighting. Criminal threats are the most common to consider; they include property crimes, larcenies, fare evasion, theft from patrons, vendors, employees or vehicles, and violent crimes, such as robberies and assaults. Less common types of intentional wrongdoing that must be analyzed include the possibility of terrorist acts, civil disturbances, sabotage, pilferage, theft of property or information, workplace violence, extortion, or other willful attacks on the system, its property, or its patrons.

Undertaking such an analysis involves asking:

- What can go wrong?
- What is the likelihood of it going wrong?
- What are the consequences of it going wrong?

3.5.8.9 Defining Vulnerability

Vulnerability is defined as the susceptibility of a location to a particular threat. Once probable threats are identified, a vulnerability analysis considers the potential impact of loss if a facility were to becoming disabled or destroyed.

Impact of loss is further defined as the degree to which the agency’s mission (or a particular portion of the agency’s mission) would be impaired by the success of a particular threat being carried out. In a transit system, vulnerability increases or decreases as a result of:

- System design
- Equipment (and technology) used
- Operating procedures
- Policing and/or security operations and safeguards

3.5.8.10 Threat Severity

As with Hazard Analysis, the measurement of vulnerability relies on industry-wide accepted categories to provide a measure of the potential outcomes of security breaches. The categories are the same as in hazard measurement, including catastrophic, critical, marginal, and negligible. They are illustrated in Table 3-7.

Table 3-7. Severity Categories

Severity Category	Consequences of Occurrence
I Catastrophic	Death, system loss, or severe environmental damage
II Critical	Severe injury, severe occupational illness, major system or environmental damage
III Marginal	Minor injury, minor occupational illness, minor system or environmental damage
IV Negligible	Less than minor injury or occupational illness, less than minor system or environmental damage

3.5.8.11 Threat Probability (Likelihood or Frequency)

Also similar to the hazard analysis process, the probability of the frequency of occurrence of each threat must be estimated. The likelihood that a breach will occur is generally described in terms of potential occurrence per unit of time, event, population, or activity. The probability will be different at different phases of a project and will also be different for different parts of a project.

Certain breaches are more likely to occur during construction than during revenue service; for example, theft of equipment or of employee tools are examples of breaches more closely associated with construction sites than with revenue service. Similarly, the location of a construction site or a station in a high-crime area must be considered in the analysis of threat probability.

More dramatic breaches, such as, for instance, an eco-terrorist attack on an unpopular construction site or an international terrorist attack on a rail station, also differ in their likelihood under different sets of circumstances. A construction site that abuts popular parkland or wetlands and has been criticized by environmentalists has a higher likelihood of attack than one in an uncontroversial area. International terrorists are more likely to attack a heavily-trafficked station located in or adjacent to a historic site than a small, suburban walk-up station that is little more than a platform and a shelter. The latter may be more easily breached, but the small amount of publicity and loss of life that would occur make the event less likely.

Bearing these and similar scenarios in mind, analysts will define the threat/vulnerability probability using the same five categories as in Hazard Analysis: frequent, probable, occasional, remote, or improbable. The categories are illustrated in Table 3-8.

Table 3-8. Probability Categories

Probability Level	Individual Item Probability	System-wide Probability
A Frequent	Likely to occur frequently	Continuously experienced
B Probable	Occurs several times in item's life	Likely to occur frequently
C Occasional	Likely at least once in item's life	Occurs several times
D Remote	Unlikely, but possible to occur	Can be expected to occur
E Improbable	Assume no occurrence	Unlikely, but possible

3.5.8.12 Criticality

The final step in the threat analysis is to establish security objectives. To do this, the severity of a breach and the likelihood of its occurrence are combined to form a risk level (criticality) matrix which follows a format similar to the determination of hazards; specifically, high, serious, and low. They are illustrated in Table 3-9.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

If a threat is:

- *High* – The risk cannot remain and must be mitigated, which means that project managers must eliminate the risk or reduce it to a lower, acceptable category.
- *Serious* – The threat is undesirable and should be reduced, if at all possible within fiscal constraints. The decision how and when to institute mitigation measures is a decision to be made by executive-level management.
- *Low* – The risk is acceptable; a review by executive-level management may result in no action taken immediately and the threat being permitted to remain, possibly with an identification of future action that would further reduce the risk.

Table 3-9. Criticality Matrix

Severity→ (decreasing) Frequency↓ (decreasing)	I	II	III	IV	
A	H (I-A)	H (II-A)	S (III-A)	S (IV-A)	H = High
B	H (I-B)	H (II-B)	S (III-B)	L (IV-B)	S = Serious
C	H (I-C)	S (II-C)	L (III-C)	L (IV-C)	
D	S (I-D)	L (II-D)	L (III-D)	L (IV-D)	L = Low
E	S (I-E)	L (II-E)	L (III-E)	L (IV-E)	

3.5.8.13 Countermeasure Recommendations

The final step in a TVA is recommendations for countermeasures. These may combine physical and human security. In some situations, barriers, entry/exit policies, access control mechanisms, intrusion detection or surveillance systems (including closed circuit television [CCTV]) may be among the countermeasure recommendations. Human security may involve guards at key locations, whether checking badges or employees, contractors, or visitors, maintaining pedestrian or vehicular traffic control, checking in and out deliveries, or patrolling regularly or spot-checking a site during non-working hours.

Recommended countermeasures must take into account the application of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) and Situational Crime Prevention (SCP), such as techniques relying on design, landscaping, signage, placement of entrances/exits, and a variety of planning techniques that create a sense of security at a site.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Because of the changing nature of projects through their life-cycle phases, the countermeasures may also change. Additionally, external events may also impact on the recommendations. For instance, a popular, well-received project may not require the intense mitigation strategies that an unpopular project may require, just as traffic patterns and crime levels in a surrounding area will also influence the types of mitigations recommended.

3.6 Procurement, Contracts, and Related Topics

3.6.1 Procurement

Policies and procedures for obtaining professional, construction, and other services, ROW, and materials and equipment should be established consistent with applicable government and agency regulations and the provisions of:

☞ FTA Circular 4220.1F([Third Party Contracting Guidance](#)) [Ref. 2-14]

These should address requests for procurement, selection criteria for contract awards, types of contracts, schedules, price and cost estimates, Insurance requirements, and special bonding requirements, if any. Responsibility and authority should be assigned for preparing, negotiating, executing, and monitoring all contracts from both a technical and administrative perspective. This calls loudly for a Source Selection Plan, with associated procedures, to be developed that covers this process either at the total project level or further broken down for individual contracts.

A procurement plan should be prepared for each phase to acquire all required services and items in accordance with the mission and objectives of that phase. The size and content of each procurement package, schedule for delivery, and cost estimate should be included. Specific requirements for procurement functions should be established in accordance with the suggested guidance and as documented in the grantee's Source Selection Plan:

- *Procurement documents* – Professional services and bidding documents should include a description of the contract work scope, the form of contract to be awarded, the schedule for completion (inclusive of interim milestones that may be necessary) and the requirements for the technical, management and cost portion. The documents should also describe the process to be used in selecting consultants or bidding, proposal evaluation, and contract award.
- *Procurement certification checklist* - A checklist which identifies all actions that must be completed prior to advancing a procurement and the individual(s) responsible for each action should be developed. All responsible parties should certify by signature that action items have been completed and that the package is prepared for advertising.
- *Advertising* - For each procurement, a list of potential consultants and/or bidders who have demonstrated capability to provide the service or item in compliance with specifications should be prepared. All listed firms should be invited to

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

propose (consultants) or bid (contractors) on the procurement. The availability of proposal and bid documents should be advertised in trade publications such as *Passenger Transport* and *Mass Transit*, in small business, minority, and women-owned trade publications, and in other media, including newspapers published and circulated in minority communities.

- *Pre-Proposal and Pre-bid conferences* - Pre-proposal and pre-bid conferences should be conducted to brief prospective consultants and/or bidders and explain the procurement requirements. Any pertinent changes to proposal and/or bid information resulting from the conference should be issued to all recorded holders of the bid documents.
- *Contractor selection* - Evaluation of the proposals or bids should be made by a designated team representing the owner and in accordance with a prescribed process.
- *Pre-award survey* - Prior to contract award, a pre-award survey may be appropriate to ensure that the selectee possesses the personnel, facilities, procedures, financial resources, and experience to complete the contract satisfactorily. In some cases for construction and/or major procurements, it may be appropriate to pre-qualify prospective contractors prior to the bidding process, thus eliminating the need for the pre-award survey.
- *Contract award (construction and/or procurement contracts)* - If the pre-award survey finds that the prospective contractor is satisfactory, a contract should be prepared and executed. If not, the pre-award survey process should be repeated with the next ranked bidder until a satisfactory contractor is identified.
- *Monitoring and control* - Monitoring and control of the consultant's and/or contractor's work should be accomplished in accordance with the quality assurance (QA) plan and the specifications of the contract.

The DBE requirements of all applicable jurisdictions, including FTA, should be identified. Contracting opportunities should be pursued in concert with the agency's DBE officer as part of each procurement to achieve the project's goals. Availability identification and analysis by contract work type is important for providing sound, defensible DBE goals and also enabling the grantee to provide lists of available and qualified DBE firms to prospective consultants and/or contractors.

In planning for procurement, the grantee must consider the importance of work packaging, which relates to the number and size of individual contracts. The smaller the number of individual contracts, the smaller the number of problems there may be with administration and coordination. Larger contracts may attract interest from larger, more experienced contractors from outside the immediate geographical area to enhance the competition. However, they may also reduce the competitiveness of local contractors. Work packaging should be coordinated with DBE goals to have contracts

available on which these contractors are able to participate. In this latter regard, prime contractors may be more inclined to aggressively pursue and utilize qualified DBE firms when the contract work schedule of pricing is broken out (line itemed) by the grantee such that the prime contractor can easily seek bids from these firms and permit easy assignment of specific and possibly unique-to-the-DBE project activities. This approach may also enable the DBE firms to avoid such potential issues that have cropped up, such as side-by-side non-union and union work, as well as provide a clearer DBE firm role that it can then market for future business.

3.6.2 Consultant and Contractor Selection and Contract Types

Negotiated contracts and advertised, competitive-bid contracts are the primary methods for selecting potential professional services and construction/procurement contractors. It is important to check state or local laws that may impose requirements on the procurement process that might prohibit or otherwise make difficult one or more contract types. Competitive bidding is better suited to lump-sum and unit-price contracts rather than to cost reimbursable contracts. Listed in order of decreasing contractor responsibility for performance cost, are the type of contracts that may be considered:

- Lump-Sum, Firm-Fixed-Price
- Fixed-Price with Escalation
- Fixed-Unit-Price
- Fixed-Unit-Price with Escalation
- Cost-Plus-Incentive-Fee
- Cost-Plus-Award-Fee
- Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee

In general, fixed-price type contracts provide for performance of specified work in consideration of a stated price, and the contractor is obligated to accept the risks of uncertainty. These are most applicable to contracts involving materials, equipment, and facility construction. Cost-reimbursable type contracts provide for the payment of allowable costs incurred in the performance of the contract and establish a cost ceiling which the contractor cannot exceed. These types of contracts are best when uncertainties exist which prevent the preparation of a precise work scope and cost estimate. Cost-reimbursable contracts are most appropriate for professional service contracts; they require the contractor to have a sound cost accounting system. The Brooks Law (Public Law 92-582 92nd Congress, H.R. 12807. October 27, 1972) constrains the selection process for architect/engineer contractors; exemptions have been permitted by FTA where State laws allow alternatives.

Additional information related to procurement and selection for alternative delivery approaches is included in Section 2.2.6.

3.6.3 Dispute Resolution

Responsibility should be assigned and procedures clearly established for resolving disputes in a timely manner and at the lowest administrative level possible. Clearly, the

best way to deal with disputes is to avoid them by mitigating the conditions which cause them. Disputes can be avoided if contingencies are dealt with in the framework of contract documents. The recognition of contract elements that are vulnerable to change and misinterpretation can help stem disagreements. Clauses dealing clearly with (for consultants) clearly written work scope, assignment of qualified staff, work location, financial and administrative accounting and reporting, and quality assurance/quality control. Deliverables, etc. and (for contractors) changed conditions and quantity variations should be included in the contract document. In general, disclaimers and exculpatory language should be avoided. Both the owner and consultant and/or contractor should agree to language which permits the project to advance while any dispute is being resolved rather than bringing the consultant's and/or contractor's work to a halt. The selection of formal dispute resolution procedures should be a function of the project size and the grantee's resources and may include:

- Dispute Review Board
- Arbitration
- Mediation
- Litigation

For information on disputes see:

☞ *Avoiding and Resolving Disputes in Underground Construction: Successful Practices and Guidelines* [Ref. 3-32]

3.6.4 Partnering – Construction Contracts

There has been an increasing desire on the part of grantees and contractors to foster an environment that is less adversarial and based on a desire to achieve mutual objectives. A concept called *partnering* emerged that is aimed at creating an environment where trust and teamwork prevent disputes and where stakeholders establish bonds to complete a project successfully. Partnering is applicable to any stakeholder relationships; it involves the grantee and its contractors, including the design team, construction contractor(s) or equipment supplier(s), or, in some cases, a large multidiscipline D/B or DBOM consortium.

This process begins by establishing a voluntary Partnering Agreement. The partnering process continues with a workshop whose sole agenda is to establish and implement the partnering process. Similar workshops may be held throughout the project to reinforce the initiative.

The key elements of a partner agreement are:

- Strong commitment by top management to the process, both owners and contractors
- Equity of all stakeholders in the process
- Trust between the parties
- Development of mutual goals and objectives

- Continuous evaluation of the process to ensure that all parties are working towards the goals and objectives
- A method for achieving timely response to concerns

Partnering itself will not eliminate all claims but, used in conjunction with other claims management techniques, it may help with claims resolution by encouraging mutual trust and by specifying mutually agreed upon procedures for resolving issues. Sources of information on dispute resolution and partnering are available from the Construction Industry Institute.

3.6.5 Claims Management

A claim is a written statement by a single party requesting additional time and/or money for acts or omissions by another during performance of a contract. From a grantee's standpoint, claims have become the administrative vehicle whereby grantees and contractors may equitably allocate the costs of events which occur outside the scope of the contract. From a contractor's perspective, claims can be just compensation for unforeseen cost overruns or a means by which to expand the value of the contract and increase the profit.

No project is totally secure from the risk of cost increase due to claims related to changed conditions and authorized additional work. Project cost overruns due to claims may be attributed to one or more of the following problems:

- Failure to provide for risk allocation in the contract
- Inclement weather or other uncontrollable natural events
- Ambiguities in or poorly developed contract provisions and contract drawings
- Strikes
- Poorly prepared specifications
- Acquisition of permits and approvals from outside agencies
- Failure to establish and implement management procedures capable of reducing exposure to unnecessary risk
- Site accessibility problems
- Extension of time, design or requirement changes, etc., granted to an interfacing contractor which causes delays or changes to the performing contractors
- Inadequate or non-existent construction documentation
- Frivolous or unfounded contractor claims

Establishing a claims management process by the project manager is important to avoid the incidence of claims. This starts with the development of a structure and lines of authority which allows responsiveness. This can be accomplished by having a particular manager or supervisor responsible for all of the activities that make up that individual's geographical area. A geographic area might be a line segment, a group of stations, a tunnel, or another clearly delineated area of construction. In addition, authority should go with responsibility. Organizations that delegate authority for authorizing changes or work-arounds to the lowest level possible have good success at claims prevention [Ref. 3-33].

Contract language should be used to allocate risk among the grantee and the contractor in accordance with the theory that responsibility should be on the party best able to control the risk. See Section 3.5.5 for a discussion of risk assessment and management. The contract structure should be appropriate for the degree of uncertainty in the project and policies and procedures should be written such that they allow project management to act in a responsive manner.

Claims and change order processing procedures should promote early equitable settlements of extras to which the contractor is entitled by answering the following questions [Ref. 3-34]:

- (1) Who receives and who analyzes the change order or claim?
- (2) What information is required from the construction manager and Resident Engineer and in what form(s)?
- (3) Will there be support available for review of change orders in the technical group within the owner's organization? Within consultant organization if such is retained to provide design services during construction?
- (4) Will there be an attorney involved early-on to analyze if a legal basis exists for the change order or claim?
- (5) What levels within the organization will be notified when a change order or claim has been submitted, and to what depth will they be involved?
- (6) Will the individual in charge of the project have time to delve into the intricate details to establish whether there is a valid change order or claim and to what the contractor is entitled?
- (7) What role does the construction manager and Resident Engineer play in helping to decide whether there is a valid change order or claim and to what the contractor is entitled?
- (8) Will there be a separate department with the responsibility and knowledgeable staff that can assist the project manager in analyzing the change order or claim?

A training program should be considered to ensure the effectiveness of the staff whose responsibility it is to avoid claims.

3.6.6 Alternative Project Delivery Methods and Overall Contracting Plan

Selection of an alternative contracting method depends primarily on the legal environment allowing for such arrangements, implementation objectives, maturity/expertise of the grantee staff, the grantee's concern with cost overruns and controlling system costs, tight project schedule, and the decision as to the physical scope of the contract. A summary of the general procurement approach for certain alternative delivery approaches is listed below. Section 2.2.6 provides additional information on these methods along with benefits and constraints.

For all alternative delivery approaches, a key premise of the procurement is to assure that there is clear definition of the responsibilities for each party with a specific statement of the service to be provided, how it will be measured, and which parameters

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

are fixed and where there is opportunity for innovation. The approach of Alternative Technical Concepts (ATCs) is often used to allow proposers to submit and receive approval for innovative concepts that vary from the procurement documents. The ATCs are normally kept confidential.

Prior to beginning the formal selection process a useful tool in alternative delivery procurement is the Request for Information. This is used to seek industry input on the proposed process, provide the opportunity for informal feedback and identify key commercial issues and solutions.

The selection process itself is normally two-step, first a Request for Qualifications that results in a short list of the most-qualified firms. The Request for Proposal is issued to those short-listed firms and usually includes three components: Instructions to Proposers, Technical Requirements/Performance Criteria and the Agreement. The Technical Requirements components will vary depending on the nature of the contracting arrangement but should focus on measurable functional and performance-based elements. The framework needs to be developed through an allocation of contractual responsibility and risk ownership to the party best able to manage the risk. The short-list proposers are often given the opportunity to provide industry review comments. After any amendments to the documents are made they are reissued and all proposers bid on the revised documents.

- Design-Build (D/B) –The procurement process is normally 2-step with an initial pre-qualification of teams based on experience and capability of firm(s) and their assigned personnel with relevant projects and references. Short-listed firms then receive the request for proposal package. The public sponsor will normally have design documents available for analysis prepared to a 15-30% level along with bidding documents that include instruction to proposer, performance-based requirements and a design-build agreement. Typical contract will have a guaranteed maximum price (GMP) and a guaranteed completion date. Warranties of various terms may be included; normally these would be for at least one year. While D/B can be selected solely on lowest price, it is normally a best value selection to take maximum value of innovation opportunities (as further discussed below).
- Design-Build-Operate-Maintain (DBOM) -- The procurement process is similar to D/B with the additional components of assessing operations and maintenance capability. In addition to the construction price there may also be terms for the ongoing operations and maintenance payments which may be a fixed price with inflation indices. The O&M payments are tied to achieving stated standards of performance with opportunities for bonus and significant deductions for inferior delivery.
- Concession or Design-Build-Operate-Maintain/Finance – The concession procurement process is similar to D/B and DBOM but adds the additional requirement in the qualifications phase of presenting the capability to deliver

financing for all or significant parts the project. A concession procurement means a complex set of documents and selection criteria that must address financial, technical and O&M capabilities. There must also be requirements and provisions for the “hand-back” of the facility to the public sponsor. The procurement process normally includes participating in one-on-one meetings. Once the public owner has produced a final set of documents, all bidders are expected to provide bids backed up by letters of credit or other financial commitments. The investment on the part of the private parties in developing their bids and securing financing commitments is significant and it is important to conduct the procurement process with openness and care to maintain a high level of competition.

- Construction Management at Risk (CMR) or Construction Manager/General Contractor (CM/GC) – The procurement process for the designer and the contractor are both on a qualifications basis. The designer is first chosen by the owner and then the CM/CG contractor. The designer selection is the same as a D/B/B although the qualifications will seek those with experience in this type of arrangement. For the contractor the selection covers elements such as experience, project approach and past performance. The contractor procurement may also include prices for general conditions and the management fee that will be applied to subcontracts.

3.6.6.1 Best-Value Procurement System

To maximize the value from these alternative delivery options one important tool is the ability to use evaluation criteria that allow selection of the private contractor that will bring the highest value to the public agency. The most effective approaches are when the agency establishes selection criteria based on the agency’s policies and goals. Almost all best-value evaluations are based on a 2-step process that first establishes the qualifications of proposers and establishes a short-list. When the detailed proposals are submitted, the type of considerations being employed to evaluate include the quality and technical innovations, commitments of key personnel, community outreach programs, minimizing life cycle costs, added-value features and, of course, price.

Table 3-10 provides a comparison of results between more traditional approaches with multiple or single primes vs. two alternative delivery approaches: D/B or DBOM.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Table 3-10. Comparison of Contracting Methods

Feature	Multiple Prime	Single Prime	Design/Build	Design Build Operate and Maintain
Number of Construction Contracts	Many	One	One	One
Type of Technical Specifications	Prescriptive	Prescriptive	Performance	Performance
Acquisition Experience of Grantees	Moderate	Extensive	Low	Low
Grantee Involvement and Coordination Demands	Extensive	Moderate	Low*	Low*
Expected Claims Change Orders, and Backcharges	High	Medium	Low	Low
Operating Risk Exposure to Vendor	Low	Low	Low	High
Proprietary Technology Admissible	No	No	Yes	Yes

* While some coordination responsibility can be assigned to a contractor, the grantee must maintain overall public interface responsibility.

Lessons learned from FTA’s Turnkey Demonstration Program (TDP) are documented in:

Lessons Learned – Turnkey Applications in the Transit Industry [Ref. 3-35]

With a wide range of project development approaches offered by turnkey, acquisition planning, including whether to proceed with turnkey implementation, and if so, what type of turnkey is very important. Turnkey requires more effort and concentration in project planning and preliminary engineering, with less preliminary phasing of design, construction, and contracting requirements on the part of the public sponsor. Turnkey also requires different management and professional capabilities on the part of the grantee as contrasted to conventional procurement. Turnkey can benefit agencies with less technical and engineering resources or those with projects under tight financial and schedule constraints, as it can result in cost savings due to shorter inflation periods.

In the past, constraints such as the Federal public competitive bidding policies and the Brooks Act restricted the ability of a grantee to pursue anything but a conventional procurement approach. Several Federal laws, however, now permit alternative delivery approaches to implement MCPs, including ISTEA (which authorized the National TDP), the Federal Acquisition Reform Act, and Senate Bill 1124 that allowed two-phase D/B and pre-qualification.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

Additionally, many state licensing statutes prohibit design services by unlicensed architect and engineer (A&E) entities. In effect, these state statutes prohibit the grantee from contracting with any other entity than an A&E to accommodate alternative contracting, distinct from traditional legal forms of contracting. Many of the TDP and other transit projects using alternative delivery methods had to enact special legislation or receive waivers to permit various elements of the D/B process. As D/B and other contracting approaches became more common there was a significant increase in the number of states that passed legislation that to some degree identifies, supports, or encourages the combining of design and construction on public projects. As of 2008, 37 states have given full authority to transit agencies to use the DB method, leaving 13 states without such authority. The use of CMR is not authorized in 31 states, and only 14 states have fully authorized DOTs to use this method. See [TCRP Report 131, “A Guidebook for the Evaluation of Project Delivery Methods.”](#) [Ref. 2-33] In addition, the enabling legislation for many local transit agencies or certain cities and counties provide them with greater flexibility on contracting approaches than certain state agencies.

3.6.6.2 Penta-P

An alternative contracting method that has started to increase in usage since FTA was authorized under SAFETEA-LU is a pilot program for exploring public-private partnerships (P3s) – the Public-Private Partnership Pilot Program or Penta-P – to demonstrate the advantages and disadvantages of P3s for certain new fixed guideway capital projects funded by FTA. This demonstration program is designed to examine if P3s are able to achieve the following goals: 1) reduce and allocate risks; 2) accelerate project delivery; 3) improve reliability of cost and benefit of projects; and 4) enhance project performance. Three pilot projects were allowed; the three selected were: 1) Bay Area Rapid Transit – Oakland Airport Connector; 2) Houston METRO Light Rail System; and 3) the Denver RTD Gold Line/East Corridor Commuter Rail. These projects will provide further insights into how alternative delivery can benefit transit and how FTA can facilitate those approaches.

3.6.7 Contracting Considerations Related to Risk Management

The following considerations relate to the use of alternative project delivery and contracting methods:

- *Number of Construction Contracts* – For many alternative project delivery methods, there is only one contract wherein the grantee (or a grantee’s hired construction manager consultant) performs oversight while the contractor focuses on the performance of the contract. Multiple Primes are typically used on projects by agencies that are large and mature, and have knowledgeable and experienced staff who have managed large projects in the past. The packaging of work into multiple, smaller contracts stimulate smaller local and DBE contractors but may require using a combination of D/B/B and alternative delivery approaches. This “portfolio effect” is achieved by spreading the risk to many contractors; however it must be weighed against increased project management and control demands.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- *Acquisition Planning* – In the conventional approach to implementing transit projects, the grantee assumes full responsibility for the design, system integration, phasing, procurement of construction, management interface, and quality assurance of the entire project wherein acquisition planning is a somewhat phased activity. In alternative project delivery methods, the contractor may have the full responsibility for project implementation from design through start-up, and possibly O&M (see Figure 3-7). Acquisition planning under these approaches requires a more concentrated, detailed, and long-range effort up front. Although there may be a single contract under D/B or DBOM, the level of contract formation defines whether the project will be a success.

As responsibility for cost, schedule, and technical issues will be assumed by the contractor, the grantee must be willing to invest the necessary time and effort before the contractor is procured to assure that the risk allocation and other desired outcomes are thoroughly assessed and clearly communicated. This requires not only an effective qualification and procurement process but also an internal assessment of responsibilities within the grantee organization to decide how oversight will be handled to assure desired outcomes. The grantee must monitor the use of these controls during execution of the project. The oversight controls are essentially the grantee's direction and oversight of the project.

- *Change Orders and Claims* – Factors contributing to change orders and claims include: 1) design is not totally or substantially complete at the time of construction contract award; 2) inflation, escalation of material and labor prices; and 3) other changes that occur during the time required to perform all construction work. Because design is the responsibility of the D/B or DBOM contractor, it is difficult to justify a construction claim for its own inability to coordinate design and construction sequencing. Changes in work should only occur at the direction of the grantee, necessitating a justifiable change order – otherwise the frequency of claims should be minimal under alternative project delivery method procurement approaches. Single and multiple prime contractors generally abide by the dictates of the A&E and grantee's drawings; thus, if unforeseen conditions are encountered (rapid inflation, labor unrest, geotechnical, hazardous materials) it may be the grantee's responsibility to pay for the changes.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

	AA	PE	Final Design	ROW/ Utilities	Guide-way	Fixed Facilities	Systems	Start-Up/ Testing	O & M	Funding/ Financing
Traditional Method										
Grantee	●	○	○	●	○	○	○	●	●	●
Design Consultant		●	●	○	○	○	○	○		
Systems Consultant			●	○	○		○	○		
Systems Supplier					○		●	○		
Civil Contractor					●	●				
Full Turnkey (BTO)										
Grantee	●	●	○	●	○	○	○	○	●	●
Gen. Design Cons.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Turnkey Contractor		○	●		●	●	●	●		
Full Turnkey (BOT)										
Grantee	●	●	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	●
Gen. Design Cons.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Turnkey Contractor		○	●		●	●	●	●	●	
Modified Turnkey										
Grantee	●	●	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	●
Gen. Design Cons.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Turnkey Contractor		○	●		●	○	●	●	●	
Civil Contractor						●				
Superturnkey										
Grantee	○	●	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	●
Gen. Design Cons.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Turnkey Contractor	●	○	●		●	○	●	●	●	○

Legend: ● Primary Responsibility ○ Oversight Responsibility
 ○ Secondary / Management Responsibility ○ Supporting Responsibility

Figure 3-7. Public Agencies Roles/Responsibilities for Turnkey Projects

3.7 Quality Assurance/Quality Control

3.7.1 FTA QA/QC Guidelines Summary

QA refers to all controlling bases (i.e., codes, regulations, law, agreements contracts, etc.) and accepted best practices and the activities necessary to verify, audit, and evaluate the quality of deliverables and outcomes. QA involves establishment of a quality program for the project or, if desired, individual programs for organizations such as the engineering department, construction department, etc. Within this program, a plan describing the organization(s) for QA and QA polices and authorities must be prepared, together with Quality Control procedures with roles and responsibilities.

Guidance for establishing a QA/QC program and plan can be found in:

☞ [Quality Assurance and Quality Control Guidelines](#) [Ref. 2-54]

While the size of the QA staff will vary depending on project size, personnel throughout the project organization will have QC responsibilities as specified in the QC procedures. For example, the QA policies should specify that there be design reviews, which will involve many participants from many disciplines. The QA program ensures that QC procedures are established, documented, and followed.

A QA program will provide an effective system for ensuring that:

- All work is performed in accordance with engineering requirements.
- All work adheres to approved design criteria as well as applicable laws, regulations, codes and industry best practices. Further, it will conform to published, though not necessarily binding, recommendations from industry groups relevant to the designed feature or equipment.
- All construction is performed in accordance with the design intent, whether originally in the contract or altered through an approved change request or owner directive. Construction oversight will be provided as approved by the owner, and may vary by project being provided by owner staff, though construction manager consultants, or possibly even the contractor under alternative delivery methods. In this later case, the grantee must still be in the position of having complete authority for final acceptance.
- All equipment is tested throughout development, manufacture, and installation to verify that it will function as specified.
- Undesirable conditions are detected early and positive corrective action is taken in a timely manner.
- Control over the system hardware configuration is maintained at all times to define the acceptability of equipment (as established by design reviews, drawing approvals, and design verification testing), to control configuration during retrofits and modification work, and to ensure that the system will be safe for public use.

3.7.2 Project QA/QC Requirements

The *QA/QC Guidelines*, describes fifteen elements of a good quality program. These elements are:

- (1) *Management responsibility* - The grantee should define and document a quality policy and should communicate, implement, and maintain that policy at all levels of its organization. Management should designate a representative with defined authority and responsibility for ensuring that the quality policy is implemented and maintained. Management should also identify staff responsible for the quality assurance function and should define in writing the responsibility, authority, and interrelation of those persons.
- (2) *Documented quality system* - The grantee should establish and maintain a documented quality system to ensure quality objectives are satisfied. The quality system's requirements should extend to the grantee's suppliers and contractors as appropriate.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- (3) *Design control* - The designer should establish and maintain procedures to control and verify the design of the transit systems to ensure that the design criteria and all other specified requirements, including those of relevant regulatory agencies, are met. Design control includes ensuring that the design requirements are understood, planning the design interfaces and design verification activities, executing the design verification activities, and controlling design changes through project completion.
- (4) *Document control* - Procedures for control of project documents and data should be established and maintained. The document control measures should ensure that all relevant documents are current and available to all who require them. This helps ensure that future procurement of replacement equipment or components will meet the original product requirements. A useful tool for tracking project documents is the design output index, which lists every document developed for the execution of the project. The design output index should contain a listing of the latest revisions of the following: Drawings, technical specifications, special processes, test specifications, and engineering change notices.
- (5) *Purchasing* - The purchaser should ensure that the purchased service or product conforms to the purchaser's specified requirements. The purchaser should require supplier quality programs appropriate to the work being performed.
- (6) *Product identification and traceability* - Measures should be established and maintained to identify and control items of production (batch, materials, parts, and components) to prevent the use of incorrect or defective items and to ensure that only correct and acceptable items are used or installed.
- (7) *Process control* - Suppliers and contractors should identify and plan the production and installation processes which directly affect quality and should ensure that these processes are performed under controlled conditions. Special processes, the results of which cannot be verified by subsequent inspection and testing of the product, should be continuously monitored.
- (8) *Inspection and testing* - Inspection and testing procedures should be planned and executed as necessary to verify quality. Procedures should be specified and implemented and the results documented for receiving incoming product, for work in process, and for final inspection and testing.
- (9) *Inspection, measuring, and test equipment* - Equipment required to carry out inspection and testing should be identified, controlled, calibrated, and maintained in order to demonstrate the conformance of work to the specified requirements. Provisions should be made for recalibration of such equipment in a timely manner.
- (10) *Inspection and test status* - A means should be provided for identifying the inspection and test status of work during production and installation. The purpose of this is to ensure that only work which has passed the required inspections and tests is accepted.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

- (11) *Nonconformance* - Procedures should be established and maintained to control nonconforming work in order to ensure that such work is not inadvertently used or installed.
- (12) *Corrective action* - Corrective action procedures should be established, documented, and maintained. These include procedures for investigation of the cause of nonconforming work and the corrective action needed to prevent recurrence, and procedures for analysis to detect and eliminate potential causes of nonconforming work. This also includes implementing and recording changes in procedures resulting from corrective action.
- (13) *Quality records* - Procedures should be established and maintained for quality records. These procedures should identify which records should be kept and assign responsibility for production and collection, indexing, filing, storage, maintenance, and disposition of quality records.
- (14) *Quality audits* - An internal audit should be established to ensure that the elements of the quality system are functioning as intended.
- (15) *Training* - The grantee should establish and maintain procedures for identifying the training needs and provide for the training of all personnel performing activities affecting quality.

One objective of a QA program and robust QC procedures is to ensure that stringent intradisciplinary and interdisciplinary reviews are made of all drawings and related specifications, catching location, dimensional and functional discrepancies within and between disciplines.

Another objective of a good QA program is to prevent errors from occurring or to find errors quickly after they have occurred. This becomes more important when a product is expensive, complex, or has a long lead time. In such cases, an inspection and testing program can be employed to monitor work in progress.

Inspections and tests should ensure that contractor workmanship complies with requirements and conforms to industry standards, the configuration of the item conforms to the latest approved documents, and/or deviations are identified, that the item conforms to functional requirements, and that the contractor's documentation verifying acceptability is complete and adequate. To ensure that all work performed complies with requirements, hold points for owner inspection and authority to proceed should be established throughout the process of procurement, manufacture, and testing. Resident or nonresident inspectors should be assigned to conduct inspections or witness tests, and a system of documentation should be employed to record data relative to the inspections and the findings.

The requirements should be defined by the specifications, contract drawings, approved contractor drawings, referenced standards, and related owner-approved documentation. Workmanship should be assessed in terms of the specifications and referenced standards, or, if allowed in contract documents, approved contractor's work quality standards.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

A thorough review of the contractor's inspection and test records for the work being inspected is a key element in the inspection. The records should demonstrate the contractor's QA verification of the acceptability of the equipment or work presented and the satisfactory completion of all appropriate prerequisites. The owner can reduce the need to conduct detailed inspections of the contractor's work by rigid enforcement of the requirement for the contractor to have an effective QA program.

In response to Section 12(j) of the Federal Transit Act, the FTA requires pre-award and post-delivery audits for buses and rail vehicles. Such items clearly deserve work-in-process inspections because they are expensive, complex, and have long lead times. Guidance for meeting this requirement can be found in:

☞ [Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Rolling Stock Purchases](#), 49CFR 663 [Ref. 3-36]

3.7.3 Alternative Organizational Structures

QA/QC on Transit Projects

The grantee and its contractors must realize the importance of a structured, adequately staffed and experienced QA/QC organization that will document the status of the work and its compliance with the contract requirements and provide objective and timely reporting on the results of inspections. Regardless of the project delivery process used, but especially when using D/B project delivery, grantees must develop a strong QA/QC program that vertically integrates all requisite checks and balances. The QA/QC program must be adequately staffed in both numbers of personnel and qualifications. QA/QC activity must be accomplished without bias to cost or schedule, in a timely manner, and consistent with completing the work and performing the work adequately the first time, which will lead to a safe, certifiably reliable operating system constructed with the quality expected of a traditionally delivered project.

The appropriate organizational relationship of the QA/QC functions will be directly related to the overall project development and contract packaging approach and allocation of responsibilities between the grantee and contractor(s). Typically, QC responsibility is given to the contractor, while QA responsibility is maintained by the grantee, who may be assisted by the services of a construction manager. In D/B or turnkey projects, the contractor may also be given QA responsibility, but, as a minimum, the grantee must maintain a quality oversight role. Often there is a requirement that the D/B contractor include a third party quality assurance entity that is agreeable to both parties.

In any implementation approach, the QA and QC functions must be organizationally independent of those actually responsible for performing the work. This enables potential quality problems to be identified and resolved without being subject to the day-to-day cost and schedule pressures of those directly responsible for project implementation.

3.7.4 Total Quality Management / International Organization for Standardization

Concepts of total quality management (TQM) can be effective in creating an environment for continuous improvement of the processes of transit system grantee, consultant, and contractor organizations. TQM can also be applied to a project by instigating frequent reviews involving all participants, through communications, and by modification of approaches, and training to facilitate changes. Partnering and a lessons learned program can reinforce a project TQM program.

Quality process standards have been established by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). Manufacturing, construction and consulting organizations can improve their quality processes and performance by adhering to these standards and becoming certified. Agencies may selectively establish ISO quality certification requirements for contractors used for certain critical (e.g., safety or reliability) functions, provided the requirement does not limit competition.

3.8 Communications

Project management, to be truly effective, requires open and continuous communications and dialogue at all levels and during all phases of a project. The complexity of any transportation project requires the development of a strong communication network within the project and with the agencies funding the project, other key stakeholders and the public. A strong internal communications network provides for open lines of communication among all participants and across all project functions. Section 3.2.2 addressed the need to have all affected groups represented on the project team directly or through advisory committees. Strong communication and coordination internally through standardized project organizational reporting requirements and the establishment of a central reporting office will ease the way for the external information flow necessary for the public's participation.

Co-Location of Agency/Grantee, Design Manager, Construction Manager, Contractor, and Other Project Related Personnel

Efficient and effective communications between project participants is critical to the success of any project. This is especially the case in transit development projects in part due to the large number of stakeholders involved in these projects at all levels and the complexity of the relationships from the various perspectives, including political. Once transit projects have been approved for implementation, it is imperative that the team with responsibility for project execution has the ability to communicate in the most effective and efficient manner possible. As demonstrated on projects in various industries, including mass transit development, co-location of the project team greatly enhances the probability for the success of the project through improved communication and coordination.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

An effective communications program requires that all information provided – to ALL parties – is accurate, timely and relevant. A project communication program must be developed to ensure that the right information is getting to the right people.

An effective communications program and strategy for its implementation must support all project functions (e.g., management control, Real Estate, design, construction, and operations, where they already exist). Policies and procedures should be established for reporting project progress (necessary for project oversight as well as grant reporting) and determining schedules for periodic meetings and reports. Other steps within the communications program include determining critical program interfaces, identifying affected audience, designating staff responsible for all information flow, and establishing a public information and public participation program. To ensure that community input and feedback are received on a project, support for a public information and involvement program should be included in the contract requirements.

Communications programs must target project partners and stakeholders as well as the communities affected by the project. These relationships may be governed by agreements, memoranda of understanding, or formal requirements associated with funding or environmental impact commitments. Maintaining regular communications will support effective project delivery by minimizing disputes that could disrupt and delay the project.

3.8.1 Project Coordination

It is important to establish the major interfaces within a project structure where coordination is critical to a project's performance. These interfaces exist between the companies under contract, functional units, project locations, project phases, project and governmental regulatory agencies, and private and other public interests. Formalizing written project coordination means and methods enables the members of the project organization to work together more efficiently.

To enhance interface management, the following should be clearly defined:

- Responsibility of each agency, department and team member
- Authority, and accountability related to each of the above
- The interfaces between various project functions
- Inputs and outputs in terms of content, schedule and project status
- Lines and procedures for communications to facilitate informed and synchronized decisions.

Procedures for communications within the entire project organization should include authorizations, reports, schedules, meetings, and reviews supported by documentation (i.e., records management). Procedures for communications with external entities should include public information, responsibilities for obtaining permits and licenses, and reporting requirements imposed by contracts, grants, regulations, and other legal requirements.

3.8.2 Audience

It is important to identify the audiences that will interface with a project; these may include:

- The governing bodies (boards, commissions, or districts)
- Local governments (city and county levels)
- State government (departments, agencies, and legislative bodies, if appropriate)
- Federal agencies (Department of Transportation, Department of Interior, Department of Defense, General Services Administration, Department of Homeland Security, and Congress, if appropriate)
- Utilities and railroads
- Public (individuals, civic associations, citizen groups, business associations)
- Existing transit system users (riders and operating employees)
- Internal project staff (management, supervisory, and employee groups)
- Emergency responders (fire, police, paramedic, area hospitals)
- Schools in the project's immediate area or that might be affected by changes in traffic patterns
- Media (press, radio, TV, Internet)
- Workers on the project

Interagency Coordination

Almost, if not, all major projects have a variety of interfaces outside the grantee organization. In many cases some of these other organizations may even have approval authority over parts of the project -- permitting, for example. To mitigate if not altogether avoid problems, grantees should follow the principles of transparency and implementation of rigorous coordination processes with other transportation providers, Federal, state, and local regulators, local governments, utilities, and private property owners.

3.8.3 Program Responsibility

The credibility of the grantee for a transit project depends upon accurate information provided in a quick, responsive, and consistent format suitable for various audiences. To obtain this, it is essential that a single source be established for that information -- generally an individual or office designated as "project information" that should be able to disseminate all information regarding the project. Such an office would include: A spokesperson who would convey information to all audiences, an information officer to act as a clearinghouse for the flow of information to and from the public and media, and, if a multitude of government agencies and government levels are involved, a government liaison or office.

3.8.4 Transit Riders

In addition to maintaining the safety and security of the existing transit system and adjacent public facilities, the ease of access to and use of the transit system must be

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES FOR TRANSIT CAPITAL PROJECTS

maintained. Whenever a project involves the modification or expansion of an existing transit system, there must be a process for considering the needs of transit riders and the general public. Newsletters, flyers, news media announcements, emails, and signage are effective methods of alerting transit riders of project impacts.

Communication with the public can be crucial for receiving the buy-in necessary to move a project forward. Transit riders should not only be informed of what is or will occur, they should be invited to express their ideas and concerns. The format for this should be such that they know that their ideas are being heard, and that their concerns are valued and actively addressed fairly. Transparency and reaching out to constituents will help mitigate political, cultural and other potential barriers to the acceptance of the project.

CHAPTER 4 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE (PRELIMINARY ENGINEERING AND FINAL DESIGN)

4.1 Introduction

This chapter discusses both Preliminary Engineering (PE) and Final Design (FD). It expands on Chapter 2's description of project development phases and their major inputs, processes, and outputs, including Planning phase topics that are related to this chapter, including:

- Systems Planning
- Alternatives Analysis
- Project Management Plan Requirements
- Rail Modernization Planning
- Bus Maintenance Facility Planning
- Project Risk Analysis and Procurement Planning
- Environmental Planning
- Financial Planning
- Joint Development Planning
- Safety and Security Management Plan Requirements

In a Major Capital Project (MCP), PE is initiated after completion of the DEIS and selection of the Locally Preferred Alternative (LPA). It follows the development of subsystem plans in modernization projects. FD is the last step in project development prior to Construction. During FD, the grantee is expected to prepare the drawings, specifications, and bid documents required for awarding facility construction, equipment fabrication, and installation contracts. An alternative project delivery method will combine FD and Construction into a single contract.

Chapter 3 defined management principles and practices that apply to more than one phase of the project development process, including:

- Project and Management Organization
- Cost Estimation and Funding
- Scheduling
- Project Control
- Risk Assessment and Management
- Hazard Analysis
- Threat and Vulnerability Assessment
- Procurement and Contracts
- QA and QC
- Project Communications

This chapter adds to that discussion project management guidelines specifically related to the PE and FD phases of a transit capital project.

4.2 Design Team Organization/Contracts

The project's management is the responsibility of the grantee. If grantee staff is unable to provide the required services during the PE and FD Phases of a project, mistakes or omissions may affect Construction by creating schedule and budget problems. A number of approaches are available to grantees in organizing the design team with varied levels of grantee involvement.

A successful design team organization starts with an evaluation of the grantee's strengths and weaknesses, including staff experience working on or managing similar projects. If its staff lacks sufficient experience, the grantee should consider use of consultants or other professional assistance. Some successful transit projects have limited grantee staffing and involvement, relying heavily on a general engineering consultant (GEC); others do most of the engineering and construction management in-house. Another approach is to have a program manager structure that relies on an engineering consultant. While any of these approaches or even an approach using a mix of grantee and consultant staff can be successful, the key issue in any plan is that all design disciplines are covered and that decision-making authority between the grantee and the designer is clearly delineated, with the grantee retaining final authority over all aspects of its project.

For traditional methods, two alternatives exist for organizing the design effort. Each depends on the degree of experience and size of the grantee's staff. In one alternative, the grantee's staff performs all design functions, in the other, consultants perform all design functions. Between these extremes, several other arrangements are possible. For larger projects, the grantee, a GEC, or program manager may supervise and manage the work of consultants retained to design portions of the project. If a GEC or program manager is used, the selection of same should be based on proven experience on similar work performed by the firm, and a commitment to assign a manager and staff qualified to provide the services required. If section designers are used, the grantee, GEC or program manager should establish the design criteria and system specifications, as well as the initial construction schedule and cost estimate. A grantee-mandated *Project Schedule* provides the constraints under which the section designers must perform their assignments.

Continuity of engineering services during design is highly desirable. The grantee design staff should be available from PE through FD. Splitting responsibility for phases could result in duplication of effort, lost time, and added expense. Where the same consultants are selected for both the PE and FD Phases, the transition between phases is eased by maintaining the principal consultant staff throughout. Grantees must keep in mind that the consultant used to prepare the environmental analysis and documentation as required by NEPA should be separate from the design consultant so as to avoid potential conflicts of interest. If there is to be a separate selection for the FD

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

consultancy, time and budget must be included to provide for review and adoption and/or adaptation of the PE results into FD.

The involvement of transit operations during the design of a capital project can help assure its successful implementation. For a mature organization currently engaged in transit operations, the review and approval of design decisions by operations will minimize problems and permit safe and smooth integration of the improvement with existing operations. For new systems, sufficient expertise should be available to perform these review functions by both consultants and the grantee personnel who will be responsible for construction and operations.

Architect and Engineer (A&E) consultants should be hired only after careful evaluation of their submitted qualifications and proposals. Usually, a “short list” of three to five of the most qualified firms is designated and a selection made after discussions with the firms. This must be accomplished in accordance with Public Law 92-582, the Brooks Act, which, in addition to providing guidance on minimum acquisition procedures, also mandates that design contracts be awarded on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications for the type of professional services required, and not on the basis of low price. Price may certainly be a consideration in selecting an A/E firm (or team of firms), but this can occur only after ranking the qualified firms and in the negotiation stage. If cost becomes a fundamental issue during negotiations, the grantee can break off negotiations and move on to the next most qualified firm/team.

4.3 Construction Procurement Considerations

With the requirement for Procurement Planning (Section 2.2.6) and the management principles described in Section 3.5.5 (Risk Assessment and Management) and Section 3.6 (Procurement, Contracts, and Related Topics), the grantee should select the project delivery method and general procurement and contracting approaches as early as possible but certainly prior to entering FD, during which time the selected procurement approach should be refined and contract documentation prepared to permit project implementation. It is particularly important that, if alternative delivery approaches are being considered, these decisions occur as early as possible so that the entire process is coordinated and that the design approach is consistent.

The authority for procurement resides in the legislatively mandated policies and procedures of the state (and locality) in which the transit project is to be built. Where FTA funding is being used, the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) will also apply. The grantee must understand its state’s procurement and contract laws prior to determining its procurement approach, whether traditional, i.e., D/B/B, or alternative project delivery method, e.g., D/B. In some instances, local laws or regulations may also control the manner in which construction contracts are developed.

At a minimum, the D/B/B delivery method requires the efforts of a grantee, a separate design entity, and one or more construction contractors. The grantee may also rely on the services of a General Engineering Consultant (GEC) or program manager. The grantee selects a designer to develop and design the project and produce sealed

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

drawings and specifications. These are packaged into bid documents that define the work and the Terms and Conditions for which contractors submit bids. The grantee awards the contract to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Contracts that are bid at a fixed price usually offer the most competitive pricing climate.

The traditional delivery method is intended to give the grantee control over the design and create a partnership with the designer to monitor construction contractors. This situation, however, has sometimes resulted in an adversarial relationship between the designer and the construction contractors over issues of interpretation. It is the grantee's responsibility to have an organization and contractual framework in place to mitigate any potential risks and, ultimately, to ensure that the project is completed within budget and on time. An option selected by many grantees is to use a separate construction management (CM) consultant whose responsibilities would include expediting construction and resolving design disputes or issues of interpretation.

Compared to D/B/B, each of the alternative project delivery methods presents different aspects and allocations of risks between the grantee and the contractors. The contract provisions become the mechanism for assigning the risks and defining each entity's responsibilities. These provisions must be included as part of the procurement packages, which will have different timeframes depending on whether the contractor is given both design and construction responsibilities. The procurement packages for alternative delivery projects are likely to require the development of substantial procurement documentation as discussed in Section 2.2.6.

4.3.1 Construction Contract Bid Documents and Requirements

For traditional D/B/B, construction contract planning is conducted during PE, when the grantee sets in motion essential processes – so that when design is completed and construction is to commence, the known elements of risk, hazard, and vulnerabilities are acknowledged and responsibilities are assigned to the parties considered best able to minimize them. Contract planning should be done in accordance with the grantee's objectives for the project, project-specific circumstances, and identified risks, hazards, and vulnerabilities. Contract planning should result in inclusion in the contract specifications the terms and conditions that will act to guide both the grantee and the selected contractor(s).

The grantee must decide on the numbers and types of contracts required to implement the project. A range of options is available; from single to multiple prime contractors with as many as hundreds of separate contracts, and from traditional to the many alternative contracting methods. Generally, large agencies with experienced staff use the multiple prime format. Construction contract pricing alternatives are then explored -- the most typical being lump-sum, unit price (based on lowest bid), or a combination of such payment methods. Other methods include cost plus fixed fee, guaranteed maximum price, and lump sum plus special reimbursable costs.

While the essential focus of all procurement approaches is to assure that a quality project is delivered on a timely basis, there can be considerable variation when using

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

alternative delivery approaches. While some in the industry may believe it cumbersome, complex, and time-consuming, the traditional procurement approach presents no unusual challenges, and is well understood by those involved.

In each and every case the grantee should have either a Source Selection Plan (SSP) or, at the least, an Acquisition Plan (AP) prepared to guide and monitor its process. Generally, a complex negotiated acquisition that will take an extended period of time to complete should have an SSP, while simplified, sealed bid or smaller dollar acquisition may be fine using only an AP. In either case the following elements should be documented by the grantee:

- Acquisition method, including the contract requirement, expected competition, and method of procurement
- Source selection organization, including the recommended members identified by name, position title, or functional area
- Pre-Solicitation activities, including market research and synopsis
- Evaluation procedures, including whether award will be made based on the identified low-priced technically acceptable offer or a trade-off evaluation
- Evaluation factors and their relative importance, including
 - Price or cost
 - Technical
 - Management; and
 - Past performance
- Schedule of events, including key events and the projected dates for completion. Key events should include such activities as:
 - Issuing the solicitation
 - Receiving offers
 - Completing offer evaluation
 - Source Selection Authority (SSA) decision
 - Contract preparation and signature
 - Contract approval
 - Contract award

Generally, grantees have relied on four primary procurement approaches to implement MCPs:

- *Formally Advertised (Invitation for Bids)* – Provides detailed design drawings and specifications and is awarded to the responsible and responsive bidder with the lowest bid. These contracts may be paid on a unit price basis, as a fixed price contract, or a combination of payment provisions.
- *Competitive Negotiations (Request for Proposal)* – Provides performance specifications with evaluation of initial proposals to determine competitive pricing. Although selection can be based on the initial price submitted, most often discussions ensue with each proposer to assure understanding of terms and conditions, followed by Best and Final Offer (BAFO) prior to award of contract.

- *Qualification-Based Competitive Negotiations (or “Two-Step”) (Request for Proposal)* – Provides performance specifications for proposals – strongly emphasizing qualifications but precluding submission of prices, followed by the establishment of a short-list of the most qualified proposers. Discussions are held with short-listed proposers prior to selection of the best qualified entity, upon which negotiations are held for a contract, including a fair and reasonable price.
- *Best-Value (Request for Proposal)* - Almost all best-value evaluations are based on a 2-step process where initially a Request for Qualifications is issued and a short-list established. Then a Request for Proposal package is issued to the short-listed firms/teams. When the detailed proposals are submitted, they are evaluated based on the listed criteria in the RFP package which includes price. This process may or may not include a BAFO process.

In order to meet client goals, there are a number of variations that can produce hybrids of the procurement approaches; these are reviewed in the following sub-sections.

4.3.1.1 Consideration of Formally Advertised Contract Procurement

The primary difference in the Invitation for Bids process between traditional and alternative procurements is the size and/or scope of the project – wherein the specification will not be as definitive, or as near complete, on a large project as on a smaller, well-defined project. The result for the larger, less defined project is an increased likelihood of more change orders after the contract is awarded, possibly leading to project schedule delays and cost overruns. To compensate for this and to assure that the awarded low-price contract is not compromised due to numerous change orders, the bid process should require as much pricing detail as possible and would be aided by incorporating unit pricing into the contract language.

4.3.1.2 Non-Traditional Procurement Methods

Due to differences in the scope of services in traditional and alternative contracts, the method of procurement and the construction contract bid documents will vary depending on what the state or local statutes permit. It is vital to know whether state or local statutes permit a grantee to combine design and construction or allow pre-qualification processes or allow negotiations by requiring that the basis of the award will be Low-Price. Approaches with such prohibitions limit the grantee’s ability to determine the qualification of the bidder, as bidder comments are absent or unclear, bidder “wishes,” “cost-drivers,” or “deal-breakers” are not always discernible, and contract changes are offered to all bidders, even perhaps offering unnecessary concessions. Procurement processes that allow for negotiations, however, can result in the “best deal” for the “best price.” It is a process that can result in a true “meeting of the minds.” The absence of contract negotiations before bidding or BAFO can lead to decision-making without that kind of communication.

A two-step bid process may be an ideal choice for many contracts because it can facilitate fuller consideration of contractor qualifications for the specific work being

advertised. If allowable, negotiating such a non-traditional construction contract may be a better procurement method because it allows the grantee to more closely examine the capabilities of contractors and to solicit industry ideas and techniques for designing and building the project prior to the grantee committing to a contractor selection. Solutions to concerns indicated by the potential contractor(s) can then be crafted to achieve optimum balance between risk and price, and the contractor can develop a better understanding of the grantee and its intentions. Overall, negotiations may lead to better decisions and allow the grantee to select the contractor with the best approach, as well as consider other factors including price, experience, and qualifications.

4.3.1.3 *Pre-Qualification*

The 1996 Federal Acquisition Reform Act (FARA), which was the first significant modification in Federal procurement of A&E services since the Brooks A&E Act (1972), permitted Federal agencies broader authority to pre-qualify or short-list eligible proposers under a “two-step” procurement process. A pre-qualification process narrows the list of bidders allowed, which provides advantages for negotiated procurement, such as identifying contractors with a proven record of performance.

The objective of pre-qualification is to learn as much about the potential bidders as possible prior to entering the procurement phase. There is, however, the perception that the pre-qualification process can be misused and restrict the opportunity of small, new, and disadvantaged firms to participate in the procurement process.

So long as the process is fair and competitive – where an established objective exists to allow sufficient participation by a number of firms – pre-qualification can help achieve grantee goals. This process is consistent with the Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments, [49CFR 18](#) [Ref. 2-44], which states that “grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum full and open competition.” To minimize the opportunity for “bid shopping” of DBE firms, FTA policy requires that all DBE firms be identified at the time of proposal and that no substitutions be allowed without prior approval. DBE incentive/disincentive clauses tied to meeting DBE participation goals are also an option. One example is to impose liquidated damages if the DBE goal is not achieved.

4.3.1.4 *Issues and Opportunities for Industry Reviews in Contract Procurement*

Generally, industry reviews should be a part of all project development, beginning as early as the Preliminary Engineering (PE) Phase, but certainly no later than early in the Final Design (FD) Phase. They are particularly important when alternative delivery procurements are being considered to address inherent uncertainties and complexities in the project. Once design has progressed and the project delivery method selected, industry reviews provide opportunities for contractors to submit comments and provide insights not always available during the traditional (D/B/B) procurement cycle. This is an important process in non-traditional procurements, since it addresses questions and

concerns regarding financing, level of engineering, risk management, hazard and threat management, and project management roles and responsibilities. In addition to obtaining written comments, discussion of comments in scheduled meetings with the individual contractor is found to be very beneficial.

Due to the size and complexity of procurements involving design and possibly O&M and/or financing in addition to construction, it is imperative that issues and/or problems in the contracting approach and conditions be identified early and addressed before the procurement cycle begins. It is advantageous for the grantee to solicit and accommodate industry comments for all project contracting, where feasible, in order to modify the solicitation package before the procurement cycle begins.

4.3.2 Subcontracting and the Utilization of Small and Disadvantaged Firms

A number of Federal and local laws relating to the provision for, and compliance with, labor and equal opportunities provisions are relevant to both traditional and non-traditional contracting. Third party subcontracting issues – especially incorporating small (SBE) and disadvantaged (both minority and women-owned) business enterprises (DBE) must be addressed by public agencies. The goal should be to provide an atmosphere where conditions for maximum opportunity and encouragement to participate exist.

A perception exists that alternative project delivery methods have the potential to reduce the opportunity for small, mid-sized, and DBE firms, because the number of prime contractors are reduced. For many MCPs using non-traditional procurement methods, large teams may be required to perform construction, in addition to other functions such as design, O&M, financing, and joint development. As a result, smaller firms could be “squeezed out” or relegated to less visible roles, without direct client interaction. The concern is that these firms may not be afforded opportunities for leadership roles in proposal preparation or project execution, thus reducing their chances to develop the experience to grow and contribute more meaningfully to the next project.

4.3.2.1 *Utilization of and Compliance Assurances Relative to Small and Disadvantaged Businesses*

Grantees should avail themselves of existing registers of Small and Disadvantaged Business Enterprises, or S/DBE. Such registers typically exist with state departments of transportation or similar local governmental agencies. FTA’s Office of Civil Rights also is a source of such lists, either as developed by it or through referral.

Grantees may also enhance the potential pool of S/DBE candidate firms by undertaking “availability analyses” whereby research in local area will identify such firms that are doing business across the local market place and the types of contracting work they are qualified and financially able to bid upon. With such identification, a grantee can be proactive and provide its own or augmented list of S/DBE firms for potential bidders as well as utilize their research to establish reasoned S/DBE participation goals that best reflect

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

the type of work contained in each construction or equipment/materials contract. Further, with this more robust knowledge of the market place, grantees can assist the S/DBEs. The issue of commitment or attainment of S/DBE inclusion is due to the firm position on the part of the elected official of that particular community, as well as transit board members and staff, to expand opportunities through assertive efforts towards recruitment, certification, and monitoring compliance.

Major shortcomings and challenges are still present in transit procurement with regard to accomplishing S/DBE goals stated in the contract, clarification of what counts as a DBE – especially relating to second and third tier subcontractors – and finally, monitoring and recording the compliance.

Issues have also been raised that stem from predatory business practices and abuses by prime contractors as they relate to subcontractor substitutions or “sub-busting,” “fronting,” “bid-shopping,” release of retention, “striker replacement” tactics, and “slow or no pay.” To assure DBE compliance, some grantees have stringent Liquidated Damages clauses for failure to comply. Grantees should require prime contractors to provide names of proposed SBE and DBE firms prior to bidding, along with required subcontract documentation. Grantees also might address the cash-flow management issue for small businesses by increasing its payment schedule to twice a month. Incorporating strong “make or buy” clauses based on incentives and disincentives in the contract can also greatly reduce “bid shopping.”

4.4 Design Criteria and Standards

Building on the Project Definition established in the Locally Preferred Alternative (LPA), traditional Design/Bid/Build project delivery methods require full or nearly complete development of the project’s design and operational criteria during the PE process. This information is typically developed by subsystem (i.e., track, structures, stations, vehicles, signals, traction power, communications, yards, and shops). For expansion and/or modernization projects, the criteria may be adapted from earlier grantee projects during the Planning Phase.

The remainder of this section provides a list of tasks that should be accomplished, as needed, during PE for MCPs. While these apply primarily to new fixed guideway projects, many elements also relate to rail modernization and bus facility projects. For modernization projects, studies may be necessary to assess facility and system conditions and to develop a portfolio of the highest priority improvements to be advanced as modernization projects. As discussed previously, any non-traditional procurements will likely have variations in the sequence and responsibility for various tasks.

4.4.1 Operating Performance and Facilities Requirements – PE Phase

4.4.1.1 Perform Surveys

This task includes surveys that may be required to properly investigate alternative configurations and construction methods:

- Control surveys
- Aerial and surface topography surveys and planimetrics
- Acquisition of data from as-built plans of previous and adjacent (to the project site) improvements, including those of utilities
- Subsurface geologic/seismic exploration
 - Compilation and review of geology data from city and state agencies
 - Subsurface test borings and seismic tests, as necessary
 - Interpretation of boring logs and development of geotechnical report
 - Development of segment design criteria based on geologic/seismic tests
 - Building foundation inventory
- Data acquisition from as-built plans of previous and adjacent site improvements
- Major utility surveys
- Identification of utilities to be relocated and cost estimates for relocation
- Initial description of the project's approach to safety and security analysis
- Condition assessments and cost estimates for adapted or reused facilities
- Environmental site assessments
- Noise and vibration baseline assessments
- Stray current and EMI studies, as necessary
- Other surveys, as required

4.4.1.2 Conduct System Studies

In traditional approaches, the criteria for all subsystems should be developed after completion of all studies and evaluations. Necessary studies help to establish both system and subsystem requirements including:

- *Evaluation, through simulations, of operational and facility alternatives and their effect on transit capacity:*
 - Analysis to determine the effect of the proposed operations plan on the functional capability of the proposed project and potential future extensions of the system
 - Analysis of station spacing, station length, and train headway based on studies for patronage, development, and system operating speed
 - Analysis of effect of incremental development of automatic train operations (ATO) vs. initial full utilization
 - Analysis to determine the effect of alternative modes of operation such as coasting, lower acceleration, etc., on transit performance and vehicle life
 - Analysis to determine substation number, capacity, and location
- *Energy evaluation* – should include an analysis, sufficiently detailed, to demonstrate the energy consumption and cost impacts of the options selected

for line, profile, and stations, and to investigate the benefits of regenerative braking.

- *Travel demand* - by station for 10 and 20-year horizon and determination of the effect of patronage volumes on the initial station sizing.
- *Determination of required vehicle size and train consist* - study based on an in-depth review of vehicle types available considering: patronage volumes, service policy, safety, security, operating environment, reliability, maintainability, costs, availability, and influence on structure costs.
- *Noise/vibration study* - to determine noise/vibration mitigation measures necessary to meet the meet environmental requirements.
- *Operable segments* - determine the effects of constructing the proposed system in operable segments, considering the entire system as the largest segment.
- *Evaluation of fare policies and collection systems* – to include consideration of how the selected policies/systems may impact safety and security of the system and patrons.
- *Hazard analyses to support safety requirements*- to include the determination of whether the capacity to conduct professional analyses exists within the grantee’s organization or whether outside consultants will be assigned these tasks
- *Threat and vulnerability assessments* - to support security requirements, including the determination of whether the capacity to conduct professional analyses exists within the grantee’s organization or whether outside consultants will be assigned these tasks
- *Bus routing analysis* - to determine garage size and locations and interfacing with rail stations and operations
- *Power supply* – to identify traction power requirements of train propulsion and operations and requisite supply and distribution system
- *Corrosion protection requirements* – to identify materials, locations, facilities, and vehicles with vulnerability to corrosion from stray currents or other sources, and propose solutions to the problems.
- *Electromagnetic interference (EMI) mitigation requirements* – to identify sources of and mitigation treatment for extraneous electrical or electromagnetic disturbance causing or may cause electronic equipment and facilities disturbance
- *Tunnel ventilation requirements* – to identify ventilation requirements mandated for safety and evacuation
- *Train control alternatives including moving and fixed block systems* – to identify operational alternatives and design the optimum solution within budgetary, service and safety constraints

Environmental Construction Issues

Environmental Site Assessments (ESA) are pre-construction investigative programs that identify soil, groundwater, surface water, or building contamination that is present on the site where construction will occur. Discovery of hazardous materials at a site during construction can prove costly in terms of removal activities and delays. They should be identified early in the project development process to assure proper mitigation measures.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- *Failure management alternatives* – to identify sources of system failures and means of avoiding or at least mitigating potential failures
- *ADA accessibility requirements, including how design decisions will affect numbers and placement of elevators, escalators, and areas of rescue assistance* – to meet mandated ADA design and operations guidelines and requirements

4.4.1.3 Select Way and Structure Types

The alignment should be developed beyond the definition contained in the LPA to describe all structures necessary for the project. Minor alternative alignments may be evaluated within the corridor, as required, to the degree they are within the LPA definition. The following structures should be considered during the development of the alternative alignments and for development of design criteria:

- Bridges, tunnel, cut and cover, open cut, embankment, surface, shared corridor, street running and elevated structures, as appropriate, along the corridor, if they haven't been defined in the LPA.
- Tunneling and major bridges with various profiles and alternative construction methods (based on preliminary geotechnical engineering data and analysis) to permit evaluation in terms of:
 - Costs
 - Feasibility of construction
 - USACE and/or USCG permit requirements
 - Schedule impact
 - Impact on community and environment
 - Station requirements and impacts on Real Estate acquisition needs
 - Safety and security

Completion of this work will lead to selection of the final profile and structure type for each portion of the line and a set of preliminary drawings and specifications that will provide a basis for preparing a refined, more detailed cost estimate. These include, but in no way are limited to:

- Alignment drawings showing plan and profile for the entire system. Drawings should define track curvature, spirals, superelevation, speeds, stationing, coordinates, grades, vertical curve lengths, and elevations of the control alignment and any secondary alignments where they vary in relationship to the control alignment.
- Details of way structures for all variations in configuration and cross sections, as needed, to show transitions and/or problem areas. These drawings should include the location of all crossovers and pocket and lay-up tracks in coordination with operating plans. Particular construction methods should be specified for underpinning problems, non-standard elements, or where major subsurface utilities are expected.
- Preliminary improvement plans for public ways affected by the project, identifying grade crossing locations, work limits, pavement cut lines, curb lines, typical sections, sidewalks and lane markings.

- Preliminary grading and drainage plans for transit and affected roadways, showing flow direction and anticipated locations of catch basins, culverts, storm sewers, ditches, underdrains, tie-ins to municipal storm sewers, retention basins, manholes, inlets and area drains.
- Preliminary plans and estimates for all necessary public and private utility line changes. All necessary master utility agreements should be negotiated and completed to the extent possible before completion of preliminary designs. In some cases, these agreements will not be completed until after funding is committed; however, they must be completed soon thereafter to avoid incomplete or inaccurate designs that end up increasing utility relocations and, ultimately, construction delays.
- Preliminary ROW drawings showing the extent of properties affected with a list of property takings and easements required. A real estate program plan identifying all the integral components (property mapping, ownership, appraisal scopes of work and appraisals, through completing the final acquisition and making the site ready for a construction contractor) in a detailed schedule of ROW acquisitions, temporary easements, leases, etc., and associated approvals should be prepared to adequately capture the program costs avoid or at least minimize construction contract bidding and/or construction delays.

4.4.1.4 Develop Station Preliminary Plans

Station design should include the development of station concepts compatible with the various plan/profile alternatives developed for way and structures. Such studies should include alternative construction techniques. Selection of station types and construction methods should be based on cost, compatibility with adjacent construction, effect on schedule, design, and construction, their impact on the community and environment, safety and security within the facilities and adjacent station-related areas (e.g., bus or auto drop-off lanes, parking lots/garages, etc.) and ADA level boarding design considerations/ requirements.

The preliminary design drawings and specifications should be of sufficient scope to define all station functions and elements for both the public and ancillary spaces, including equipment and materials, as appropriate. The station design process should involve the following factors and others as appropriate:

- Develop and recommend policies and obtain grantee approval for such elements as public and employee restrooms, Fare Collection, security, concession spaces, vertical circulation, graphics, intermodal connections, hours of operation, standardization of layout and materials, and attendant accommodations.
- Develop system-wide architectural planning and civil standards and criteria for materials, noise control, signage and graphics, lighting, CCTV, public address systems, and Fare Collection equipment placement, mechanical and electrical equipment, vertical circulation elements, and accessibility provisions. Investigate all station elements suitable for standardized design and construction.

- Determine requirements for station entrances and exits, intermodal interfaces, waiting areas, ancillary spaces, stairs, elevators, escalators, and ticketing facilities using patronage forecasts, operating plans, joint development potential, and design constraints. These plans should be based on the requirements detailed in the [National Fire Protection Association](#) [Ref. 4-1] and all relevant area fire codes.
- Determine specific station location and develop plans, sections, and elevations based on the selected way, plan, and profile. Determine location and space allocations of ancillary spaces appropriate for system operation and adaptable to future extensions, if appropriate. Station layouts should provide the minimum practical volume while incorporating efficient loading of trains and convenient patron usage. Develop functional parking garage and other parking facility placements and layouts where required, using commercial standards and pricing guidelines where possible.
- Develop ADA level boarding solution(s) for each station and include in the site and station drawings (plans, sections, details and elevation views). Coordinate ADA level boarding solution(s) at stations with the vehicle design.
- Consider Principles of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) and Situational Crime Prevention (SCP) early in all station and parking facility design plans to minimize later refitting to accommodate security planning
- Coordinate all station elements with those of guideway and structures and systems groups.

Arts in Transit

During the period preceding design and construction of a rail rapid transit project, the affected populace is typically given the opportunity to review concepts of alignment and station location. The project sponsor's concerns in the functional domain of architects and engineers are stressed at public meetings. Local neighborhood interest in appearance of the finished products and landscaping of the station surroundings, however, is often overlooked, or relegated to "post-construction" efforts, when it is usually too late to meaningfully influence the project. With increased interest in adding artwork to new and existing transit systems, Arts-in-Transit (AIT) has been included in the development and evolution of the project design from the beginning in order to incorporate art that is appealing to the majority of system users. Many projects have accomplished this with outstanding success and highly favorable public reaction. However, funding for AIT may be difficult to obtain.

Another advantage of the early and direct project involvement of an AIT initiative is greater understanding by the arts community and its supporters of the safety and security issues. This understanding will often result in fewer interferences with sight lines and passageways and encourage application of artistic considerations to normal features at little or no extra cost, e.g., tree, grates, bridges and piers, fencing, etc.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- Select the construction method for each station and determine how the method affects both the station design and surrounding area.
- Determine if system-wide procurements for electrical and mechanical equipment components are practical and feasible.
- Complete all utility surveys and agreements to a level that will allow station design and construction to advance without interruption.
- Prepare preliminary maintenance procedures and estimate annual maintenance costs based on total number and skills of required station maintenance personnel.
- Determine measures to minimize adverse community and environmental impacts and maximize community benefit.
- Perform Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA) and Threat and Vulnerability Analysis (TVA), and incorporate their findings in Design and Operations Criteria.
- Secure required station area design approvals.

4.4.1.5 Develop Yard and Shop Criteria

Before investigating specific yard and maintenance shop site locations, the grantee should define and quantify all maintenance of way (MOW), rolling stock and subsystems maintenance, operations/yard functions, and the yard and shop(s) capacity criteria. Yard and shop facilities designs should be developed to a level consistent with the PE effort. As a minimum, the following should be determined:

- Size, type and general features of the transit vehicle(s) to be used
- Number of vehicles/consists to be stored initially and in the future
- Vehicle inspection and repair cycles
- Vehicle, subsystem, and MOW maintenance functions to be performed as well as general procedures for operations and maintenance
- Number of operations and maintenance employees, crew quarters, and parking facilities required
- Requirements for special shop equipment
- Material storage to support maintenance of the operating system and equipment
- Revenue collection facility
- Vehicle test facilities and test track
- Central control location(s) (if in yard, determine size and functions)
- Location of training facilities
- Railroad sidings or facilities/equipment needed to deliver transit cars
- Yard and shop location requirements due to operating system configuration
- Safety and security of facility(s), including hazard and vulnerability reviews and plans for internal and external security systems

In the development of yard and shop plans, details, and preliminary specifications, tasks should include the evaluation of all feasible alternative sites. Alternative locations for outlying storage and maintenance yards should be evaluated based on their effect on operable segments and schedule, area requirements, operational characteristics, impact on community and environment, and the difficulty of acquiring the proposed site.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

Using data developed in the planning stage, alternative layouts, ROW drawings, and cost estimates should be prepared and the optimum site selected, considering availability, costs, neighborhood compatibility, security problems and any other significant aspects.

Yard plans should include vehicle storage track layout, related MOW facilities, and major inspection and shop buildings, detailing both major functions and areas required. The need for future yard expansion should also be considered. The yard and shop design and construction process should involve the following activities, and others, as appropriate:

- Complete all utility surveys and agreements to a level that will allow design and construction to advance without interruption.
- Determine maintenance and operations activities to be performed and estimate the total number and skills of required maintenance, operations, and support personnel.
- Prepare hazard analyses and threat assessments to minimize safety and security concerns to employees and surrounding communities.
- Determine measures to minimize adverse community and environmental impacts.
- Take all appropriate steps necessary for required yard and shop area design approvals.

Upon final selection of the optimum site, PE should continue with development of a set of plans, specifications, and estimates sufficiently detailed to provide reliable cost estimates and a method for obtaining required approvals.

4.4.1.6 Design Criteria for Fixed Guideway System Components

After the completion of studies to select those systems and subsystems that are determined to be appropriate for the Major Capital Project, the grantee should develop design criteria for the fixed guideway system components. Alternative systems and subsystems should be evaluated in terms of criteria that include:

- Transit Capacity analysis reaffirming the LPA or required changes thereto
- Capital costs
- Labor requirements
- Revenue service O&M costs
- Safety and security requirements and costs
- Reliability, availability, maintainability, and dependability
- Complexity for implementation and operations
- Support for incremental growth
- Probable public receptivity
- Impact on environment

Selection of the design elements for the MCP should lead to a set of preliminary plans and specifications that support the accurate estimation of project costs. The project schedule should include an estimate of the length of time required to undertake

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

anticipated contracting and procurement methods and to perform both the Final Design and the Construction/Procurement phases. A preliminary maintenance schedule and an estimate of annual labor hours and costs should be prepared for the planned system in revenue service. A conceptual definition and an estimate of start-up costs should be included with the PE cost estimate. This estimate should include integrated pre-operation testing, pre-revenue and start-up costs, as well as the assessment of materials, equipment and spare parts required. A summary of the typical PE phase outputs for each subsystem includes:

- Function
- Capacity
- Configuration
- System integration and interfaces
- Materials/equipment
- Capital cost
- O&M requirements and general procedures
- O&M labor requirements
- O&M cost
- Schedule requirements
- Expansion capabilities
- Flexibility for future changes
- Impact on reliability, availability, and safety
- Preliminary plans and specifications
- Sources of supply and market competitiveness
- Supporting documentation – general provisions, standards, etc.

The following section addresses many of the design criteria development issues for typical fixed guideway subsystems.

- *Vehicles* – The number of vehicles required is based upon vehicle capacity, patronage projections, schedule, and service standards. Vehicle performance requirements should be evaluated to assure that planned service schedules can be met. Relevant vehicle subsystems should be defined and evaluated in terms of vehicle reliability, maintainability, and performance. The selected vehicle wherever possible should be similar to and compatible with the grantee's existing rolling stock fleet to minimize training, O&M, and purchasing complications.
- *Traction power* – Prepare preliminary design of the power system that locates all major subsystems such as substations and power sectionalization. Define and evaluate substation size, spacing, equipment, and safety and security requirements considering:
 - Planned service levels
 - Alternate voltage levels
 - Power delivery options
 - Back-up systems
 - Power control
 - Necessary redundancy

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- Vertical and horizontal alignment compatibility with revenue vehicles and maintenance equipment/vehicles

Determine the line voltage equipment type and sizes, traction and ancillary power usage split, and power delivery system. Evaluate alternative emergency power supply requirements and examine local power utilities back-up requirements, procedures, and problems. This should include investigating power sources, peak requirements, rate structure, and reliability analysis. Determine those system units that can be prepackaged in accordance with local union agreements and, where applicable, recommend pre-purchase options.

- *Ancillary power* (electrical distribution for support facilities) – Determine voltage, type of equipment, power source, equipment size, and emergency backup requirements for the ancillary power system, along with appropriate room sizes that are required for the equipment.
- *Train control* – Study alternate systems of vehicle or train control including wayside signals, cab signaling systems, central control, and train supervision with consideration of the initial and life cycle costs and the long-term probabilities of state-of-the-art modifications and their effect on the planned operation of the transit system. Evaluate potential use of Communication Based Train Control (CBTC) or Positive Train Control (PTC) as well as any impacts of the [Rail Safety Improvement Act of 2008](#) [Ref. 4-2] for the particular transit system application. Study the compatibility of various manufacturers' equipment in the same control system to evaluate advantages or disadvantages and costs. Identify the number and location of interlockings required and the location and size of major equipment rooms or bungalows. Identify those systems that can be pre-packaged in accordance with local labor agreements. Where applicable, consider interoperability with tenant and/or outside host railroads.
- *Traffic signal system interface* – LRT, Commuter Rail and BRT systems often operate with at-grade crossings of streets and highways. Grantees should work with local traffic management agencies to obtain their approval to integrate the transit project with the roadway traffic signal system. For maximum through-put, priority for transit vehicles should be a common goal; maximizing safety and reducing wear and tear on vehicles and the guideway are also benefits. The “priority” to transit vehicles typically involves the shortening of the (rubber-tired) traffic signal cycle to allow transit to pass through the crossing or intersection while allowing any current signal phases the minimum time to complete, as is needed to allow pedestrians to reach a safe zone. With certain exceptions, full “Pre-emption” is typically reserved for emergency vehicles.

Safety Considerations in the Design of Grade Crossings

The unique properties of grade crossings between highways and rail transit (LRT, some Commuter Rail, etc.) require their own standards and guidelines for the design, installation, and operation of traffic control devices separate from those for grade crossings between highways and freight railroads. It is critical for the public agency with jurisdictional authority and the transit operator to coordinate their efforts in the installation of these devices.

- **Communications** – Study, evaluate and select appropriate systems for:
 - Telephone service
 - Data transmission
 - Public address systems
 - Passenger information displays
 - Variable message signage
 - Security, including cameras (CCTV), intrusion detection and access control systems, barriers, emergency telephones, and other physical security equipment
 - Fire detection
 - Mobile radios
 - Cable systems
 - Fare collection

Applicable systems should be compatible with the requirements of existing police and fire communications systems. Further, consideration should be given to customer needs relative to cell phone and personal data/computer connectivity and use in tunnels, etc.

- **Ventilation** – Determine types of ventilation needed for indoor facilities, including consideration of appropriate modes of response to emergencies, such as smoke, fire, and Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMDs), including chemical, biological, and nuclear. Ventilation types may include:
 - Natural air system
 - Under-platform exhaust system
 - Mechanical ventilation, both normal and emergency
 - Air cooling system (if provided) for stations and/or offices

For additional information on these topics, see the following references:

- ☞ *The Subway Environmental Simulation and Environment Design Handbook* [Ref. 4-3] provides detailed guidance on the topic of subway ventilation.
- ☞ [Making Transportation Tunnels Safe and Secure](#) [Ref. 4-4]
- ☞ *Guidelines for Managing Suspected Chemical and Biological Agent Incidents in Rail Tunnel Systems* [Ref. 2-52] includes ventilation recommendations.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- *Fare collection* – Study and evaluate alternative systems of fare collection and revenue control based on any existing grantee fare system structure, local and regional fare policies and system integration, fare evasion projections, capital and operating costs, and in consideration of system expansion.
- *Trackwork* – Develop preliminary horizontal and vertical centerline alignments during PE. Determine the trackbed requirements to adhere to noise level standards and operational criteria developed under the system definition task. Select rail section and gauge. Prepare preliminary trackwork plans and profiles, special trackwork, typical sections, details and specifications for the entire fixed guideway system, including yards and maintenance facilities..
- *Drainage* – Prepare a layout of all drainage required for roadbed, track structures, yard and shop, stations, parking lots, downstream improvements, detention, ancillary rooms sumps and discharge points. Determine the need for permits and approvals, including authorization to discharge waste water. Also, identify the need for specialized equipment, such as oil separators.
- *Safety, Fire Protection, and Security* – In addition to the FTA-mandated, Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP), the grantee should develop a project-wide safety and security design criteria plan or manual that is consistent with all applicable local and state codes and transit industry standards. Local and state approvals for proposed systems should be obtained, where necessary. The plan, which should be included in all bid documents so contractors are aware of the safety and security requirements for their work and their specific worksites, should include the following systems:
 - Site-specific safety and security requirements for each project phase
 - Fire detection and protection system
 - Fire management and control plan

As the project develops, professional staff or consultants should work with the design team to develop the emergency plans that will be required during revenue service, including:

- Passenger emergency right-of-way egress plan
- Station evacuation plan
- Train evacuation plan (mandated for FRA-covered projects)

☞ [The National Fire Protection Association](#) [Ref. 4-1] establishes minimum fire protection requirements for fixed guideway transit subsystems. Local jurisdictions should be consulted on code adoption.

Section 4.4.3 addresses system safety and security requirements and approaches that will result in design criteria for systems and equipment.

- *Work equipment* – Develop a work equipment requirement list and acquisition schedule. These should include all specialized maintenance of way and systems

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

maintenance equipment such as tampers, speed swings, ballast regulators, tie inserters, work trains, rail grinders, test equipment, etc., and all major shop and field service equipment and field service vehicles. They should also include safety equipment, radios, and vehicles for security and operating personnel.

4.4.1.7 Computer-Assisted Design and Drafting

CADD software packages can be extremely helpful in developing drawings and design specifications. CADD and companion software permits planning, cost estimation, cost allocation, and maintenance planning. A CADD system maintains a database of standard elements that can be easily incorporated into a design. Summary and detailed lists of equipment and material quantities can be rapidly produced for alternative design combinations. CADD is also a useful tool for ensuring compatible design interfaces.

The grantee should establish CADD standards for the project, which would define software requirements, software compatibilities, file naming conventions and standards for levels or layers, line types, weights, colors, pen tables, borders, plot setup files and directory organization. The CADD standards should require that, except for schematics, all CADD drawings be drawn accurately and all plan views should be in the project coordinate system. Different design discipline personnel should be able to reference each other's drawings into their own to check for conflicts and incompatibilities.

CADD standards may require surveyors to provide 3D CADD versions of base mapping of existing planimetrics and topometrics as well as a digital terrain model (DTM) of the existing conditions in the area in which construction is to occur. Civil designers may then create 3D CADD models of proposed grading and drainage work in order to display accurate representations of civil work on grading plans and cross sections and to determine earthwork quantities for estimates.

4.4.2 Applicable Codes and Standards

To guide the design process, the grantee or its consultant must compile a list of all applicable Federal, state, and local codes and standards for the project. One such Federal requirement is compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). The USDOT's Final Rule, Transportation for Individuals with Disabilities contained in 49 CFR Parts 27, 37 and 38. Part 27 requires all recipients of FTA funding to comply with all applicable requirements of the ADA of 1990. Part 37 contains regulations on new transportation facilities and Part 38 contains policies on building new and remanufactured transit vehicles. A facility is defined as "new" if its construction began after January 25, 1992, or October 7, 1991 for intercity and commuter rail stations.

4.4.3 Safety and Security

Section 2.2.11 describes FTA's requirement for developing an SSMP for each project. While SSMPs are required in conjunction with obtaining new Full Funding Grant Agreements (FFGAs), many of the principles can be applied to all capital projects. Circular 5800.1 defines the applicable projects for which SSMPs are required (recipients

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

with major capital projects, as defined in 49 CFR 633.5 and initiated after August 1, 2007, and recipients that were in PE or earlier phases as of August 1, 2007 with major capital projects that involve construction of a new fixed guideway or extension of a new fixed guideway).

SSMP requirements, as indicated in Section 2.2.11 are quite specific for each phase of a project and are given detailed reviews by FTA (usually relying on its Project Management Oversight Contractors, PMOC). A PMOC oversight of an SSMP includes a review of not only the SSMP itself, but also of the related plans, policies, and procedures that the SSMP refers to or incorporates. The PMOC will also make a site inspection and interview grantee or consultant personnel the PMOC has indicated in advance were selected due to their roles in the project. In virtually all cases, the PMOC will include key managers among those scheduled for interviews.

[Circular 5800.1](#) [Ref. 2-46] provides specific guidance on the requirements of the SSMP's development and organization. The Circular's Appendix A (SSMP Checklist) provides a checklist of requirements at each phase of a project. Grantees should review it carefully.

Safety – Hazard Management Programs

Accident risk is a major concern for the transit industry. Safety incidents are estimated to exact costs in the billions each year, saying nothing about lives lost or bodies maimed. System Safety Program Plans and proactive hazard management programs have been shown to cut safety risks and costs. Nevertheless, agencies sometimes contend that safety recommendations often may not be very sensitive to costs, which can produce disagreements between design/construction and safety staff. Effective partnerships are needed to resolve these divergent perspectives and resolve disputes.. Some agencies have persuaded local authorities to institute photo enforcement programs at rail transit grade crossings and reduced accidents significantly.

In addition to the PMP and the SSMP, activities and documents that should have been undertaken or created by PE include, but are not limited to:

- Safety and Security Certification Plan (SSCP) — normally created prior to PD for design certification and updating during FD
- Certifiable Items List (CIL) — will grow in comprehensiveness as the project moves through life-cycle phases
- Safety and Security GAEC requirements — setting forth responsibilities of the GAEC for safety/security, including possibly, PHAs, TVAs, site safety/security responsibilities, operating and maintenance procedures, training plans, System Integration Test Plan (STIP), and similar areas that the grantee intends to hold the GAEC responsible for
- Preliminary Hazard List — will form the basis of the Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA)

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- Preliminary Threat and Vulnerability List—will form the basis of the Threat and Vulnerability Analysis (TVA)
- Existing safety and security design criteria or specifications — particularly for large projects that will have multiple contractors, the grantee should develop safety and security design manuals and contractor/construction safety and security plans to distribute with bid documents to assure that safety and security requirements are known in advance and do not result in misunderstandings of responsibility during later phases of a project
- Applicable codes, standards, and regulations
- Safety and security design reviews and approvals

By FD, it is expected by FTA that the steps outlined above will have been updated and that additional safety and security elements have been put in place. Project managers will be expected to have undertaken or updated:

- PMP, SSMP, Safety and Security Certification Plan (SSCP), and Certifiable Items List (CIL) – the CIL by this phase should include subsystems
- PHA — no longer merely a list, an initial analysis should have been completed and reviewed by executive management
- TVA — no longer merely a list, an initial analysis should have been completed and reviewed by executive management
- Safety and Security Design criteria (or Manual)
- Review of safety and security performance requirements—for large projects the review should have resulted in development of a contractor and/or a construction safety and security manual
- Safety and security design reviews and approvals

Commuter Rail Safety-Educating the Public

When several commuter rail systems undertook rehabilitation or new lines, they included the evaluation of four-quadrant gated crossings. The four-quadrant gate system demonstrated that new technology combined with traditional grade crossing applications and enhanced feature elements are effective and reliable to control motorist movement at an activated highway-rail intersection. Other viable alternatives, such as the extension of gate arms and the use of roadway medians should be considered during the PE phase of the project.

At the completion of FD in conjunction with the FFGA application, the steps up to this point should include updating or adding to:

- PMP, SSMP, SSCP, and CIL
- PHA and Hazard Analysis Reports (HARs) should have been completed for civil and system elements
- PHA should have been completed for civil and system elements
- Safety and security technical specifications should have been completed and approved and conformance verification checklists developed
- Preliminary test plan requirements

- Project emergency procedures
- Safety and Security design reviews and approvals

Additional safety and security requirements for later project phases are described in Chapter 5 and Chapter 6.

4.4.4 Environmental Documentation and Mitigation Requirements

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA) established a national policy to promote the protection of the environment in the actions and programs of federal agencies. The FTA and FHWA act as lead Federal agencies, and are responsible for implementing the NEPA process and working with state and local project sponsors during transportation project development. The NEPA process of the FTA and FHWA is designed to assist transportation officials in making project decisions that balance engineering and transportation needs with the consideration of social, economic and environmental factors. This process allows for involvement and input from the public, interest groups, resource agencies and local governments. The FHWA and FTA NEPA process is used as an "umbrella" for compliance with over 40 environmental laws, regulations, and executive orders and provides an integrated approach to addressing impacts to the human and natural environment from transportation projects.

A good decision based on an understanding of environmental impacts is the objective of the NEPA process and a thorough analysis of these impacts as presented in the NEPA compliance documentation is essential in meeting that objective. NEPA documentation serves several purposes: To disclose the analysis of benefits and impacts to the human and natural environment, to get input from the general public and other stakeholders on the proposed project and the environmental consequences, and to inform the final decision.

The first stages of the NEPA process—development of project purpose and need—should build upon the transportation needs identified during planning and become the basis for the final selection of an alternative for design and construction. Different types of transportation projects will have varying degrees of complexity and potential to affect the environment. Under NEPA, the required environmental documentation depends on the degree of impact. FTA, in coordination with the project sponsor, prepares one or more of the following documents for a proposed project:

- Notice of Intent (NOI) - a notice that an environmental impact statement (EIS) will be prepared and considered.
- Categorical Exclusions (CE) - apply to projects that do not have a significant impact on the human and natural environment.
- Environmental Assessments (EA) - prepared for projects where it is not clearly known if there will be significant environmental impacts. If the analysis in the EA indicates that the proposed project will have significant environmental impacts, an EIS is prepared.
- Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) - If there is not a significant impact, this conclusion is documented in a separate decision document, the FONSI.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- Environmental Impact Statements (EIS) - prepared for projects that have a significant impact on the human and natural environment. Draft EIS (DEIS) and Final EIS (FEIS) documents, with input from the public, provide a full description of the proposed project, the existing environment, and the analysis of the beneficial and adverse impacts of all reasonable alternatives.
- Record of Decision (ROD) - presents the selected transportation decision analyzed in an EIS, the basis for that decision, and the environmental commitments, if any, to mitigate adverse or undesirable project impacts to the human and natural environment.



Figure 4-1 Transportation Planning Process

Where required, a Draft EIS (DEIS) should have been completed during the Planning Phase or Alternatives Analysis Phase in accordance with the joint FTA/FHWA Metropolitan Planning Regulations (see [The Transportation Planning Process: Key Issues](#)) [Ref. 2-1]. Following circulation of the DEIS and not later than 30 days after selection of an LPA, the FTA must allow a project to move to PE, providing that the project is justified on a broad range of criteria and has local financial commitment.

The FEIS should be completed during PE, which generally completes the environmental documentation process for the project and permits a ROD to be issued. The FEIS is processed in the same manner as the DEIS. In some cases, a supplemental DEIS will

be required during PE if the DEIS did not contain sufficient detail to allow public comment on site-specific environmental impacts or if a lengthy period ensued between the draft and final statements, making it prudent to reevaluate the proposed project's environmental impacts.

The grantee must assure that the environmental mitigation measures for which commitments were made in the FEIS are reflected in the design criteria going forward and the final design drawings and specifications.

4.5 Real Estate Acquisition

Real property to be used in a Federally-assisted transit project must be acquired and its occupants relocated in compliance with [49 CFR 24](#) [Ref. 4-5], the regulations that implement the [Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policy Act of 1970 as Amended](#) (Uniform Act) [Ref. 4-6]. Compliance with FTA's Circular 5010.1D is also required; specifically Chapter I, Section 5. DEFINITIONS and Chapter IV, Section 2. REAL PROPERTY are applicable. A project's acquisition and displacement activity must also comply with individual state statutory and judicial case law that may be applicable.

The grantee has pre-award authority to acquire property after the issuance of the environmental document, i.e., ROD, FONSI, or CE, but Federal participation is not assured until there is a grant authorizing acquisition activities. Because the acquisition of property can prejudice the alternatives selection process, generally only certain railroad ROW corridors and associated property can be acquired prior to issuance of the project's environmental document. There is latitude to address hardship and protective purchase parcels early in the process. Any use of these exceptions must be coordinated with FTA and must meet specific criteria.

☞ [FTA guidance for real estate](#) is available on the FTA website under Planning and Environment [Ref. 4-7]

4.5.1 Early Real Estate/Rights-of-Way (ROW) Activities

Real estate involvement should begin as early as the planning phase of a project, and will necessarily be integrated into the NEPA environmental impact documentation process. The environmental process is required to analyze socio-economic impacts that may be caused by a project and any alternatives under consideration. A Real Estate and/or relocation assistance expert can provide helpful input to the analysis and reporting of such impacts.

A real estate acquisition and management program should begin in earnest during PE or earlier, as indicated previously. A Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan (RAMP) is required as an integral product of the PMP. Qualified real estate/ROW professionals should provide input into the decision-making process regarding potential alignments and property damage mitigations, which often saves money and time as the project progresses. Input is primarily through studies regarding acquisition and

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

relocation impacts, costs, and time constraints for different options. Procedures should be put in place to confirm an understanding of legal requirements, knowledge of the technical skills that will be needed to acquire property and conduct relocation assistance, and a firm grasp of how to accurately estimate the time required to make the property legally available for construction. An outline of the required content of the RAMP is contained in Appendix B of the FTA Circular 5010.1D.

The RAMP content should follow those items outlined in Appendix B, including the following general topical areas:

- Introduction -- Scope: Description of the real estate to be acquired, displacements of families and businesses and the process to implement
- Organizational Structure: Real estate staffing by employees/contractors and delineation of responsibilities
- Acquisition Schedule: Addresses due dates for ROW clearance and certification of availability for construction
- Real Estate Cost Estimate: Includes land, improvements, damages, condemnation and settlement overages, relocation assistance and overhead/administrative costs
- Acquisition Process: ROW plans, titles, valuation, offers of just compensation, closings/escrows, condemnation and settlements
- Relocation Assistance: Administer residential and business relocation benefits and services, and handle appeals as needed on the project
- Other Components: Involve document control, property management and excess property inventory and utilization plan

The transit project sponsor may in conjunction with or in addition to the development of the RAMP also develop the following in its real estate program, as applicable:

- *Identification/Certification of Real Estate Required* – ROW (permanent/temporary), easements (permanent/temporary), and lesser interests (permanent/temporary).
- *Appraisal Plan* – Staff and/or contract appraisals, review of appraisals, support of litigation (condemnation actions), and coordination for value impact caused by contamination. This necessarily involves the development of an appraisal scope of work (SOW) required by URA implementing regulations. See also, Appendix C of FTA Circular 5010.1D for additional information on the detailed requirements for the appraisal SOW. It is vital that the SOW include the clear need to identify/evaluate real property with respect not only to comparables extant (market conditions), but also and not limited to the following: Highest and best use under current approved land use plans and zoning (and known or highly

probable requests for zoning variances), railroad or similar corridor assemblage, cost to cure, etc. In this light, it is also imperative that appraisers have the experience (and any additional certification or licensing the local jurisdictions may require) for the range of appraisal considerations it may be performing.

- *Acquisition Plan* – Title commitments, negotiators, closing agents/attorneys, eminent domain attorneys for potential condemnation, and others.
- *Property Management Plan* – Interim use/maintenance prior to project construction and management of excess property prior to disposal.
- *Relocation Planning* – Early conceptual studies to be followed with advance planning adequate to effectively relocate occupants and personal property from the property needed for the project in accordance with governing regulations. .
- *Demolition Plan* – Procurement and administration of demolition contracts and use or sale of improvements and salvable materials. Safety and security concerns should also be addressed in this plan.
- *Excess Property Inventory* – Property believed to be in excess shall be inventoried for later joint development ventures, disposal, and other potential uses. Security-related issues surrounding the maintenance of empty structures should be considered when determining policies for property that will remain vacant for any lengthy periods of time. If such properties become associated with criminal events or become community eye-sores, the project or the grantee will be seen by the community as bearing responsibility for activities on and around the property.
- *Schedule and Funding Plan* – Schedule of all real estate and real estate-related activities to meet requirements for project cost estimating and budget development, project real estate program scheduling and its correlation to and with the project's Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS), program administration and accounting.
- *Transit Joint Development Plan* – While not necessarily developed by the real estate organization, this planning document should provide an assessment of opportunities in conjunction with local land use plans and innovative financing techniques that may influence the real estate program.

4.5.2 Real Estate Acquisition-Implementation Phase

The RAMP established in PE must be reviewed to reflect FD plans and specifications. Where realignment or changes in plans that affect real estate have occurred, the acquisition plan's cost, scope and schedule must be updated.

All real estate necessary for construction work must be acquired in accordance with the construction schedule. This means prior to the award of a contract and, preferably, before advertisement for bid, except under some alternative delivery methods where the schedule for delivery of ROW is set in the agreement. This is because uncertainty regarding the availability of the needed ROW affects contractors' bids. If the ROW is not available at the start of construction, contractors may have to "work around" unacquired parcels in order to maintain the project schedule, creating the potential for contractor claims.

Since many transit projects involve real estate acquisition, it is essential that each has a comprehensive real estate program. This is particularly so for federally-assisted construction projects subject to the legal requirements of the Uniform Act and state law. In addition, environmental laws at the Federal and state levels increase the liability connected to real estate acquisition. Issues related to alignment and real estate acquisition have had major impacts on transit project capital costs.

Public Outreach Program Related to ROW Acquisition

Light Rail and Commuter Rail Transit projects generally cross political jurisdictions and involve the participation of a number of local, state, and Federal agencies, public and private institutions, private sector businesses, and the general public. Rights-of-way for the proposed project are rarely acquired without extensive effort and often those whose property is taken or impacted do not understand the process and are not satisfied with the results, even if they support the project. Public outreach programs which include a focus on property acquisition can be used to facilitate the process by working with the community at large and individual property owners (and tenants) to help them understand the process and help the agency staff understand and respond to constituent concerns. Public outreach may also help reduce the length of time required to acquire property through improved understanding and communications.

Real estate issues must be closely coordinated among the project planners, programmers, designers, engineers, environmental, safety and security specialists, construction managers, and the project's real estate organization. This coordination should assist each team element in understanding the functions and needs of the other team members so that the development of a real estate program schedule reflects the time required for acquisition (including relocation of existing occupants) and demolition of properties. Delays may also occur as the result of the need to utilize the power of eminent domain to acquire needed property by condemnation. This judicial process can be unpredictable in terms of the timing in obtaining the physical possession of the property needed for the project's construction.

This real estate schedule must be incorporated with all other functional schedules to form the Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS) baseline and be flexible enough to meet program modifications. For example, partial acquisitions can neither be defined nor acquired without an advanced level of design completion. Therefore, when project design is not delivered on schedule, it has a domino effect on the entire project schedule. Also, a design change – even one that reduces an acquisition area – will require the real estate group to re-initiate the valuation (and possibly negotiations) for that parcel. Any such reworking of real estate parcels after the acquisition process has started, adds cost, can adversely impact schedule and cause distrust with project stakeholders and affected property owners.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

The grantee's Project Management Plan (PMP) should clearly identify the responsibilities for real estate acquisition, locations, availability, restrictions, residual prerogatives of former owners, and any special covenants or construction precautions that must be observed. Real estate program documentation and individual construction contracts must specify, in detail, the restrictions and provisions for the construction policies and methods on public and private lands. This is particularly important if there are requirements to retain certain landscaped finishes and special requirements for drainage and land restoration at the conclusion of the project.

4.5.3 Relocation Assistance Considerations

The law requires that residential occupants displaced by the project be offered a comparable dwelling that is decent, safe, and sanitary, and made affordable through supplemental payments. Thus, a failure to conduct timely interviews to understand individual comparability, affordability, and "decent, safe, and sanitary" needs could unexpectedly affect the project schedule.

A determination must be made whether a property to be acquired contains hazardous materials. The grantee must also assess the impact on the property value and determine the measures necessary to protect the public during remediation and construction.

Similarly, business, farm, or non-profit organization occupants must be interviewed and afforded assistance in relocating to a new site. Some business type displacees may require an extensive period of time to relocate an existing complex or large operation that could require many months to accomplish before clearing the project for construction. If such business moves are not appropriately facilitated, the project could be delayed and/or the business may be adversely impacted with resultant economic impact to the immediate area.

4.5.4 Contaminated Property (including Brownfields)

If a project involves contaminated property (including "brownfields"), appropriate due diligence regarding contamination is conducted as a part of the NEPA process and discussed in the NEPA document before selection of a contaminated property in a capital project. Appraisals should consider the effect, if any, contamination has on the market value of the property being valued. The terms, "contamination" and "hazardous material" should be interpreted broadly to include all contaminants that can affect property value and which are subject to environmental controls.

If it is necessary to purchase a contaminated property, the grantee must also assess the impact on the property value and determine the measures necessary to protect the public during remediation and construction. If property contamination is found within the project limits and is impossible to avoid, then it is desirable to:

- Mitigate the contamination to an acceptable standard for the most reasonable cost

- Hold property owners responsible for the cost of remediation of the contamination
- Maintain the project schedule, if possible, while undertaking the necessary remediation

4.6 Negotiation of Third-Party Agreements

All project activities requiring interagency agreements and approvals must be identified and scheduled early in PE. These should include, but not be limited to:

- Utility relocations and/or new utility service agreements
- Encroachment on other public transportation ROWs
- Permits and/or waivers

It is normally necessary to relocate or rearrange existing facilities prior to the construction of a major transit project under traditional delivery methods. This includes franchise utilities (power, telephone, cable, gas, steam, etc.), public facilities (highways, streets, sewer, water, drainage, fire services, traffic control, etc.), and railroads. Other than environmental permits, design-build and similar delivery approaches often transfer the responsibility for some or all of utility relocations and construction permits to the private party.

Unless some or all of these responsibilities have been transferred, during PE, master agreements should be developed and negotiations completed with utilities and with public and private agencies, to the degree possible. The agreements should ensure that the project will not be delayed during either design or construction and should provide for the following:

- Scope of work and obligations/rights of both parties
- Responsibility for design
- Acceptance of improvements criteria (short of agreeing on “betterments”)
- Responsibility for construction and relocation/rearrangements
- Responsibility for inspection
- Responsibility for safety and security of the site(s)
- Procedures for billing and payments
- Disputes resolution procedures
- Preparation and terms of detailed agreements
- Salvage materials/credits
- Responsibility for the acquisition of substitute easements
- Substitutions and betterments
- Conflict resolution procedures
- Improvement and replacement standards
- Parameters for scheduling work

The need for interagency agreements and approvals should be continually monitored and should be integrated into FD in preparation for commencement of construction. The

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

master utility agreements negotiated during PE should be refined into detailed agreements for each contract/section and should indicate provisions for the following:

- Detailed design for specific relocation/rearrangement, and/or new services
- Schedule
- Cost, salvage, and betterment
- Conditions of performance
- Responsibility for safety and security of the site(s)
- Payment for services
- Work orders (direction to proceed)
- Criteria and process for acceptance of work

4.6.1 Governmental Jurisdictions

Transit projects involve interaction with government agencies as funding partners, regulators, or representatives of the communities in which the project will operate. The role of each agency must be negotiated after an early examination of its requirements without jeopardizing the project's public support or schedule. In many cases, there is no direct link between an agency's needs and its requirement to provide the funding to support the transit project.

4.6.2 Utilities

Utilities can have both a direct and indirect impact on a project. Direct impacts occur when a utility connection is required for the project itself, such as electricity, water, and telephone. Utilities are involved indirectly when their infrastructure must be relocated to make way for the project. The grantee is required to determine who is responsible for acquiring easements for relocating utilities and assuring that all permits, etc. are obtained.

Internal FTA White Paper: Utility Agreements

Transit projects frequently require the relocation of utilities, defined in 23 CFR, Part 645, Subpart B, Section 645.207 as a "privately, publicly, or cooperatively owned line, facility, or system for producing, transmitting, or distributing various resources." A "utility agreement" is a legally binding document between a utility company and a transit agency that defines the scope of a relocation, including reimbursement, liability, right of entry, insurance, and schedule to complete the work. Such an agreement is essential to properly identify the parties involved and to ensure that all parties have a complete understanding of the scope, schedule, and reimbursement issues relating to the relocation. Utility agreements have long been the means by which a grantee arranges for a utility to relocate its facilities from within the footprint of a proposed project. See Appendix C for the complete Working Paper.

In some cases, lateral or longitudinal utility corridors created by the project can

accommodate more efficiently the relocation of several utility facilities by bundling or co-location. If this design feature is used, then any additional real estate interest needed must be incorporated into the ROW design for the project so it can be acquired with other property parcels of real estate.

4.6.3 Railroad and Other Transportation Entities

Railroads and other transportation entities (including the FAA and state and municipal transportation agencies) may control property that a grantee needs to acquire or to access (either temporarily or permanently) to construct or operate a transit project. The grantee must begin negotiation early in the project's development process to assure successful resolution of any conflicts. It is important that early on that an "understandings paper" or some kind of outline of an agreement is created to set the basis for the project. This may include an operating plan, frequency of service, improvements to be constructed, who will pay, who will construct, and what is the permit/approval process. If these terms can be worked out in advance with a reasonable and narrow "order of magnitude" final costs forecast, the project can continue in project development with an understanding for the basis of an affordable and high probability agreement. Projects that come under the jurisdiction of the Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) and Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) require a number of documents that are not mandated by FTA. Grantees whose projects require FRA or FAA coordination should meet with their FRA and/or FAA regional personnel to determine their responsibilities in this area. Whether or not a railroad corridor is subject to Surface Transportation Board (STB) regulation will determine the approach taken relative to consideration of possible acquisition scenarios.

Often, an existing railroad corridor right-of-way (ROW) may be a viable alternative for development of a transit project. This option can be available in various configurations as follows:

- a. An abandoned unused corridor not subject to STB regulation
- b. An unused corridor that has not been abandoned and thus is still subject to STB regulation, but may possibly be approached on the basis of pursuing an "involuntary abandonment".
- c. An operating corridor where sufficient ROW is available for transit to co-exist with freight or other passenger operations, without sharing tracks
- d. Same as c., except freight and other facilities must be relocated or adjusted to accommodate transit and/or transit may have to acquire additional ROW
- e. Same as c., except there is not sufficient ROW available for transit to have exclusive track facilities and therefore must share track with freight or other operations. This may involve potential "cost to cure" adjustments in existing facilities for the various operations to co-exist. Most adjustments required to accommodate transit would be an eligible project expense, so long as they were reasonable and necessary.

There may be additional scenarios that occur, but these are the ones that are most typical. Items b. through e. would typically be subject to STB regulation. Where this is the case, generally a state or local agency cannot use its power of eminent domain to

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

condemn the property owned by the railroad if an agreement could not be reached, because of the STB's authority or control.

Section 3024 of the Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU) amended Federal transit law by adding a new provision at 49 U.S.C. 5324(c) that allows FTA, under certain conditions, to assist in the acquisition of pre-existing railroad right-of-way (ROW) before the completion of an environmental review. FTA has issued its policy implementing this provision entitled, [FTA Guidance on the Application of 49 U.S.C. 5324\(c\) to Railroad Right-of-Way \(ROW\) Acquisition](#) [Ref. 4-8], dated April 2009. This policy is available on the FTA website.

Nonbinding mediation is now available in accordance with Section 401 of Title IV of the "Passenger Rail Investment and Improvement Act of 2008". This Section requires "Commuter Rail Mediation" to be made available by the STB. This alternate dispute resolution initiative may enhance the importance for transit grantees to produce objective and well documented proposals to utilize a railroad ROW. Relevant and well scoped valuation/appraisal reports pertaining to the railroad property needed should also facilitate reasonable agreements with railroad corridor owners.

If there is consideration of the use of an existing railroad ROW corridor, the transit agency must be informed of all possible options and/or approaches to the acquisition of a railroad property interest. In that regard, following is a cogent summarization of the steps and information to best ensure a successfully conducted acquisition plan:

- Retain an expert in STB regulation of the specific railroad interest under consideration for acquisition to outline and report the possible alternatives, responsibilities and potential options to consider under the existing circumstances.
- Compile all available data relative to the specific status of the corridor. The recommended specialty report should also include the compilation of all relevant data regarding the current existing use or non-use of the subject railroad ROW corridor, including, but not limited to:
 - Shippers served
 - Train traffic and size and number of trains per day or week, based on averages for the last year and for 5 years.
 - Date of the most recent trip
 - Tonnage shipped for the last year and for 5 years
 - Existing rail improvements and condition thereof
 - Overall freight capacity of the corridor and any potential diversion or delays caused by the introduction of transit.
 - Possible adjustments in existing railroad facilities to accommodate transit
 - Other relevant data related to the line's operation.
- Based on the above analysis, an approach for utilization of the existing railroad ROW corridor should be formulated.
- This analysis should be undertaken in coordination with the owner of the corridor
- This approach must be incorporated into a real estate appraisal scope of work (required by 49 CFR Part 24, Subpart B) along with other valuation requirements

specified in the Uniform Standards of Professional Appraisal Practice (USPAP) and the Federal URA appraisal standards. The data and conclusions of this specialty report will be utilized by the real estate appraiser to analyze the highest and best use of the corridor which is necessary premise in the valuation assignment.

- This will result in the transit agency being fully informed as to the:
 - STB control considerations
 - Existing and highest and best use (HBU) of the existing corridor
 - Estimate of the value of the property as a transportation corridor for transit
 - Estimate of the cost of any modifications to the existing corridor necessary to accommodate the transit facilities

4.6.4 Environmental Compliance

Grantee interactions with all affected environmental oversight agencies and organizations should be directed at establishing relationships that will support the negotiation of detailed agreements and permit the project to advance while complying with the need to mitigate all project related negative impacts. These relationships should begin during the Planning and/or Alternatives Analysis Phase with execution of the NEPA process requirements and evolve into formal agreements during later phases. The agreements should define grantee and agency responsibilities, authorities, and processes during the Construction/Procurement and Revenue Service phases. The development of a matrix identifying the necessary agreements and/or permits needed should be initially prepared during the NEPA process (Alternatives Analysis Phase) to track these vital project impacting items, and subsequently updated and (as necessary) expanded during the Preliminary Engineering and Final Design phases. Likewise, the key agreements and/or permits should be integrated with other activities and presented within the project's Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS). See Section 2.2.7 for additional guidance.

4.6.5 Joint Development

Joint development in conjunction with a transit project can be a complex public-private partnership that requires lengthy periods of planning and negotiation to reach agreement. The actual Joint Development agreement should specify the relative and explicit responsibilities between the parties. To obtain maximum value from joint development approaches, early involvement of the private partner is recommended so that the synergies can be explored and synchronized. If this process is not engaged early, the project could be impeded by decisions that may minimize, if not all together eliminate, the opportunities for joint development. See Section 2.2.10 for additional guidance.

4.7 Design Management

4.7.1 Design Coordination

Those responsible for design must assure coordination with the following:

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- The objectives of the project as defined in the Planning and/or Alternatives Analysis Phase
- The Design criteria and Operations Criteria established at the outset of PE
- Regulatory bodies and governments with jurisdiction
- All of the project stakeholders, both external agencies and the grantee staff, representing:
 - Operations
 - Maintenance
 - Planning
 - Engineering
 - Architecture
 - Safety
 - Security
 - ADA Compliance
 - Procurement Contracting
 - Real estate
 - Public Involvement
 - Scheduling
 - Estimating
 - NEPA Process
 - Other functions, as appropriate

Coordination is generally less formal at the beginning of the design process and more formal as the design review process is refined and requirements are better defined. In addition to the involvement of external stakeholders, the public involvement program should inform and receive input from potential system users and the public at large.

Starting with the baseline established during the Planning and/or Alternatives Analysis Phase, the description of the project will evolve as design progresses during PE and FD, culminating in the construction procurement documents. The grantee must establish a configuration management process to document the process and the justification of changes proposed and approved to the Baseline Project Definition, with transparency in the analyses of the effects of every change on the project's budget and IMPS. The process must document the approvals by appropriate and fully authorized representatives of the grantee's staff and, where warranted by the requirements of the PMP, provide a full record of the decision-making by the grantee's senior executive management and governing body. See Section 3.5.4 for additional guidance on principles for controlling project configuration and changes, and Section 5.2.8 on configuration management during construction.

4.7.2 Systems Integration

The purpose of the systems integration function is to ensure compatibility among the various elements of the project and between the project and the existing transit system, if applicable. For fixed guideway transit projects, the systems to be integrated may include the guideway (structures, track, roadway), traction power (substations), power

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

distribution (catenary, third rail), control (central control, signals, train control), communications (operator, public, emergency response), vehicles, existing security systems (e.g., surveillance systems, emergency telephones, public address systems, access control systems), ventilation, yards and shops, and O&M rules, procedures, and training.

During FD, the system integration function should consist of interdisciplinary reviews by cognizant management and staff utilizing the following steps:

- Assure that the documents fulfill the functional requirements of the Design criteria and are consistent with the operating plans, procedures, and rules, Operations Criteria
- Assure that the systems elements (e.g., vehicle, power, control, communications, Fare Collection, surveillance) are mutually compatible. At the same time, assure that the facility elements (e.g., ROW, guideway, structures stations, maintenance, vehicle storage, and other permanent facilities) will accommodate the system elements
- Assure that the partitioning of the work in one set of documents matches the apportioning of work in the documents for adjacent and underlying work

4.7.3 Design Reviews

Design reviews are a vital element of the entire design management process and should be explicitly included in the design schedule. The smooth functioning of the design review process depends on reviewers' attitudes, diligence of observation, communications among disciplines, knowledge of project interfaces, and the skill of the project engineer in establishing the design review objectives. The purpose of the design reviews is to ensure:

- Quality and efficiency of the design
- Identification and corrections of errors and omissions
- Compliance with building, fire, ADA, and other relevant codes and regulations
- Meeting of operational and functional objectives
- Coordination among engineering disciplines
- Adherence of cost estimates to the budget
- Provision of timely feedback to designers
- Biddability, constructibility, and cost-effectiveness of the design
- Interface compatibility with adjacent project elements and the existing transit system
- Compliance of the final construction contract documents with the Design criteria, codes, regulations and the FTA determination relative to NEPA compliance (most likely via a Record of Decision, ROD, for a Major Capital project or New Starts project)

The Integrated Master Project Schedule (as illustrated by a CPM network diagram) should contain the planned schedules for completion and review submissions at the specified levels of design for both consultant and in-house design. This design schedule requirement should be discussed during negotiations between the design

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

consultant and the grantee, and should be included in the consultant's contract. All design management personnel having review responsibility must be aware of the finalized schedule and must be accountable for adherence to it. Design management should be focused on setting metrics to measure designer performance, setting priorities for design packaging, assisting in technical interpretations, and making scheduling adjustments until final acceptance of drawings and specifications.

Design reviews involve a formalized, structured approach to ensure that the reviews are comprehensive, objective, and properly documented. Reviews should include the grantee's project personnel, consultants, and transit system operations and construction management staff to ensure that project objectives are met. Design review schedules must be maintained in order to meet established construction start dates and other program milestones. The basic steps to guide these reviews are:

- *Pre-submission review* - Before detailed reviews of design submissions are conducted, a pre-submission or onboard review of the FD documents should be performed to determine if the submission is likely to meet the terms of the design scope of work and to consider and bring final or preliminary closure on comments from any prior review. If the documentation for the submission is incomplete or does not represent what is requested for the upcoming submission, the project engineer should advise the engineering manager of the schedule impact and recommend appropriate action. The project engineer should then advise the internal design team or the design consultant of the submission discrepancies and indicate that corrective action be taken to maintain the design schedule.
- *Review process* - A distribution list should be prepared and used for providing copies of drawings and specifications for grantee and consultant reviews at the 30, 60, 90 and 100 percent levels of completion. Table 4-1 shows a typical design review distribution list. The Project Manager should conduct an audit against the contract scope(s) of work. The scopes of work for a design project should specify, at a minimum, design analysis documents, estimates, schedule issues, drawings, and specifications that are to be submitted at each design review level and the extent of completion of each.
- *Review of drawings* - Design reviews should ensure that the grantee concepts and criteria are followed and should evaluate the adequacy of the design and drafting for the expected level of completion, clarity, economy, and format. Reviews should also determine whether the interfaces with adjacent and overlapping projects have been resolved and whether the design is complete, constructible, cost-effective, and compliant with established standards and variances granted to the design consultant.
- *Review of specifications* - Copies of the specifications appropriate for the level should be transmitted through the task leaders to the reviewers for technical review and comment.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- *Review comments* - The comments developed during a review of drawings, specifications, cost estimates, calculations, survey notes, and related items should be transmitted to the project engineer for consolidation, verification, review, and action. A standard form should be developed for the use of all reviewers.
- *Review meeting* – This meeting is to examine the pertinent review comments with the design consultant to ensure that any criticisms of the design are understood, that grantee inputs are provided, and that the contract documents can be satisfactorily revised and advanced to the next milestone and through to completion. The meeting(s) should be chaired by the project engineer and attended by the contract administrator, representatives of the tasks that provided review comments, systems planning personnel, and the consultant's designers representing the appropriate disciplines. Important to a project's ultimate success is the involvement of grantee departments (and grantee consultants, if used) that will have responsibility for the construction and O&M phases. Comments should be summarized by the project engineer and transmitted to the design consultant immediately thereafter.

Table 4-1. Typical 30, 60, and 90 Percent Design Submission Distribution

Submission Organization	Section Improvements		Bridges		Service Facilities		Electric Traction		Communications and Signals		Stations		Notes
	Drwg.	Specs.	Drwg.	Specs.	Drwg.	Specs.	Drwg.	Specs.	Drwg.	Specs.	Drwg.	Specs.	
Project Manager	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC=Hard Copy
Project Engineer	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2	HC	HC-1/2 Hard Copy (1/2 size)
Engineering:													
Civil and alignment	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV=Electronic Version; Electronic versions should be in PDF or equivalent format and made available on project website or transmitted on other electronic media.
Utilities	EV	--	EV	EV	EV	--	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	--	
Drainage	EV	EV	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	
Bridges	EV	--	EV	EV	--	--	EV	--	--	--	EV	EV	
Tunnels	EV		EV	--	--	--	EV	--	EV	--	--	--	
Service Facilities	EV	--	--	--	EV	EV	EV	--	EV	--	--	--	
Electrification	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	--	
Communications & Signals	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	EV	EV	--	
Systems Assurance	EV	--	EV	--	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	--	
Cost Estimating	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	
Scheduling	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	
Specifications	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	
Document Control	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	
Environmental	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	
Contract Administrator	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	HC	At 90% and beyond only.
Systems Planning	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	
Agency Coordination	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	EV	--	
FTAPMOC	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	EV	
Local Agencies	HC-1/2	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	Other plans as needed
Partner Groups	HC-1/2	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	Other plans as needed
Other Outside Parties	HC-1/2	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	Other plans as needed

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- *Disposition of review comments* - A method should be devised by which actions taken by the engineer or design consultant in response to review comments are documented, and a record of those actions are provided to the original reviewer in order to bring satisfactory closure to all comments. Many grantees have implemented internet based tracking database systems that allow a consolidated review of all resolved and outstanding comments to facilitate managing the design review process.

4.7.3.1 PE Phase Design Reviews

As a minimum, the following submittals/reviews should be accomplished:

- *In-Progress Preliminary Submittals* – These PE submittals are intended to facilitate an organizational review of the recommended approach, including evaluation of the rejected alternatives. As such, all factors affecting the recommendation must be addressed in the plans and/or design report.

Utility conflicts (i.e., any conflict influencing project location or having cost and/or schedule impact) must be identified. Affected parties, including utility owners, railroads, government agencies, and private owners, should be listed. Deviations from the conceptual plans should be justified. Attempts to mitigate impacts discussed in the DEIS must be stated and physical constraints on the project location should be identified. Economic comparison of discarded alternatives should be made.

- *PE Submittal* – This is the last review in PE and is meant to demonstrate that the approach to all major design concepts and features has been resolved and that entry into the FD Phase can be initiated. As this submittal marks the division between PE and FD, it should:
 - Define the impact of construction on all affected parties including utilities, railroads, governmental agencies, commercial properties, residential areas, parks, etc. This should include an assessment of the affect of project labor requirements and construction work schedules on other construction work in the area.
 - Serve as a permanent record of design development and reflect the basic concurrence of all parties.
 - Define the scope of work for initiating detailed design of the project.
 - Provide a satisfactory basis for a realistic estimate of the cost of construction, which will serve as a budget.
 - Establish the project scope, or limits, with respect to ROW.

Separate requirements should be established for the design submittals of the various disciplines, e.g., civil, structural, electrical, mechanical, architectural and each system-wide element (trackwork, signals, traction power, Fare Collection, communications, revenue and non-revenue vehicles, etc.). A design report should be included as part of the documentation of PE and as such should address and record the justification for, and analysis of, design requirements, methodologies and the establishment of the Baseline Project Definition. Outline

specifications and a preliminary construction cost estimate must be prepared. Though a cost estimate may be developed by the design group, this should be developed by estimators with construction and equipment/materials procurement expertise using accepted industry standards and be traceable to the design drawings and specifications in every respect. If an incompatibility with the budget exists and cannot be solved by application of Value Engineering or prioritized budget reductions, the original scope should be revised.

As indicated elsewhere in these *Guidelines*, the grantee for a Major Capital Projects will be required to submit a project budget using FTA's Standard Cost Category (SCC) format. Therefore, grantees would be wise to present cost estimating that is not only in conformance with a logical Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) and utilizing such as the Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) format, but also correlating the same with the appropriate SCC line items. Beginning PE with this requirement will expedite the assembly of cost data for FTA.

4.7.3.2 Final Design Phase Design Reviews

At least three major categories of design reviews should occur in FD. These are referred here as the 30-percent, 60-percent and 90-percent reviews, although the exact percentage complete might vary depending on the project or the project element. The final verification and delivery follow the 90-percent review and culminate in the 100-percent documents for construction and/or equipment/materials bidding. The scope of these reviews is as follows:

- **30-Percent Review** – The intent of this design review is two-fold. First, it must document the activities of the design team in reflecting on the PE Phase Basis for Design (i.e., the Project Definition and supporting design analysis, cost estimate, contracting method and schedule documentation) plus any memoranda of understanding resulting from the EIS or FTA qualifications in its Record of Decision to resolve any changed conditions relative to Design criteria. Secondly, this review should include updated design analysis reports, complete aerial and other topographic data, completion or at least considerable advance of geotechnical studies, real estate requirements and other investigations, updated cost estimate and Integrated Master Project Schedule, and firmly established policies, practices and procedures to ensure advancement of the project to design completion. In rare cases for New Starts and often for extensions of major projects, the PE Phase final design documentation may be equivalent to 30-percent of FD so this category of review may not always be required.
- **60-Percent Review** – The purpose of this intermediate review is to ensure that all major features of design are progressing in accordance with prior direction, major engineering and architectural disciplines decisions have been made, and most drawings, specifications, and other documents are well advanced, and checked. The project cost estimate should be updated based on the advance in design

and checked against the budget established for the project, and any cost problems resolved before proceeding to the next stage. This review should be rigorous and have as its goal the complete resolution of any outstanding issue so that detailed design and preparation of contracting documents can proceed with limited need for changes, and optimum effort expended on that work.

- *90-Percent Review* – The drawings and specifications are to be essentially complete and again checked by the time of this submittal. Subsequent to this review, only incorporation of comments arising from this review, plus sign-off and approval should be required to complete these documents. A very extensive review is, therefore, necessary at this level since it is the last design review. The cost estimate should also be verified against the budget established for this project.
- *Final Verification* – After delivery of all completed, signed, original drawings, those making review comments should verify that previous comments have been satisfactorily resolved and cost estimates are in line with budgets so that organizational or individual approvals can be given. Final delivery and acceptance of the completed documents is not to be considered an opportunity for conducting another design review. Further review comments at this point should be construed as a failure on the part of the reviewer to conduct proper reviews of the 60- and 90-percent submissions. Also, further comments that do not pertain to the 90-percent review should not be considered unless the design is in error because of an unsafe condition, is not constructible as shown, or if new work that was not previously shown has been added. The reviewer and the project engineer must carefully evaluate comments made on this submission to gauge their necessity.

4.7.4 Construction Planning and Constructability Reviews

Construction planning and constructability reviews are highly recommended during the design process. Constructability reviews are typically thought of as a process whereby plans are reviewed by experts in construction techniques and materials to assess the buildability of the design. Construction planning is even broader in encompassing the environment and other pragmatic implementation conditions impacting upon the where, when and how a design is to be built. They should be conducted in tandem and as part of the PE effort (a broad brush review) and again but ever increasing level of exploration at the FD 30- and 60-percent design reviews to:

- Eliminate construction requirements that are impossible or impractical to build
- Maximize constructability, recognizing the availability and suitability of materials and specialized equipment, the capability and availability of labor resources by trades, and the standards of practice of the construction resources
- Verify accurate depictions of site conditions with regard to access, utilities, and general configuration
- Ensure adaptation of designed structures and features to site conditions and constraints

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

- Determine adequacy of work and storage space including contractor access to the site
- Determine appropriate construction durations and milestones
- Verify requirements for QA/QC
- Verify that safety and security requirements are appropriate for the particular construction site(s)
- Clearly define procedures for scheduling outages and the feasibility of utility interruptions
- Determine requirements for grantee-provided materials, equipment, services, and utility connections
- Assure that designs can be constructed using methods, materials, and equipment common to the construction industry
- Ensure attention to local community restrictions and accommodations and the requirements of the public, including existing transit patrons and persons with disabilities. The review should also assure that the project accounts for adjacent land uses and impacts
- Ensure coordination with operating elements of the existing transit system, if any

4.7.5 Peer Reviews

Peer Reviews (and Value Engineering, as discussed in Section 4.7.6) can be used to provide an independent critique of the planning, operations considerations and design products. As the name implies, experienced individuals in the subject matter of the project (i.e., peers) are provided the necessary background documentation and asked to review and critique the approaches, findings, and decisions reached on any variety of topics relevant to the implementation of the project. These critiques are intended as independent input to the grantee on issues that present unique problems.

Topics of Peer Review have run the gamut from planning for operations, project financing, contract packaging and contracting methods of delivery, engineering solutions to complex areas for design such as bridges or tunnels, O&M facilities, revenue vehicles, and just about any topic wherein an outside critique is desired. These are not normally either as robust or formal as Value Engineering exercises, and the level of detailed analysis usually is limited to concepts or functionality, with advice given more in a “lessons learned”, give-and-take critique, with reference to where or what to look for as additional grantee consideration on developing work plans or processes.

FTA encourages the grantee to confer with other transit operators and maintenance experts to benefit from their experiences. Learning from others has been used to review rail extensions, new start projects and the planning of O&M facilities. The purpose of peer review is to improve the performance of the process or product being reviewed. Basically, the question peer reviewers are asked to answer is "can we do this better?" Although the grantee is always encouraged to conduct a peer review of any capital project, in some instances, FTA may require it to do so.

Peer Review is a separate step in the design development process that can add an external perspective to enhance the quality of design, construction, and operation. FTA

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

requires Peer Review for Small Starts and midsize (bus and/or rail) projects funded under the Section 5309 discretionary program; FTA strongly recommends it for bus facilities funded under other programs.

4.7.6 Value Engineering

4.7.6.1 Definition and Requirements of Value Engineering

FTA defines the concept of Value Engineering in the [Grant Management Requirements](#) [Ref. 2-29]:

FTA encourages the use of VE techniques on all transit construction projects and requires it on MCPs. An FTA-sponsored study that provides guidance on VE is:

☞ *Value Engineering Process Overview* [Ref. 4-9].

Value Engineering (VE) is a systematic, multi-disciplined approach designed to optimize the value of each dollar spent. To accomplish this goal, an independent team of architects/engineers identifies, analyzes, and establishes a value for a function of an item or system. The objective of VE is to satisfy the required function at the lowest total cost (capital, operating, and maintenance) over the life of a project consistent with the requirements of performance, reliability, maintainability, safety, and esthetics.

4.7.6.2 Timing of Value Engineering Studies

The highest return on the VE effort can be expected when a VE workshop (or study) is performed early in the design process before major decisions have been completely incorporated into the design. VE should be performed at or near the end of PE.

For some large, complex projects, it may be advantageous to conduct two VE workshops. The first should be conducted during the PE Phase at an approximately 15-20-percent level of completion, when the project is just defining the project elements and functionality, and the second between the 30 and 50-percent level of Final Design completion, when a change in design direction may still have little negative impact on project delivery schedules.

4.7.6.3 The Value Engineering Workshop Team

VE should be performed during a week-long workshop by a multi-disciplined team of professionals who are not part of the design team and are specifically assembled for that purpose. Personnel might include electrical, mechanical, civil/structural, and construction engineers, as well as specialists in architecture, cost estimation, construction management, and transit O&M. Most, if not all, the participants should have a minimum of 40 hours of VE training and experience in VE workshops, so that efficient use is made of the time allowed for the study. To the extent possible and

warranted by the complexity of the project and/or the experience of the grantee on similar projects, the VE team should be assembled by and report to the grantee to best ensure its independence from the design team. There have been and will continue to be instances where the design firm (or team of firms) can provide VE team members who have no other role on the project but bring experience from other projects, and the grantee may wish to utilize such expertise to augment its VE efforts. The team leader should be a Certified Value Specialist (CVS).

4.7.6.4 The Value Engineering Workshop

As defined by SAVE International (formally the Society of American Value Engineers), the VE workshop typically consists of six phases:

- *Information Phase* – Obtain project information including design drawings, specifications, cost estimates, design criteria, imposed constraints, site conditions, utilities available, utility rates, and O&M practices. Receive a presentation by the designers on current status and visit the site. Review and validate cost information, calculate life cycle costs, and construct a cost model.
- *Function Analysis Phase* – Define the functions of the project, identify the cost and worth of each function, and determine areas of high cost and low worth. Analyze the project to understand and clarify the required functions.
- *Speculation/Creative Phase* – Generate a list of alternative methods of performing the functions involved in the targeted areas of the design.
- *Evaluation/Analysis Phase* – Evaluate each of the generated ideas against both functional requirements and cost-reduction objectives, as well as for feasibility and potential for acceptance by the grantee. Less promising alternatives should be screened out, leaving a small number to develop into full-fledged proposals.
- *Development/Recommendation Phase* – Develop a revised design for each proposed change. After drawing a sketch, estimate the initial capital and life cycle costs for both the original and proposed design and list the advantages and disadvantages of the proposed change. Hold consultations with the grantee and the design firm personnel to ensure that the proposed changes are based on the best information available.
- *Reporting/Presentation Phase* – At the end of the workshop, the VE team should meet with designated grantee staff members and design consultants to present the design, cost details and advantages/disadvantages of the recommended alternatives. Furnish written copies of all proposals for preliminary review by the grantee and its consultants.

Within two weeks of the workshop, the VE consultant should submit a draft VE Workshop Report to the grantee that should include the project background and description, the scope and methodology of the analyses, a summary of the VE

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE DESIGN PHASE

Workshop recommendations, and details of each proposal with estimated costs, expected savings, and back-up documentation.

After the grantee makes timely final decisions on adoptions or rejections of the various proposals, the final VE report should be prepared. The grantee should consider reimbursing the project A&E for additional costs resulting from design enhancements due to VE. The Final Report should include a summary of accepted proposals with revised capital and implementation costs, as well as a list of rejected proposals and the reasons for their rejection. FTA may request an annual VE report that tracks the progress of VE efforts as the project moves forward.

4.7.7 Quality Assurance/Quality Control in Design

The QA program for design is encompassed in the general guidance on QA/QC presented in Section 3.7, which follows [FTA's Quality Assurance and Quality Control Guidelines](#) [Ref. 2-54]. The design document submittal, review meetings, and change control procedures, described in Section 4.7.3, ensure that project requirements will be met before continuing with subsequent tasks. QA/QC includes all activities to ensure that design requirements are understood, that design interfaces are coordinated, that design verification activities and reviews occur, and that design changes are controlled and documented. Any deviations from the configuration baseline should be justified in writing. The design calculations included in design submittals should be checked along with the drawings and specifications. Additional guidance on QA in the design process is available in:

☞ *Quality in the Constructed Project* [Ref. 4-10].

Quality assurance is oftentimes explained by the “Plan, Do, Check, Act” cycle fashioned by W. Edward Deming in the 1950s, as depicted in Figure 4-2.



Figure 4-2. "Plan, Do, Check, Act" Cycle

4.7.8 Design Management for Alternative Delivery Projects

4.7.8.1 *Design Review*

An alternative delivery method project will often require different approaches for Design Management. One of the major variations for any variation that includes design-build is that 100% design plans are not completed prior to the construction bid. The plans are completed to a 15-30% (typically) level and then procurement documents are prepared including the performance criteria that will dictate both design and construction requirements. Therefore, the grantee must review the design submissions on the basis of compliance with design criteria. One of the most difficult adjustments can be that the design work is being developed into packages that will allow the work to proceed. For example, the civil site packages are likely to be submitted for “release for construction” before any detailed design is seen. This would also be the case for any long-lead items that need to be ordered.

In order to meet stringent construction deadlines the design review approach is often “over the shoulder” where there is usually co-location between the owner’s team and the design-build contractor. The reviews are often occurring in a more real-time environment that significantly reduces the comments and time required for processing the formal submissions. While specialty elements such as systems may vary, civil design submissions may be limited to a preliminary and final design review.

4.7.8.2 *Value Engineering*

While a format VE process can still provide the grantee with value for an alternative delivery project prior to the development of the procurement packages, often the entire procurement process can be considered to be an exercise in VE, as bidders seek to bring innovation to the table in the initial bid and will continue to do so as the design is developed. As long as this occurs within the parameters of the performance requirements, the contractor’s VE process is not a formal interaction with the public owner. However, most design-build and similar agreements do include formal VE clauses wherein the contractor is permitted to recommend cost or time savings solutions that would require modifications to the agreement or the performance standards. If the grantee agrees to the solution, savings are then shared as specified in the governing contractual agreement.

CHAPTER 5 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.1 Introduction

During the Procurement and Construction (Procurement/Construction) Phase, outside contractors and/or grantee force account employees construct the fixed facilities, fabricate and install equipment, and integrate the facilities and equipment into a functioning system. The work is done in accordance with the plans and specifications developed during the Final Design Phase. The Procurement part of this phase encompasses equipment and materials procurement contracting, whether for “furnish” or “furnish and install” contracted equipment and materials.

Chapter 3 defined management principles and practices including the following that apply to more than one phase of the project development process:

- Grantee and Project Management Organization
- Financial Requirements and Resources
- Project Scheduling
- Controlling Costs
- Controlling Project Configuration and Changes
- Risk Assessment and Management
- Hazard Analysis and Management
- Threat and Vulnerability Analysis and Management
- Procurement and Contracts
- QA and QC
- Project Communications.

As a supplement to the principles presented in Chapter 3, this chapter contains project management guidelines specifically related to the Procurement/Construction phase of a transit capital project.

5.2 Developing a Plan for Managing Construction

5.2.1 Organization and Staffing; Responsibilities and Authorities

Organizational Objectives

According to the report *Better Management of Major Underground Construction Projects* [Ref. 3-24], the most frequent cause of project disruption for any major transit project is “delayed decisive action.” This conclusion is the same regardless of where the delays occur, and may be the major contributing factor in disputes, claims, cost overruns, and construction delays. The report continues:

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

“Delays in resolving critical issues can usually be attributed to the way in which the decision-making process flows through the organization controlling the project. For that very reason, it is essential that an organizational structure be developed to ensure clear assignment of responsibilities and authorities and lines of communication from the first line supervisor to the top-most grantee decision-maker. These characteristics, when combined with complete written organizational procedures, become the "organizational objectives" for the project.”

Grantee's Organization

Prior to beginning construction, the grantee should have decided on a project management organization that will be responsible for moving the project from conception to completion. In larger projects this may mean establishing a key management group that will:

- Have one lead manager within the group as the single point of contact for critical interfaces and directions;
- Be empowered to make decisions and take action;
- Be responsive to emergency or rapidly changing conditions;
- Perform progress reviews, quality assurance, and related actions;
- Track and be responsible for deliverables;
- Interface with external agencies;
- Function as a single point-of-contact with FTA; and
- Be responsible for project accomplishment.

Project Team Functions and Responsibilities

The size, composition, and functional responsibilities of a project team should evolve after detailed consideration of activities occurring throughout the project's life-cycle. Consideration should be given to making use of existing technical personnel, managers, and professionals familiar with the project environment. Care should be exercised, however, so as not to overburden those who have responsibilities for present operations. Additionally, the "project organization" should not be responsible for routine operations and maintenance of the existing system while trying to manage a complex construction project. Staffing the project organization with qualified professionals is essential.

5.2.1.1 *Interface Points*

Several interconnected functional relationships exist during the construction of a major transit project. One of the most difficult and time-consuming aspects of project management is what has been termed "interface management", which entails:

- Companies involved as partners and under contract
- Interface between or among functional elements of the organization
- Interface between or among locations

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Interface between or among project phases
- Interface between or among governmental, state, or local regulatory agencies
- Interface between or among private and other public interests

To enhance and establish interface management, it is necessary to clearly define and enforce:

- Responsibility, authority, and accountability at each of the interfaces
- Inputs and outputs in terms of organization, function, and schedule
- Lines-of-communication

Appropriate Roles: Staff and Consultants

There are a number of scenarios which can describe the separate or combined roles for a grantee's staff and for consultants. In all cases, however, there must be close cooperation between these groups, and their roles and responsibilities must be clearly defined. All participants in the project must fully understand and accept that the grantee has ultimate and final responsibility for the project.

The staff, for its part, is an extension of the grantee project manager's organizational responsibilities. Staff organizations generally are configured to provide the greatest level of direct project support and control by delegation of authority and responsibility. Delegating project control as close to where the work is to be accomplished is encouraged, where practical. The staff is expected to communicate all project information to the project manager and beyond within the grantee organization so they are fully informed at all times. Grantee or other agency project staff should also avail themselves of the expertise provided by consultants. Cooperation among all these staffing elements will go a long way toward ensuring the successful completion of the project.

Grantee consultants may perform one of two roles in transit projects by serving as:

- An extension of the grantee's staff by providing technical support and assistance
- A direct representative of the grantee empowered to function in the role of project manager for the major portions of or the entire project

Either of these roles relies on the grantee's staff and the consultant or his/her staff maintaining harmonious relations, which can best be achieved by having clearly defined each group's roles and responsibilities in all phases of the project.

Key Personnel

Individuals in leadership positions and those directly involved in the planning and execution of a project should be considered "key personnel." They may range from the grantee's principal representative, down to and including the resident engineer (RE). Consultants may also be defined as key personnel, depending on the tasks assigned to them.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

Generally, key personnel are those who can directly influence the outcome of the project by virtue of the roles and responsibilities assigned to them. Grantees must identify key personnel in their organization, including consultants, and assign responsibility and authority as necessary. Grantees must also identify key personnel in the contractor's organization, including the corporate officer-in-charge.

5.2.1.2 Relationship to Project Delivery Method Used

Grantee management technical means and methods and, therefore, organization and staffing during the Procurement and Construction phase are directly related to the type of contract by which equipment procurement and/or construction is authorized. For a traditional D/B/B project delivery, the grantee (staff and consultants) team is responsible for procuring and coordinating the activities of one or more construction contractors or equipment suppliers and, therefore, has sole project management responsibility for functions including:

- Construction safety and security oversight
- Contractor integration and coordination
- Designer interface and support
- Construction supervision and inspection
- Utilities interfaces with construction
- Systems integration and testing
- Project schedule control
- QA
- Interface with the existing transportation systems, including operating railroads and other operating modes
- Coordination with existing transit operations
- Project cost control
- Community relations
- Public information including media relations

With alternative project delivery methods, many of the grantee's responsibilities are assigned to the contractor, necessitating changes in organizational structure and staffing. For methods that combine design and construction for the entire project, the grantee's role may evolve to only oversight of the contractor. In general, alternative project delivery methods would give the contractor a greater role in the functions toward the top of the above list. Whatever the contractor's roles, it must always be understood that the grantee retains final authority over the project.

Understanding the grantee's role and responsibilities as a management function, rather than an adversarial and dictatorial one, is an important distinction in non-traditional delivery methods. It becomes the grantee's job to articulate to the selected team members each person's or committee's organizational functions and responsibilities, the reporting requirements of the contractor, and the public accountability responsibility of the entire team.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

There are certain functions for which the grantee should be solely responsible, such as public funding, government liaison, property acquisition, agency agreements, and assessing environmental impacts. The private sector, e.g., DBOM contractor, can provide a differing set of capabilities and resources, depending on what each is being asked to perform or accomplish. The private sector can offer new ideas and innovative solutions to various aspects of the project, and have the monetary incentive to manage certain risks more effectively than the grantee.

5.2.1.3 Construction Manager Approach

The construction manager (CM) approach to project management during the Construction/Procurement Phase has been found to offer a high likelihood of project success. The CM is responsible for project construction and certain equipment and material procurement administration from the date of each contract to the final turnover to the O&M personnel. Where responsibilities for related activities are under the control of other jurisdictions, the CM is responsible for integration and coordination of those activities.

Prior to contract award, the CM is responsible for verification that the contract milestones are compatible with the Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS), special construction requirements, constructability reviews, and participation in VE studies. During construction, the CM is responsible for monitoring contract compliance with the drawings, specifications, and other requirements including construction warranties, contract documentation and as-built record, affirmative action and EEO, DBE participation, and contract close-out. Additionally, the CM is responsible for overseeing contract administration procedures and construction safety and security. The CM provides construction management personnel to supplement the grantee's CM organization.

5.2.1.4 Resident Engineer

One qualified Resident Engineer (RE) should be assigned by the CM to each construction contract over \$10 million. The RE will assume responsibility for administration of the contract once award is made. The RE is the grantee's primary field representative, and is the contractor's single point of contact. The RE receives all submittals, requests for information (RFI), correspondence, and change order requests. The RE ensures that the work is constructed in accordance with the requirements of the drawings and specifications throughout the project up to and including final inspection, testing and close-out.

Work to be done under any contract will not be considered complete until it has passed a final inspection by the RE and the grantee. The contractor must carry out the instructions of the RE insofar as they concern the work to be done under the contract within the RE's limit of authorization. The RE has the authority to direct that unacceptable work be halted and removed and replaced at the contractor's expense.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

Approval by the RE signifies favorable opinion and qualified consent. It does not carry with it certification, assurance of completeness or quality, or accuracy concerning details, dimensions, or quantities. The RE's approval will not relieve the contractor from responsibilities for error, improper fabrication, and non-compliance to a requirement, or for deficiencies within the contractor's control.

5.2.2 Project Labor Agreements (PLAs)

During construction planning, careful examination of the existing labor situation is essential to determine the impacts of:

- Labor organizations
- DBE participation
- Local labor situation
- Contractor labor practices
- Davis-Bacon wage rates.

Each of these areas will impact on the project if not fully evaluated and considered in the PMP and, in turn, captured in the analysis of project costs and scheduling.

Local PLAs are a means of preventing disruptions or disagreements over the way in which the project is managed and staffed. PLAs may extend among the grantee, contractors, and unions. All PLAs should be approached with caution to ensure that the agreed to actions are enforceable and in compliance with accepted laws and procedures. When allowed, PLAs are usually negotiated by the grantee with relevant labor organizations. Once negotiated, the PLA is put into the construction contract so that the bidders know that they must enter into a PLA and so they know the terms of the PLA before they decide to submit their bid. PLAs, which historically have helped to minimize labor staffing and wage and benefits disagreements potential leading to work disruptions, usually involve the following:

- Wages and work rules are negotiated between the contractor and the various labor unions, and supersede existing collective bargaining agreements
- Providing union scale wages and benefits and prohibiting strikes and lockouts
- Binding of all contractors and their subcontractors by the agreement according to the terms of their contracts

PLAs were disallowed by two 2001 Executive Orders (Nos. 13202 and 13208), and those Orders were repealed and replaced by another Executive Order (No. 13502) in 2009 which now encourages the use of PLAs. Grantees should keep abreast of this topic.

5.2.3 Interface with Utilities

The grantee should establish master agreements with all affected utilities during the PE Phase and develop specific agreements with those utilities during the Final Design Phase. During construction, contractors must coordinate utility relocation and project

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

service requirements with their overall schedule and aggressively manage the interfaces to assure that the overall project is not delayed. The grantee organization and its in-house or consultant CM also has responsibility to assist the contractor with such interfaces.

Certain property acquisitions may also involve securing replacement right of way for utility relocations. Ideally, all real property interests and obstacles necessary for the project will have been acquired, controlled and cleared by the time construction begins on a project. To the extent that that is not the case, construction contract specifications must address the availability of such areas in the context of:

- Release dates for certain real estate parcels as acquisition or relocation is incomplete
- “Work-Arounds” or “hold-off areas” as specified
- Demolition or clearing of existing site improvements
- Remediation of contamination
- Access restrictions or maintenance requirements for certain parcels

Theoretically, any additional work elements or restrictions included in the construction contracts may (and likely will) result in a proportionate increase in cost. In some situations, however, the inclusion of certain demolition or clearance activities in the construction contract may be the most efficient way to deal with such items.

Restrictions of contractor access or activity within the project limits because necessary property rights have not been acquired will usually result in increased cost of construction and may cause a delay in delivery of the project. To reduce the likelihood of these outcomes, grantees should place significant emphasis on coordinating the real estate acquisition and construction schedules from the onset of the project. In the risk assessment that is undertaken for a transit project, this risk of schedule delay and the potential increase in cost related to it must be continually monitored to preclude it from occurring.

Grantees must carefully monitor project milestones, including real estate procurement and clearance, to ensure compatibility with the Integrated Master Project Schedule (IMPS). Thus, every effort is made to provide a controlled and cleared right-of-way for the construction of the project in accordance with the approved scope (design plans and construction specifications) in order to adhere to the cost and schedule parameters that have been established.

There may be instances where relocation of a utility must be accomplished before any other construction work can begin. In light of that fact, numerous agencies have used pre-award authority for utility work to accomplish site preparation, utility relocation and restorations prior to awarding a larger line, trackwork, or systems contract.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.2.4 Interface with Transit Operations

Capital projects involving modifications or extensions to an existing transit system must be sensitive to the requirement for the continuity of transit O&M activities in a safe and secure manner for all customers, employees and the general public. Construction contracts should include such requirements and define the contractually acceptable-to-grantee amount of deviation or delays to normal transit operations by time of day, day of the week and specific calendar date(s). Contractors may be required to submit interface plans through the RE for the approval of the transit operating department.

Grantee force account support may be required to complement the construction activities of contractors. Support could include providing flagging operations, work trains, bus bridges when there are outages of the fixed guideway system, and interim facility (e.g., track, signals, traction power, communications, and control center) modifications to support construction activities. Transit operating personnel must be informed of construction activities on or adjacent to the operating system. Such notices may include slow orders to maintain safe operations.

The contractor should be responsible for limiting access to the construction site while maintaining adequate access for the transit riders and the general public. Signage, markings, lighting, walking surfaces, and railings must be designed, installed, and maintained to support the continuity of safe and secure transit operations. Grantee oversight of the contractor's efforts in this regard is important, and the grantee should assure that all bid documents and contracts specify that a designated RE (who is either grantee staff or a consultant) has the authority to issue stop orders or to temporarily halt contractor activities if the construction site is not properly maintained.

Transit operations will be increasingly involved in the project as it gets closer to completion. Chapter 6 addresses the Testing and Start-Up Phase, during which transit O&M forces should be actively involved.

5.2.5 Community Relations and Public Information

One of the most essential requirements for managing large, costly, and visible transit projects is to ensure that public perceptions of the various activities are positive and well-informed. Major transit construction projects are, by their very nature, highly visible and generally a cause for considerable public scrutiny. In addition to the general public, numerous Federal, state, local, and private organizations share common interests in projects of this type; each requires information regarding various aspects of the project.

Managing relationships with these diverse groups is essential to ensure that perceptions of the project are factual and positive, and that information is readily and continuously available. Key project personnel and staff members, particularly in the public relations area, play a major role in providing information and correcting any misperceptions that exist about the project within external organizations or among the public. The PMP

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

must include a section on the project's public involvement program, including the following, as appropriate:

- A strategic public relations program including, for example, providing "Open for Business" signage and driveways access during construction
- Community relations programs
- Guidelines for the release of project information
- Workforce information programs and grievance procedures
- Internal lines-of-communication for project issues
- Procedures for quickly responding to external information needs
- Scheduled meetings and forums for the workforce, external organizations, and groups to establish effective two-way communications throughout the life of the project.

See Section 3.8 for additional guidance related to project communications. During the previous phases of the project, the various groups and agencies affected by the project should have been identified. By the construction phase, a comprehensive communications program should have been established to address public concerns during construction.

As the project progresses and reaches the Procurement/Construction phase, public concerns will be raised, making frequent, factual and open dialogue on the details of construction activities even more imperative. These sessions should be conducted as close to the actual construction site as possible to encourage public participation and to assure local awareness. The intent is to present an open forum for discussion and public involvement in the decision-making process.

The PMP's separate section devoted to external communications provides the grantee's policy and plan for how communications will occur and what authority levels are required for release of project-specific information. If the contractor has a separate public information office in addition to the grantee's, oversight and approvals should be required by the grantee prior to any release by the contractor's staff. The types of information the contractor may release without prior approval should be defined by the grantee, and may include:

- Routine non-controversial project information
- Awards and recognition
- Information not related to the project or the grantee

As part of the construction planning that should be performed early in the Final Design Phase, the grantee should coordinate its project schedule and types of construction work with other local agencies. One potential advantage in doing so, especially for transit-related work in or along roadways, is coupling the work of the different agencies so as to avoid interrupting traffic (vehicular and pedestrian) and/or property access twice in a short span of time. There may also be cost savings to accrue from either the increased size of the work to be bid or possible cost-sharing with another agency. In

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

any event, such coordinated construction, particularly in high density or busy public spaces can improve the relations with the local citizenry, businesses and institutions.

5.2.6 Quality Assurance/Quality Control

In the Construction phase, the Quality Program objective should be to verify that equipment and materials installed, as well as work performed, comply in all respects with the contract specifications. As such, the Quality Program must provide an effective means to ensure that:

- Selected equipment is tested throughout development, manufacture, and installation to verify that it functions as specified. Test equipment should be properly calibrated.
- Work processes are controlled to ensure that work is done in the appropriate sequence, that the production and installation processes that directly affect quality are performed under controlled conditions, and that special processes that cannot be verified by subsequent inspection and testing of the product are appropriately monitored.
- Early detection of nonconforming conditions is accomplished, and positive corrective action is performed in a timely manner.
- Control over the configuration is maintained at all times to ensure the acceptability of equipment, as designed and contracted for, per approved drawings and accepted design verification testing.

The Quality Program should provide documentation so that the work can be accepted. It should also require the contractor to have an effective quality control (QC) program and provide for the oversight of that program through the grantee's QA activities. For non-traditional contracts, the contractor may be given both QC and QA responsibilities; nevertheless, the grantee must provide oversight of the contractor's quality activities. See Section 3.7 and the following FTA report for additional guidance:

☞ [Quality Assurance](#) [Ref.2-54].

In addition to construction work, the grantee must also assure the quality of rolling stock. This work is required by FTA under the provisions of Section 12(j) of the Federal Transit Act. Specifically, the FTA requires pre-award and post-delivery audits for buses and rail vehicles. To meet the FTA's requirements, the grantee must perform work-in-process and first article inspections because of the great expense, complexity, and long lead times for rolling stock procurements. Guidance for meeting this FTA requirement can be found in:

☞ [Buy America: Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits](#) [Ref. 2-16].

To meet these requirements a grantee must:

- Complete visual inspections and testing to demonstrate that the vehicles meet the contract specifications

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Send a resident inspector to the manufacturer's production facility during the final assembly period for procurement of rail vehicles or more than ten buses. The inspector must monitor the final assembly process and complete a final report describing the construction activities and explaining how the construction and operation of the vehicles fulfill the contract specifications.

The grantee's records should include copies of QC measurements, road and performance test sheets, and visual inspection sheets. The records should also include an analysis of manufacturing capability and an explanation of how the transit vehicles fulfill the contract specifications.

5.2.7 Change Control and Management

Changes during the Construction phase could result from, but not be limited to, the following causes:

- *Differing site conditions* – Including:
 - Subsurface conditions different from contract representations (Type I)
 - Unknown or unusual conditions not reasonably anticipated (Type II)
 - Conditions created by previous contractors
- *Errors or omissions in plans and specifications* – The grantee should have an “errors and omissions (E&O) clause” in the designer’s contract, and this clause needs to be strong enough, i.e., Insurance level, to recoup losses resulting from faulty designs. The grantee may obtain compensation through the designer’s E&O insurance when a change required by an error or omission has a substantial monetary impact.
- *Value Engineering* – In addition to Design Phase VE studies (Section 4.7.6), construction contract language should permit contractors to recommend changes that could save capital costs or life cycle costs for the grantee. Such a clause is typically referred as a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP) clause. Costs associated with acceptable changes due to a VECP recommendation are typically shared 50-50 between the grantee and the contractor; some have 60-contractor/40-grantee sharing percentages to encourage VE where complex and/or relatively new design is being implemented. While the contractor is responsible for the engineering to support changes resulting from VE, the contract documents should establish a minimum value of savings expected to accrue to the grantee to both compensate for the grantee’s costs of processing and evaluation and discourage frivolous VE change proposals.
- *Grantee action* – Including:
 - Changing portions of the plans and specifications
 - Altering the time allowed to perform the work
 - Changing the contractor’s method of work
 - Stop orders
 - Regulatory changes, such as environmental, security, and safety

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

Diligence during the planning and design phases of a project can reduce the risk of changes during construction. When changes do occur, it is necessary to give notice of the proposed change including all facts and costs in writing as quickly as possible to permit a cost-effective decision to be made. The grantee should have a Change Control process and applicable form wherein the source of the change is identified. Since many grantee oversight staff members are reticent to say that the source of the change was E&O, the form may help to encourage them to make that designation when justified. The contractor should be given official notice either through a change order or by direction of the grantee or its agent, the RE. Documentation should provide back up to the directed change.

No matter the size of the change is, its impact should be assessed in terms of time and cost (estimated or actual). FTA's [Best Practices Procurement Manual](#) [Ref. 5-1], Chapter 9, provides guidance in this regard. The construction contract should address the process of pricing changes consistent with FTA requirements regarding issues such as equipment rates, overhead, and profit. This matter is one that accentuates the need for the inspectors to maintain careful diaries which identify environmental, manpower, equipment, materials, activities and durations at the site every work day. These diaries will be indispensable during assessment and negotiation of change orders or owner-directed changes. At the same time, diaries should provide assessments of the execution of work each day so as to forewarn of potential contractor claims that may surface, as well as aid in preparing contract estimates to(at) complete(ion).

5.2.8 Configuration Management

In the Procurement/Construction Phase, the objective is to implement the project in accordance with the plans and specifications of the contract documents. Specific considerations during construction should include:

- Protection or relocation, as required, of existing utilities based on identification and design conducted earlier
- Requirement that construction contractors should verify existing site conditions and dimensions
- Sensitivity during construction to potential impacts from air, noise and water pollution, drainage issues (surface and sewers), archeological concerns and habitat destruction as identified in the EIS

In the Procurement/Construction phase, the project definition technical baseline established during FD will be used to monitor construction and fabrication processes. The baseline must be closely followed to ensure quality, safety, security, performance, and cost compliance. There may be occasions, however, when changes are required. All changes to the project definition baseline must be reviewed and assessed by the technical experts, inclusive of schedule and estimating expertise, and then must be reviewed and approved by the responsible individuals as set forth in the PMP for the Procurement/Construction Phase.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

During the Procurement/Construction phase, special emphasis should be placed on recording and documenting any changes that are approved and completed. Changes become a matter of official record and must be requested in writing in accordance with the project Change Control procedures before being considered for approval. The grantee must establish in writing those individuals authorized to approve equipment procurement and/or construction changes and the dollar thresholds of their authority. At the completion of equipment procurement (and installation) and construction, detailed equipment drawings, operating manuals, warranties, etc., must be submitted, and "as-built" drawings for constructed facilities must be prepared.

Design service during construction is the provision of designer reviews of contractor submissions, where submission requirements are detailed in the contract documents. These submissions include shop and working drawings, materials and equipment cut sheets, submittals required by Contract Data Requirements Lists (CDRLs), and testing for systems contracts. In every case, where designer review and approvals are required, it is vital to adhere to the Change Control procedures and keep detailed records and have established levels of authority (cost, functionality and schedule impact) delineated for approvals, especially for any changes to the baseline.

Configuration management is especially important where an existing operating transit system is being modified. The configuration of the existing system is considered to be the project definition baseline; any modifications should be carefully designed to maintain or achieve the desired functionality; the proposed changes should have to be approved by the appropriate grantee managers including engineering, operations, maintenance and system safety; and the implemented changes should be carefully and completely documented to aid in future training, inspection and maintenance activities.

5.2.9 Delays

A delay is defined as a measure of the lack of progress against how the work was scheduled to progress to completion. Project delays can only occur if critical path activities are delayed. Delays on other paths consume float and do not result in a project delay until they consume all float, at which point they become critical. Delays to the critical path provide float to other, non-critical paths. Typical causes of delays include additional work, disrupted work, suspended work, or slow progress.

Delays are categorized as excusable or non-excusable. An excusable delay is unforeseeable and not within the contractor's control (e.g., a natural disaster). It can be either non-compensable (the contractor receives a time extension but no compensation for the delay) or compensable (the contractor receives both a time extension and compensation for the delay). A non-excusable delay is one that is considered to be either foreseeable by the contractor or within the contractor's control. For a non-excusable delay, the contractor receives no time and no compensation, and could be liable for actual or liquidated damages.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

The contract should define appropriate examples of all these terms. There could also be concurrent delays due to the actions of both the grantee and the contractor, or by one contractor that affects another contractor. A CPM schedule for each construction and equipment/materials contract is essential and invaluable in evaluating the impact of an actual delay or a potential change.

Many grantees take the position that there should be no damages for delay. This means that the grantee is willing to give a time extension, but no financial compensation. The disadvantage with a no-damage-for-delay clause in a contract is that it causes contractors to add their estimated cost for the potential loss of compensation in their bid prices.

5.2.10 Claims Avoidance and Management

The general discussion of claims management in Section 3.6.5 has strong relevance to the Construction phase. Claims avoidance involves the process necessary to reduce the incidence of claims on construction projects. The techniques described in the following sub-sections can be applied to act both independently and collectively to reduce claims. The most important factors, however, are solid contract documents (with complete and accurate drawings, specifications and Terms & Conditions or General requirements) and maintenance of regular candid communications between the grantee and contractor to address problems as they arise. The goal should always be to close-out each and every contract with no outstanding claims that would remain to face litigation and uncertain the final project cost.

5.2.10.1 Dispute Resolution

A dispute occurs when the parties to a contract cannot agree on the interpretation of contractual conditions. A claim may be submitted by either party when the dispute cannot be resolved. The goal of the project organization should be to avoid disputes and claims through a process of planning and development that results in effective contract documents and procedures. The responsibility for understanding and instituting procedures for minimizing disputes rests at all levels within the project management hierarchy. Examples of actions by grantees that may lead to disputes include:

- Lack of full disclosure of geotechnical information
- Changing plans or specifications during construction
- Inadequacy of bidding information
- Inadequate time in procurement process for bid preparation
- Vague or misleading requirements
- Improper denial of a change request that includes a request for a time extension

Construction contracts should include procedures for responding to disputes that arise between contractors and the grantee. There must also be procedures that permit construction operations to proceed, if prudent, while disputes are reviewed and settled. The legal staff must also ensure that contractual documents have been well written and

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

include specific provisions for resolving disputes in a timely manner and at the lowest administrative level possible.

Procedures for dispute resolution should be clearly defined in the contract. The selection of formal dispute resolution procedures should be a function of project size and the grantee's resources. Common dispute resolution procedures include:

- *Negotiation* – This is how the majority of claims are settled. It is the least expensive and quickest method of resolution.
- *Mediation* - A mediator generally is selected by the involved parties after a dispute has arisen. The mediator's function is to provide an atmosphere in which the parties themselves can resolve the dispute. A mediator may make unbinding recommendations for settlement. Mediation offers informality and the good offices of an independent third party. This method lacks finality and may prolong the time required for ultimate resolution because the mediator's recommendations are not binding.
- *Arbitration* – Arbitrators generally are appointed after a dispute has arisen. Procedures for their appointment and the conduct of hearings are governed by contract, which may incorporate the rules of the American Arbitration Association, and by applicable statutes. The decision of the arbitrators is final and binding on the parties. The advantage of arbitration is considered to be the independent expertise and impartiality of the arbitrator. In most states, there is no right of pretrial disclosure and arbitrators are not bound by rules of law. Also, there is no right of appeal on the merits, only for substantial procedural deficiencies.
- *Dispute Review Board (DRB)* – This is a board of third parties selected by the grantee and contractor when entering into the contract. As the work proceeds, the board meets periodically to review progress and incipient problems. The board, which is intended to have a deterrent effect, may serve as an arbitrator or only a mediator, as set forth in the contract documents. Establishing a DRB with ongoing responsibility through the life of a project is an innovative means of dispute avoidance and resolution. Cost considerations may make it practical for use only for very large projects.
- *Litigation* – Court litigation is the most costly and time-consuming method of resolving disputes by taking a matter to court. In some cases a jury may be demanded as a matter of right. Judges generally are not specialists since construction cases are relatively few in number as compared with civil law cases. Litigation deprives the parties of the opportunity to have the facts evaluated by an individual with independent expertise. It offers procedural safeguards, however, such as pretrial disclosure and the right of appeal, generally not available in other dispute resolution procedures. Generally, because of its monetary and time

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

costs, it is viewed as the least desirable approach to resolving disputes. Most of the other procedures described were devised as ways to avoid litigation.

Disputes can be avoided if anticipated problems are dealt with in the framework of contract documents. The recognition and elimination of contract elements that are vulnerable to change and misinterpretation can help stem disagreements. Clauses dealing clearly with changed conditions and quantity variations should be included in the contract document. In general, disclaimers and language that avoids responsibility should be omitted.

The PMP should stress that the sections on inspections, scheduling, QA and others are intended as preventive procedures for early identification of potential disputes. The PMP should also define actions to be taken to document contractor performance.

Two documents developed by professional organizations that address construction disputes can provide additional guidance to grantees:

- ☞ *Avoiding and Resolving Disputes in Underground Construction: Successful Practices and Guidelines* [Ref. 3-32]
- ☞ *Alternate Dispute Resolution for the Construction Industry* [Ref. 5-2]

In addition to contract language to mitigate disputes, other mechanisms exist to avoid disputes. One example is the requirement for Escrowed Bid Documents (e.g., Schedule of Values) from construction bidders, which allows a grantee to have detailed pricing backup by contractors should a dispute arise. This can provide the grantee with the presumptions and calculations supporting the contractor's bid that could be used to negotiate a change order or claim if there is disagreement. It can often work to the advantage of a contractor if there is an error or discrepancy in their bid calculations.

Litigation in Construction

Partnering relationships between grantees and contractors can help to avoid litigation by solving problems as soon as they are uncovered. Grantees are encouraged to keep detailed records on the cost of litigation in construction to provide a baseline for measuring future savings.

5.2.10.2 Partnering

Partnering was addressed in Section 3.6.4 as a general risk management tool. During the Procurement/Construction Phase, partnering can help avoid disputes and also aids in resolving those that occur. Immediately prior to and during this phase the grantee should have partnering workshops at the beginning of each major contract for the project. Participation should involve primary project stakeholders including representatives of the grantee, contractor, subcontractors, suppliers, government agencies, designers, local police, business organizations, and others as necessary.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

The workshop sessions should focus on goal setting, and identify cross-functional requirements and expectations for a successful contract completion. At least one additional partnering workshop should be scheduled after the contract is well underway, perhaps after the accomplishment of a major milestone.

5.2.11 Documentation (Progress Reporting, Maintenance of Records)

The PMP should establish internal reporting mechanisms and develop any special management plans. One such plan is a Construction Management Plan, which should provide manuals for Resident Engineer and Inspectors. The Plan should contain detailed information for communications and should include reporting procedures and requirements for the following:

- Daily work schedules and progress reports
- Construction and fabrication status
- Materials status reporting/materials shortages
- Accident reporting and emergencies
- Security breach policies and reporting mechanisms
- Delays
- Stoppages
- Daily costs and expenditures for changed work
- Grievance procedures
- Project manager, REs, inspector reporting procedures
- Quality assurance and quality control
- Equipment and resource status
- External factors affecting the project

The areas listed above, and others, reflect the daily and periodic communications responsibilities of the project team, who must, in turn, communicate information to the grantee or representative of the grantee. Each grantee must decide how much information is enough to keep the organization fully informed without overburdening the project team. This balance must be carefully weighed before the start of construction and changes kept to a minimum, with exceptions handled on a case-by-case basis.

Progress reports should be submitted monthly by the Construction Manager and should generally include the following:

- Milestone summary schedule and cash flow payment curve
- Current approved submittal schedule
- Fiscal summary for contract and major subcontracts (award amount, executed change orders, current commitment, payment dates, % expended, actual expenditures versus baseline cashflow, potential claims, and value of executed change orders)
- Change orders – description, status, and outstanding issues
- Claims status – description, status, and outstanding issues
- A one-month look ahead narrative
- Systems design status by major milestone
- Facilities construction status by major milestone

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Procurement status
- Systems procurement/installation status by major milestone
- Integrated testing status by major milestone
- Submittals/deliverables status per the contract terms, and, at least, by major milestone
- Quality assurance/quality control status including test schedule/status, non-conformance status and actions taken, and audits scheduled/completed and significant findings
- Environmental mitigation status including compliance/non-compliance reports, completed mitigation efforts, public complaints, non-compliance issues raised by regulatory/oversight agencies, and hazardous material status
- Construction safety status—including reportable accidents, training, and other relevant safety information
- Construction security status—including any breaches, particularly those resulting in injury to employees, significant losses due to theft, or crimes against the site or surrounding area
- Photos showing recent progress
- Disadvantaged business enterprise status by subcontractor including last payment time and amount, amount paid to date, original subcontract value, and change orders
- Permit application report including the status of those obtained by the grantee and those obtained by the contractor, and permit modifications
- Coordination with other contracts, including meetings and written communications
- Utility work status by major utility
- Extra work
- Status of other activities including significant events, public affairs and Insurance

A number of the types of communications listed above are systems within themselves and are routinely used during all construction projects to report progress and status of various aspects of the project. The majority of these will have already been established by the contractor and are necessary for controlling construction. The grantee should first determine the reporting system(s) to be used by contractors, specify it (them) in the contract bid documents and awarded contract, and then determine what additional information is needed to keep all relevant internal and external groups fully informed. Two of the more important reports the grantee will want to receive frequently will be the summary of project costs and construction (project) progress.

External reporting requirements generated by outside agencies should be factored into the overall reporting system and used to develop a comprehensive list of information that is used by the grantee's organization, the contractor, and other organizations assisting the grantee.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.2.12 Contractor Payments

The basis for contractor payments must be clearly defined in the contract documents. It should be closely related to the contractor's pricing as reflected in the bid documents. Where unit pricing predominates, payment based on the number of units accomplished is appropriate, but most transit projects are much more complex.

A method that has been used with increasing popularity is the cost-loaded CPM. An early deliverable requirement of the contractor is a detailed CPM schedule, with costs assigned to each activity. The grantee must review and approve the cost-loaded schedule, based on the bid received from the successful contractor. The grantee would be wise to structure the bid sheets to obtain cost breakdowns that can later be compared to the contractor's cost-loaded CPM. Thus, payment can be directly tied to the accomplishment of construction activity. For short-duration activities, a single payment might be appropriate. For longer-term activities, progress payments might be more suitable, as long as they are based on easily measured, performance-based criteria.

It is highly recommended that the contractor be required to maintain an approved job cost account system to adequately capture the costs necessary to demonstrate entitlement under various remedy-granting clauses of the contract, including costs for claims. Presented properly, this is beneficial to both the grantee and the contractor.

The grantee's organization must have a clearly established process for reviewing and approving contractor invoices to permit prompt contractor payment or the identification and resolution of any anomalies.

5.2.13 Project Closeout

The process for project closeout needs to be established in the construction contract documents. It should mandate that all contractor requirements are accomplished in compliance with contract specifications and include items such as, but not limited to:

- Operating and maintenance documentation (manuals) and training
- Completion of punch list items
- Final inspection by the grantee
- Warranties and guarantees
- Record plans or as-built drawings

An interim step is "beneficial occupancy" where the grantee accepts only part of the total contracted facilities, systems, or equipment. This often occurs prior to project completion to give the grantee the opportunity to do force account work and to initiate pre-revenue service. It is important to clearly define who has responsibility for O&M, safety, and security at this stage. "Substantial completion" refers to the entire contracted work product being accepted for use. This term is also used when the grantee accepts a portion of the work where only minor punch list work remains.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

The terms guaranty (guarantee) and warranty are commonly used interchangeably to describe the responsibility of a manufacturer after delivery of a product and to describe the responsibility of a contractor after completion of construction. Though frequently misused in business, the law has assigned slightly different meanings to the terms. Legally, a guaranty is a separate contract by a third party (analogous to a surety bond), that assumes responsibility in case the principal fails to perform. A warranty is assurance by the principal that it will assume stipulated responsibilities for completed portions of the project. Thus, a manufacturer warrants its material, while the construction contractor provides a third party guaranty for those materials and a warranty for its own workmanship in installing them.

5.3 Contractor Requirements

Project implementation may, as discussed elsewhere, utilize one or many different contract delivery approaches. In each delivery approach, these contracts impose many responsibilities on both the grantee (and its consultant extensions of staff) and the contractors selected to perform the work defined by the plans and specifications. The grantee's organization must assure that those responsibility provisions are consistent with the delivery method which allocated roles and responsibilities between the grantee's organization and outside consultants and contractors. Care must be exercised by the grantee in fulfilling the roles and responsibilities based on the implementation approach, recognizing the inherent differences between traditional, D/B/B, and alternative project delivery methods such as D/B or DBOM.

5.3.1 Permits

During the design phases, the grantee is responsible for obtaining master and detailed agreements with all relevant governmental jurisdictions, agencies, and utilities. If these agreements are not in place by the bid date (or assured by a later date that would otherwise cause a delay), it may be more appropriate to delay the bid or NTP rather than incur a contractor delay claim because the contractor has no place to work. The contractor should be responsible for obtaining all permits related to the actual construction for which it is responsible. The cost and schedule impacts of this contract requirement should be the full responsibility of the contractor.

5.3.2 Safety Plan

The contractor should develop a safety plan for the contractor's project responsibilities in accordance with the specification requirements (possibly including the grantee's or project's System Safety Program Plan and/or its Construction Safety and Security Manual) for the grantee's review and approval. This may include appropriate revisions of the draft version, if required, to meet the grantee's requirements. An important aspect of the contractor's safety organization is its independence from the contractor's organization responsible for accomplishing the actual work.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.3.3 Security Plan

Just as with safety, the contractor should be expected to develop a project security plan that complies with the specifications set by the grantee. For large projects with many contractors, to assure that safety and security plans are both consistent and complete throughout the project, grantees would be wise to develop a Construction Safety and Security Manual that is distributed along with bid documents.

Construction sites that for any reason are deemed more vulnerable to security breaches should have specifications in the bid documents to cover these contingencies. For instance, a work site adjacent to an active portion of the rail system may require greater traffic control or property protection than one isolated from other portions of the transit system. Similarly, a location adjacent to a tunnel, a major sporting venue, or a historic site may be deemed to have a higher vulnerability for attack, for which the grantee should consider specifying a higher level of security, including, possibly, surveillance cameras, additional lighting, or constant or roving patrols by contract guards.

5.3.4 Quality Plan

The grantee should require the contractor to develop a quality plan for the contractor's project responsibilities in accordance with the specification requirements (possibly including the grantee's or project's Quality Program) for the grantee's review and approval. Appropriate revisions of the draft version should be made, if required, to meet the grantee's requirements. An important aspect of the contractor's quality organization is its independence from the organization responsible for accomplishing the actual work.

5.3.5 Submittals of Shop Drawings or Contract Data Requirements

The contractor should submit shop drawings, manufacturers' standard schematic drawings, manufacturers' calculations and standard data, product literature and installation instructions, and any other documents or samples as required by the contract specifications to the grantee's representative for review. Final shop drawings and all manufacturers' product information should become permanent project records, and final payment should not be made until all such material has been submitted and approved by the grantee.

5.3.6 Submission of Requests for Information (RFIs)

An RFI is a formal means for a contractor to obtain an interpretation of the grantee's design documentation or other contractual requirement that is not apparent to the contractor. Omissions, conflicts, or other inconsistencies in the drawings or specifications should be rectified by issuing a change notice to the contractor. Clarifications that do not require a change in the contract specifications should be made by a written response to the RFI.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.3.7 Schedule

See Section 3.4.4 for guidance relating to the construction schedule.

5.3.8 Progress Reporting and Invoices

The contractor should submit periodic progress reports and invoices in accordance with the specification requirements. To encourage early compliance with each and every specification dealing with technical or administrative submittals, the grantee should promptly reject all contractor submittals until and unless they adhere to the contract requirements. However, preparation of the invoice may be and usually is a joint effort involving both the contractor and the Resident Engineer's (RE's) office, and this process eliminates most last minute rejections.

As in Section 5.2.11, Progress Reports should be submitted monthly by the contractor and should generally include the following:

- Milestone summary schedule and cash flow payment curve
- Current contractor's schedule for submittals
- Affirmation of latest grantee approved construction (or other contract) schedule, or notice of change(s) contractor intends to propose for grantee approval
- Fiscal summary for contract and major subcontracts (award amount, executed change orders, current commitment, payment dates, % expended, actual expenditures versus baseline cashflow, potential claims, and value of executed change orders)
- Change orders – description, status, and outstanding issues
- Claims status – description, status, and outstanding issues
- A one-month look ahead narrative
- Systems design status by major milestone
- Facilities construction status by major milestone
- Procurement status
- Systems procurement/installation status by major milestone
- Integrated testing status by major milestone
- Submittals/deliverables status per the contract terms, and, at least, by major milestone
- Quality assurance/quality control status including test schedule/status, non-conformance status and actions taken, and audits scheduled/completed and significant findings
- Environmental mitigation status including compliance/non-compliance reports, completed mitigation efforts, public complaints, non-compliance issues raised by regulatory/oversight agencies, and hazardous material status
- Construction safety status—including reportable accidents, training, and other relevant safety information
- Construction security status—including any breaches, particularly those resulting in injury to employees, significant losses due to theft, or crimes against the site or surrounding area

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Photos showing recent progress
- Disadvantaged business enterprise status by subcontractor including last payment time and amount, amount paid to date, original subcontract value, and change orders
- Permit application report including the status of those obtained by the grantee and those obtained by the contractor, and permit modifications
- Coordination with other contracts, including meetings and written communications
- Utility work status by major utility
- Extra work
- Status of other activities including significant events, public affairs and Insurance

5.3.9 Record Drawings and Documentation

The contractor should submit all record drawings and documentation in accordance with the contract requirements.

5.3.10 O&M Manuals and Training

The contractor should prepare and submit all O&M manuals and training program documentation and should conduct the actual training programs for the grantee's (or operator's) staff in accordance with the contract requirements. The specifications should address the systems and subsystems for which manuals and training are required, the media for these materials, quantity and schedule, formatting standards, and other detailed requirements.

When the capital project is associated with the extension of an existing fixed guideway system, the new O&M manuals and training must be consistent with existing documentation. The operating managers should be closely involved in any proposed revisions to these manuals.

5.3.11 Testing and Inspection

The contractor should conduct testing and inspection in accordance with the contract requirements. FTA has identified a three-phased inspection and testing system in its [Quality Assurance](#) [Ref. 2-54]. The specifications should address the systems and subsystems for which testing is required, the functionality requirements, factory testing, field testing, integration testing, documentation, test planning, scheduling, procedures, reporting, and staff support requirements.

Inspection requirements should be directly related to the contractor's QA/QC responsibilities as documented in its Quality Plan. See Section 5.2.6.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.3.12 Closeout Activities

Project closeout activities are required (see Circular 5010.1D, [Grant Management Requirements](#) [Ref. 2-29]) by FTA to determine that all responsibilities and work required of the grantee have been accomplished. These include the following milestones and activities:

- O&M training is conducted by the contractor and/or the grantee, as required.
- Substantial completion when the grantee can take beneficial occupancy of the facility. A Certificate of Beneficial Occupancy is issued by the grantee including a punch list of open items for the contractor to complete.
- Record plans or “as-builts” are prepared by the contractor.
- Guaranty and warranty provisions are initiated by the contractor.
- Final Inspection is performed by the grantee, but only after the RE conducts a pre-final inspection and agrees that the work is ready for the grantee to participate in a Final Inspection.
- Turnover of keys to facilities from contractor to grantee.
- Submission of signed contractor affidavits in regards to payment of debts and claims, and release of liens by the contractor to the grantee.
- Final payment is made by the grantee to the contractor.
- A final report is prepared by the contractor and the grantee that includes the final cost, as-built schedule, and lessons learned.
- Final cost report by the grantee.

5.4 Construction Safety

Both FTA and the grantees have a vested interest in the establishment of policies and programs addressing safety, risk management, and Insurance. Careful consideration of these elements will help guard against construction delays, serious injury, extensive costs, and liability considerations that frequently arise in fixed guideway and other transit projects of the size and complexity usually encountered.

NOTE: FTA Circular 5800.1, [Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Project](#) [Ref. 2-46], is a requirement for all Major Capital Project and/or New Starts project grantees, as well as a guide relative to such principles for other transit capital projects. This section is written so as to apply the principles of the Circular across all transit projects. MCP and NS grantees must adhere to the Circular 5800.1 documentation and processing requirements.

The prevention of accidents during execution of a major transit capital project should be a primary concern of all participants; the responsibility for a safe workplace rests with all levels of management and supervision. Accidents cause suffering to those involved and result in project delay and additional expense to grantees and contractors. A low accident rate is a direct result of a carefully planned and implemented safety program that is conscientiously developed and carried out by the grantee Insurance carrier, management and supervisors. Overall responsibility for assuring the development and

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

implementation of a safety program rests with the grantee's project management; the following discussion is offered as general guidance.

5.4.1 Safety Program Management

The safety program for managing any transit construction project should be formulated on the following basic presumptions:

- Management and supervision are charged with the responsibility of preventing the occurrence of incidents or conditions that could lead to occupational injuries or illnesses.
- Safety should never be sacrificed for production and should be considered to be an integral part of risk management, quality control, cost reduction, and job efficiency.
- A good safety record reflects the quality of management, supervision, and the work force.
- The established policy should be to accomplish the work in the safest possible manner consistent with good work practices. Management at every level should be charged with the task of translating this policy into positive actions.
- Contractors with a good safety record on prior projects tend to maintain a good record and run a safe and efficient job on new work. Consequently, a contractor's safety performance track record on prior work could be a factor if pre-qualification of bidders is employed by the grantee.
- Members of the workforce obtain proper safety training before they start assignments on the project. Very often accidents involve or can be attributable to new hires.

The following general provisions should apply:

- The safety program should outline management safety policies and procedures and be in compliance with and be supplemented by all applicable Federal, state, and local safety and health regulations and standards.
- Specific contract and grantee requirements should be stated.
- In case of a conflict between standards or regulations, the stricter requirement should apply.

The grantee's project manager should have full responsibility for executing and implementing a program of employee protection and accident prevention on the project. A responsible safety manager should be designated to administer and supervise the overall project safety program.

- *Safety Manager* – The grantee's designated safety manager should have the authority and ability to enforce established safety requirements and should report directly to the project manager. While the contractors are primarily responsible for safety, the grantee's safety manager is responsible for providing overall safety surveillance and guidance to the contractors and should monitor all contractors' safety programs and safety performance.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- *Project Contractors* – Each contractor should have full responsibility for executing and implementing a program of employee protection and accident prevention that is consistent with the requirements of the overall project safety program. Therefore, contractors may also have a safety manager in addition to the overall safety manager provided by the grantee.

The safety manager or other competent safety personnel and project supervisors should conduct daily inspections of work operations, equipment, storage areas, and facilities. Unsafe acts or unhealthy conditions should be noted and pointed out to the supervisor in charge. Serious or repetitive violations should be documented and transmitted to the contractor's representative for corrective action.

When a condition or practice exists that could reasonably be expected to cause serious physical harm, extensive damage to property or death, it should be the policy of the project manager to cease operation on the portion of the work affected until the hazardous conditions are corrected. Carelessness or disregard for accepted and mandatory safety and health standards should not be tolerated. Contractors should be expected to discipline or terminate employees who violate established rules and regulations. The grantee reserves the right to remove any individuals from the project if they are deemed a safety risk to themselves or others.

5.4.2 Pre-Construction Survey to Identify Potential Hazards

As an element of a sound system safety program, the grantee and experts in construction risk management should conduct a pre-construction survey of both the project rights-of-way and adjacent areas, to identify potential hazards that are unique to the specific project under consideration. The physical existing structures and facilities included in that survey will be identified for monitoring their structural integrity during construction. The approximate frequency and severity of the hazards can provide guidance to the grantee for their resolution or mitigation. The information from these surveys should be used by the grantee in evaluating risk responsibility and response and developing or amending appropriate contract documentation (drawings, specifications, special conditions) as those surveys may require.

5.4.3 Construction Hazard Control

The following safety tools are recommended for consideration during all phases of construction:

- *Certification* – Approval for projects could be contingent on the grantee and other responsible parties providing written documentation, in adherence to its PMP, defining the scope and application of a safety management program.
- *Responsibilities* – In general, the Resident Engineer (RE) for the contract is the individual most closely related to the activities of contractors and other participating organizations and is therefore responsible for ensuring compliance with all aspects of the contract including applicable safety orders.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- *Documentation* – Grantees should be responsible for preparing a Safety Management Plan. It is normal practice for contracts to include safety specifications and procedures patterned after Federal and state occupational safety and health standards. Employers are required by law to provide a safe place of employment. In recognition of the dual role that many safety documents play by also including security requirements, all such plans should have the words “safety” and “security” in their titles, such as a Safety and Security Management Plan, or a Safety and Security Construction Manual.
- *Procedures and Controls* – Contract specifications should describe procedures to be followed in effecting the control and monitoring of a project safety program. As a minimum, the following considerations are recommended:
 - Mandatory safety orientations for each new contractor/subcontractor field employee
 - Hazards analysis
 - Weekly safety meetings
 - Site access control procedures
 - Mandatory contractor safety program
 - Preconstruction safety reviews
 - Inspection of unsafe working conditions
 - Inspection of tools
 - Daily housekeeping
 - Encouraging safety awareness reinforcement awards for safe practices
 - First aid and medical facilities
 - Fire prevention and protection
 - Emergency response procedures and routes posted on site
 - Enforcement of subcontractor programs
 - Sanitation
 - Public protection
 - Protective clothing/equipment
 - Tool box/lunch box meetings
 - Construction equipment operation regular scheduled checklist inspections
 - Employee skill certification
- *Accidents and Emergencies* – Procedures should exist to quickly respond to accidents and emergencies to ensure the safety of personnel and property and employees should be aware of these procedures. The RE, control groups, and contractors must move rapidly following an accident or unsafe incident to isolate the cause and prevent recurrence. In a similar manner, the RE and the contractor should agree on procedures to be followed in the event of an emergency, to include persons to be notified, operational procedures, coordination with public agencies, protection of project and private property, and protection of persons against further harm. Appropriate lists of emergency telephone numbers should be maintained and employees should be aware of where they are posted.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

5.4.4 Employee Orientation and Training

The grantee's safety department or the project's risk manager or Insurance consultant should implement employee orientation and training to achieve the objectives of safety awareness and accident reduction by managing risks and minimizing hazards. Two specific groups of employees need to be addressed – the constructors (probably, but not necessarily, a private contractor) and the transit O&M personnel. When the capital project involves a modification to, or expansion of, an existing transit system or facility, the transit O&M employees should be exposed to the project from the outset. For completely new capital projects, the O&M employees will become involved towards the completion of the project as it approaches integration testing and start-up.

Safety orientation and training should focus on initial awareness and procedure compliance, with periodic updates throughout the project implementation. A continuous process of hazard identification and resolutions should be established as well as a lessons learned/best practices program. Contractors not familiar with fixed guideway transit facilities and their inherent hazards should receive intensive training, and certification, prior to having access to certain parts of the transit system, such as the trackway.

5.4.5 Safety Inspections and Audits

A systematic construction safety program should include periodic safety inspections and audits by a group that is independent of those doing the construction. Inspection and audit findings should be documented and corrective actions promptly implemented to maintain a high degree of jobsite safety.

5.4.6 Accident Reporting and Investigations

Accident reporting and investigations should be accomplished in accordance with Federal (Occupational Safety and Health Administration, OSHA), state and local requirements and the project's construction safety program procedures. These should be documented and analyzed, and corrective actions implemented to address inherent hazards.

5.4.7 Use of Contract Incentives

Several grantees and capital projects have used safety incentives in contracts whereby the contractor can benefit financially by having a good construction safety record. These incentives are usually directly related to the savings in insurance premium that result from a good accident performance rate. The potential for monetary reward provides the incentive for contractors to have a proactive and effective safety program. Even in projects with "wrap up" insurance, i.e., an Owner Controlled Insurance Plan (OCIP) provided by the grantee, the record for each contractor's project performance can be discerned and documented so that it can serve as a strong incentive to them.

5.5 Construction Security

The Construction phase has historically not paid as much attention to security as to safety. In recent years, grantees have been required to take a more active role in determining both the safety and security requirements that contractors must adhere to, but, because security had previously received little attention, the change has been more noticeable in this area. The changing requirements also reflect the importance the Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP) places on establishing more defined safety and security roles of grantees during the Construction phase of a project.

A number of documents specific to construction should be developed early in the project to assure that project managers are aware of site-specific issues. In addition to the recommended Construction Safety and Security Manual (CSSM), during construction a project should require that each contractor submit a Contractor Safety and Security Plan (CSSP) that explains how the contractor will meet or exceed the safety/security requirements issued as part of the bidding process.

Security breaches can have a major impact on a construction project. The security of the contractor's employees, those in the area surrounding the construction site, and the site itself may cause delays to a project, add expenses, and create the impression in the minds of area residents that the transit system is supporting an eyesore or unsafe location. A construction site that is secure—where crimes do not occur or that does not add visible blight to the neighborhood—will minimize danger and will help to maintain good public relations for the grantee's agency. Overall responsibility for assuring that the contractor develops and implements a security program rests with the grantee's project management, so the grantee must assure that it retains the authority to have input into security arrangements.

5.5.1 Security Program Management

Similar to the safety program, the security program for a construction project should be formulated on the following basic assumptions:

- Management and supervision are charged with the responsibility of preventing the occurrence of security breaches that could lead to injuries at the site or to losses of equipment or materials.
- Security should be considered an integral part of risk management, quality control, cost reduction, and job efficiency. Workers who are fearful of becoming crime victims will work with neither high morale nor peak efficiency.
- Maintaining a crime-free construction site reflects the quality of management, supervision, and the work force and will assist the grantee in maintaining good relationships with the surrounding community.

To assure that these provisions are met, the grantee must assure that someone in its project organization has responsibility for overseeing the contractors' security program. In large grantee organizations, where there is an active police or security department,

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

the manager of this department should play an active role in this function. In smaller organizations, this role may pass to the safety manager. In such cases, though, the safety manager must know that this is part of his/her responsibilities to assure that the contractors' security program(s) will receive proper oversight.

The contractor may have a division of labor similar to the grantee. For very large projects that are located in high-traffic or high-vulnerability areas, the contractor might be required by the grantee to employ a specific security manager in addition to its safety manager. On smaller contracts, it is likely that the safety manager will also take on the security responsibilities. In such instances, the grantee must assure that its own and the contractors' safety managers are aware of these responsibilities and have the training and knowledge to make security decisions or must assure that relevant consultants or subcontractors are employed who are able to perform these functions.

Site security personnel and those on the grantee staff who will provide guidance and have responsibility for assuring that a security program is in place should be aware of the findings of the Threat and Vulnerability Analysis (TVA) to assist in assessing vulnerabilities and should have familiarity with principles of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED), Situational Crime Prevention (SCP), and the basic principles of the use of barriers, CCTV, and access/exit control to maintain site security.

The security manager or individual designated with security responsibility should conduct periodic inspections of working areas, equipment, storage areas, and facilities and should assure that property inventory-control mechanisms exist and that all deliveries, visitors, etc., are properly logged in and out. The grantee's police/security manager should be assured unlimited access to the work site to assess whether security plans are being adhered to and should have the authority to order corrective action if the plans are not being followed.

5.5.2 Construction Safety and Security Manual

The most effective way to assure that its security (as well as safety) requirements are defined for contractors is for the grantee to develop a Construction Safety and Security Manual (CSSM). This document should outline the grantee's security policies and procedures and should be included in all bidding documents to assure that contractors are aware of the potential costs of maintaining a certain level of protection and factor these into their bids. The CSSM should indicate the level of safety and security the grantee requires to be maintained at sites. It should describe the procedures and controls for assuring these requirements are met and monitored by grantee personnel or designated safety and security consultants who, in turn, report to grantee personnel. The information contained in the section above on safety details what should be discussed in the safety procedures and controls. In addition to these, security-specific sections of the SSCM should discuss and contain policies for:

- Site access control procedures for employees and, visitors (including inspectors), including log in/log out procedures and how records of access will be maintained

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Procedures for controlling delivery vehicles, including log in/log out procedures, who is designated to physically check waybills and delivery vehicles entering and exiting, and how the records of access will be maintained
- Inspection of improperly secured work areas, and making decisions on the need for/use of physical barriers and/or uniformed security personnel to maintain access and/or inventory security
- Security awareness training, including crime reporting policies (whether to grantee or local police) and location of emergency telephone numbers and emergency first aid supplies
- Vehicular and pedestrian traffic control in and around the construction site and immediate area.

5.5.3 Construction Breach Control

Details for the site protection of specific areas of construction should be based on a TVA that has previously identified threats unique to any portion of the project, including its location and any controversies surrounding it.

5.5.4 Employee Orientation and Training

All employees, but especially those assigned to a location determined to have a high vulnerability index, should be made aware of security policies through orientation and training and should also be aware of negative consequences related to violating these policies. They should be particularly aware of access/egress policies, sign-in policies, requirements to park in designated areas, and the need to report any security breaches to supervisory staff. They should also be made aware that illegal activity on their part, particularly involving drugs or thefts, will result in arrest and prosecution.

5.5.5 Breach and Crime Reporting and Investigations

All employees assigned to a construction site must be aware of the breach and crime reporting policies established and must be aware that either the grantee's police or local police retain the authority to investigate breaches and crimes that occur on the site. A clearly-worded police report form should be established to indicate how soon after a breach or crime has been detected that it must be reported to supervisors, to whom and in what time period supervisors must report the incident to the grantee and local police, and what policies have been established if an actual crime scene must be delineated.

5.6 Insurance

The concept of Insurance protection should be considered carefully and established early in the project's planning and development stage. This area of management requires expert knowledge, and unless a staff of such a caliber is already employed, outside consultants should be hired to design and implement a program and be employed until staff is hired and experienced enough to assume such responsibilities.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

Although cost-effectiveness should be the paramount goal of any program, the means of achieving this goal require careful analysis.

The grantee has two primary alternatives for Insurance protection -- conventional and coordinated, or wrap-up. The latter approach has been gaining popularity for larger projects, but has been criticized for not providing strong incentives for contractor safety performance. The Safety Awareness Program associated with numerous projects around the country can be investigated and adopted/adapted to overcome this limitation by sharing reduced grantee insurance cost with contractors, based on their safety performance. Thus, contractors have a monetary incentive to maintain an effective safety program.

5.6.1 Conventional Contractor Controlled Insurance Program

With the conventional Insurance approach, each contractor and subcontractor arranges a separate program of insurance in accordance with grantee specifications. Such an approach may not be cost-effective for any of the following reasons:

- Lack of economy in volume purchase
- Lack of financial security (stability) of marginal contractors
- Specifications that are the minimum necessary to protect the grantee
- The difficulty of administering many individual policies with varying limits of liability subject to different terms and expiration dates
- Redundant charges by contractors (e.g., general and administrative overhead and profit)
- Project delay from cross litigation by various Insurance companies over claim payments
- Contractor delay or failure to collect claims from substandard Insurance companies (the grantee may be required to make dollar advances to keep contractors solvent)

5.6.2 Coordinated (Owner Controlled or Wrap Up) Insurance Program

An alternative to conventional Insurance is an owner-(grantee)-designed and owner-controlled program known as a coordinated insurance program (OCIP, as described previously and discussed below) or "wrap-up" insurance. OCIP has its advantages and disadvantages, some of which are enumerated here. The advantages of an owner-controlled program are that:

- The owner, not the contractor, negotiates policy terms and costs, eliminating redundant charges for expense and profit items.
- The administrative burden of maintaining records on contractor compliance with contract specifications for Insurance is eliminated. (All contractors have the same coverage limits with set expiration dates of policies dependent on the contract's duration.)
- The safety and loss control programs are uniform.
- Cross litigation is eliminated.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE PROCUREMENT AND CONSTRUCTION PHASES

- Claim handling is uniform.
- Small and minority contractor participation in the project is not excluded because Insurance is available.
- Insurance costs are confined solely to the project through self-rating.
- Cash flow advantages become available to the owner.

Its disadvantages are:

- Insurance costs are highlighted in one large package.
- The owner's staff may not be adequately trained or available to handle a program.
- The contractor should be fully responsible for all costs related to its performance.
- The contractor may be better able to manage its own Insurance and safety programs (it takes the consequences if it is wrong and relieves the owner of this burden).
- Management of the risk management program is costly.
- Insurance costs are not subject to as many competitive forces.

The types of Insurance usually placed in an owner-controlled program are workers' compensation; comprehensive general liability, including products and completed operations; railroad protective liability; and builder's risk. This coverage applies to the owner and all contractors involved in the project, with the exception of hauling contractors (unless activities are exclusive to the project) and supply contractors. Surety bonds are the responsibility of each contractor. However, when an owner-controlled program exists, it is possible to develop a small- and minority-contractor surety bond program with insurance companies to enhance the probability of participation by these contractors. For a comparison on types of insurance, see:

☞ *"Wrap-Ups: How to Consolidate Construction Insurance and Gain Control, Cost Savings and Improved Community Relations"* [Ref. 5-3].

5.6.3 Partner Controlled Insurance

As an alternative approach to owner-controlled Insurance, partner controlled insurance is designed to provide project-related insurance to all project participants. The insurance, however, is controlled by a consortium representing both the grantee and the contractors, with appropriate incentive for safe construction by all project participants.

CHAPTER 6 – MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

6.1 Introduction

The Testing and Start-up Phase provides the link between the Procurement/ Construction and Revenue Service phases for fixed guideway projects, though principles may be applicable to bus facilities and specialized equipment purchases. The purpose of this phase is to determine acceptability of the newly-constructed or modernized transit system in preparation for revenue operations. Where applicable, this is often referred to as the Rail Activation Phase. Acceptance follows verification that the project meets the contractual specifications by conducting system, performance, and acceptance tests. After construction has been certified complete, the Testing and Start-Up Phase begins with qualification, acceptance, and performance testing as well as integrated testing. In addition, a period of pre-revenue service is required to familiarize the grantee (or contractor) management and O&M personnel with the new system prior to beginning, resuming, or extending revenue service. Issues of safety and security certification, procedures development, training, emergency preparedness, and customer interface are addressed during this phase. Discussion is oriented to the requirements of a fixed guideway system that serves the public. Other transit capital projects should also follow this guidance, recognizing that their “customers” may be the transit agency’s own employees, e.g., a maintenance facility construction or rehabilitation.

Although testing and start-up is the bridge between construction and revenue service, planning for each must begin during design. The requirements for system, performance, and integration testing, as-built drawings, O&M manuals, training, rules and procedures (if not agency developed), acceptance, and warranty requirements must be specified in the implementation contracts. The contractor’s responsibilities and participation requirements during testing and start-up need to be clearly described in the contract. This phase may overlap with the Procurement/ Construction phase in projects that are designed to open in segments, or Design-Build projects since component, subsystem, and installation verification tests are performed while construction continues on other segments.

As a supplement to the management principles presented in Chapter 3, this chapter contains project management guidelines specifically related to the Testing and Start-up Phase of a transit construction project.

For Major Capital Projects (MCP), a formal Rail Activation Plan is the best course for grantees to follow. This Plan should identify the management organization and responsibilities for testing and start-up. Typically, there is established a Rail Activation Committee (RAC), chaired by a Rail Activation Manager (RAM), or similarly named committee and chairperson. The RAC should consist of grantee technical, construction, and operational personnel, as well as stakeholder, responder, consultant, and

contractor personnel as appropriate based on their anticipated role in rail activation. Section 6.4 discusses the possible organization of the RAC to manage the rail activation process.

6.2 Test Program Planning

An element of the PMP is test program planning. Planning should:

- Assure that all contractually required tests are fully specified in the contract documents, including identification of those that must be witnessed by the agency.
- Clearly identify any contractor role in developing the System Integration Test Plan (SITP) and test procedures.
- Establish the management of and process for conducting, monitoring, and coordinating the test program.
- Define the test prerequisites and test objectives.
- Define the system integration test organization and specify its authority and responsibilities.
- Describe the administrative requirements of the test program.

The SITP should be developed to ensure that management and technical resources are applied in a coherent and organized manner to achieve the testing objectives. If there is overlap between the construction and testing phases and if it is intended that contractor personnel, under supervision of agency test managers, are to perform any SIT activities, the SITP and the contract specifications should both include language to define the contractor's support role in SIT.

The test program should include the following elements:

- *Identification and definition of contractual test requirements* – Contract specifications should define those tests necessary to ensure that equipment and constructed elements meet design and performance requirements. These are contractual tests done during the Construction phase that must be successfully completed prior to safety and security certification of construction or system acceptance. These are prerequisite to SI Tests done during the Testing and Start-Up Phase.
- *Identification of system integration tests* – SITs must be performed after contractually required tests are completed on all elements that must be successfully integrated for safe and secure operation. The System Integration Test Plan should identify all planned system integration tests to be performed to ensure that necessary compatibility has been achieved among all elements of the new system and with the existing system.
- *Establishment of a test program administration system* – The SITP should identify the organization that will identify the required SITs, establish pre-requisite requirements, develop the test procedures, schedule and conduct the SITs, complete the test reports, establish documentation requirements, and maintain

the test documentation. Administration of the test program on larger projects will be a major undertaking and would best be managed through computerization, using a system to monitor, control, document, and report on program status. A test numbering system should be established to assist in the administration and retrieval of testing documents.

- *Development of testing sequence and schedules* – A test schedule should be included in the SITP and coordinated with the overall project schedule. The initial test schedule, developed when planning SIT during design, should be updated regularly during the Construction/Procurement and Testing and Start-Up phases of the project. A System Integration Test Committee (SITC), or similar test management team, should be initially identified in the project's SSMP, and then detailed in the SITP. In many projects, the SITC is one of the subcommittees of an overall Rail Activation Committee (RAC), or similar overarching organization that begins functioning during the mid-construction phase and has fully responsibility for coordinating SIT, PRO and other Start-Up requirements, and the completion of Safety and Security Certification of the project. The SITC, or similar group, should manage the test program. A designated grantee manager should chair the SITC. Each SIT should be performed by a test engineer (either the SITC Chair or reporting to the Chair), assisted as appropriate by contractor, consultants and grantee staff.

6.3 Test Program Elements

6.3.1 Contractually Required Testing

Contractually required testing should begin during the Construction/Procurement Phase and continue through the end of construction. On projects that are completed in segments, the Testing and Start-Up Phase may be active in a segment that has completed construction and all contractually required tests, while construction and contractually required testing is ongoing in other segments. All contractually required testing must be completed in a segment before that segment can enter the Testing and Start-Up Phase. Contractually required tests are in the following categories:

- *Qualification Tests* – The contractor at the component and subsystem levels should conduct in the factory design qualification tests and analysis during contractor engineering to demonstrate compliance to the specifications.
- *Production Verification Tests* – The contractor at the component and subsystem levels conducts production verification during production in the shop to ensure that the product performs in accordance with design.
- *Construction Inspection Tests* – The contractor at the component and subsystem levels conducts construction inspection tests in the field to ensure that the product was installed and performs in accordance with design.

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- *Installation and Verification Tests* – The contractor at the subsystem level conducts installation and verification tests to ensure proper installation.
- *Acceptance Tests* – The grantee or grantee’s representatives conducts acceptance tests at the system level to verify that all delivered and installed equipment performs as specified.
- *Demonstration Tests (Post Construction)* – The grantee, grantee representative, or contractor conducts demonstration tests to demonstrate the performance and reliability of the system equipment in the Testing and Start-up and Revenue Service phases. An Incident Evaluation Committee, or similar identified group, chaired by the test engineer, evaluates the relevance of all failures during the demonstration test program (which may extend many months into operations) and identifies corrective action to be taken where and when necessary.

Contractors should be required by contract to prepare plans and procedures for tests they are contractually responsible for performing. The contractor should be required to submit the test plans and procedures for review and approval. A grantee representative (agency staff or supervised consultant) should perform a thorough review of the test plans and indicate whether they are acceptable before authorizing the contractor to proceed with testing. The contractor should be required to prepare test results and reports for review by grantee representatives. The grantee representative’s review should result in providing the contractor with written approval or rejection of the tested component or subsystem.

Grantee representatives should develop plans, procedures, and reports for acceptance and demonstration tests. Tests should be scheduled, conducted, and documented in accordance with the approved schedules, plans, and procedures and should be monitored by grantee representatives. Formal reports on the status of the test program should be issued not less than monthly to project management.

Requirements for testing of materials should be defined in the construction contract for both construction materials and materials used in the fabrication of equipment. In addition, testing of products for which fabricators submit material certificates or certificates of compliance should be conducted on a random basis or when the validity of the materials or products, or documentation is questionable. Contract-specific inspection and test plans should identify the products or materials that require testing.

6.3.2 System Integration Testing

System integration testing should be conducted upon completion of the contractually required acceptance tests. The system integration testing should be performed to demonstrate the ability of various subsystems and facilities to work together as a system and for the new or modernized system to function with an existing system. System integration testing should be performed by the grantee's staff with support, as

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

required, from consultants. The test engineer should administer and be responsible for the performance of the tests.

Each system integration test should be documented in a formal report prepared by the grantee representatives who conducted the test. The overarching Rail Activation Committee, or similar group that oversees the SITC, should independently review all test reports and provide final approval and readiness for that SIT to be safety and security certified. The Safety and Security Certification Committee (SSCC) should review and sign acceptance of all SIT procedures for elements that affect system safety or security to ensure that successful completion of the SIT will assure that identified hazards and vulnerabilities have been controlled or eliminated. Contract and Procurement documents should contain language to require equipment suppliers to participate in tests of their equipment so that problems can be expeditiously identified and corrected. Equipment changes resulting from systems testing should be subjected to the configuration management procedures defined for the project.

6.3.3 Operational Tests

Many SITs are required to interface train operation with constructed and installed systems. These SITs are performed after the individual constructed elements and systems are tested to assure they will safely and securely support train traffic at reduced speed under test conditions. Operational tests include:

- *Clearance tests* – verification that trains adequately clear fixed objects, and other trains, at all operational speeds
- *Train braking tests* – verification of car/train stopping distance in every possible situation
- *Signals tests* – verification that signals operate as expected in every possible situation and that sight distance for operators is adequate
- *Power tests* – verification that substations supply the voltage and current as expected in every situation including when maximum train consists accelerate simultaneously from identified locations; verify that trains operate satisfactorily when receiving the minimum specified voltage
- *Power (car) tests* – verification that a car/train still operates properly when the voltage falls to its minimum
- *Speed tests* – verification that train ride quality is acceptable at all speeds up to the maximum allowable; verification that there is good OCS or third rail contact with train pick-up at all speeds; verification that trains operate satisfactorily through track switches at maximum allowed speeds, over all moves
- *Wheelchair devices* – verification that devices interface with the cars properly

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- *Fare collection systems* – verification that devices collect and record fares properly; that their placement is conducive to safety and security for patrons and for staff or others who must service the equipment
- *Tests of entry/exit systems* – verification that elevators and escalators meet code requirements, that stair banisters, pitch, etc., meet code requirements, and that safety and weather-related equipment been properly installed. If the system is not barrier-free, verify that turnstiles and similar equipment operate properly and are tested for exiting capabilities in the event of a location emergency
- *Tests of emergency equipment and systems* – verification that specified emergency equipment and systems for ventilation and exhaust, electricity generation, water removal, fire detection and suppression, intrusion detection, detection of weapons of mass destruction (WMD), communications, and lighting are installed and properly operating.

6.4 Management of Rail Activation

Management of Rail Activation should be established in the late design or early construction phase and modified, as required, based on experience as the project progresses. The grantee should create a Rail Activation Committee (RAC), or similarly named group comprised of grantee technical, construction, and operational personnel, as well as stakeholder, responder, consultant, and contractor personnel, as appropriate, based on their anticipated role in rail activation. The following are some individuals that should be considered for membership or as invited guests welcome to observe and offer suggestions:

- Rail Activation Manager (chair)
- Safety and Security Certification Manager
- System Integration Test Manager
- Pre-Revenue Operations Manager
- Operations Director
- Transportation Manager
- Maintenance Manager
- Control Center Manager
- Training Manager
- System Safety Director (includes Fire and Life Safety Committee)
- System Security Director (or Police or Security Chief)—in small systems, this may be the System Safety Director
- Project Manager
- Public Relations Manager
- Design Manager
- Construction Manager
- Fire Department Representative (Invited Guest)
- Police Department Representative (Invited Guest)
- EMS Representative (Invited Guest)

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- SSOA Representative (Invited Guest)
- FTA/PMOC Representative (Invited Guest)
- FRA Representative (Invited Guest) – if project appropriate

Under the RAC, three subcommittees should be formed and chaired by appropriate grantee managers who are RAC members. They should be identified similar to Safety and Security Certification Committee (SSCC), System Integration Testing Committee (SITC), and Pre-Revenue Operations Committee (PROC).

The SSCC should be an extension of the SSCC developed early in the design phase and continuing through construction phase to oversee the safety and security of the design program and safety and security design and construction. The SSCC will become a subcommittee of RAC as the project moves into the Testing and Start-Up Phase, at which time its emphasis will be on overseeing and safety and security certifying all system integration testing and emergency drills, personnel training, development of procedures and operating rules, other certifiable contractor or agency deliverables identified, and Pre-Revenue Operations.

The SITC should be formed in the late design or early construction phase to develop the System Integration Test Plan to identify all SITs and Emergency Drills that will have to be performed, establish how the tests and drills will be managed and conducted, write the test and drill procedures, develop the test and drill schedule as a coordinated document with the later construction completion schedule, and produce the completed SIT and Drill reports. After these are approved by the RAC, they will be recommended to the SSCC as ready for safety and security certification. Typically, for a new rail operation, the period of SIT should be planned for a minimum of 12 to 16 weeks. For an extension to an existing system, it should be planned for a minimum of 8 to 12 weeks. If the rail system is completed in segments, the period of SIT after completion of the last segment may be significantly reduced to reflect SITs that were done in segments as they were completed.

The PROC should be formed early in the construction phase to begin the work of identifying all contract deliverables needed for training and operation, as well as those needed for training to prepare for revenue operation and for continuing operations. The PROC would develop the detailed Pre-Revenue Operation Plan (PROP) that would provide the day-by-day final live training and simulation of revenue service, including response to perturbed conditions and simulated emergencies that would immediately follow the conclusion of SIT. The PROC would identify all remaining Start-Up certifiable items and, after being satisfied that they are fully complete and acceptable, recommend to the RAC that they be accepted. After these are approved by the RAC, they will be recommended to the SSCC as ready for safety and security certification. Typically, for a new rail operation, the period of pre-revenue operations should be planned for a minimum of 6 to 8 weeks. For an extension to an existing system, it should be planned for a minimum of 3 to 4 weeks. If the rail system is completed in segments, the period of pre-revenue operations after completion of the last segment may be slightly reduced

to reflect operational training and simulated emergencies done during limited segmental pre-revenue operations.

6.4.1 Agreements

Agreements need to be negotiated with all affected jurisdictions and agencies that have jurisdiction over the operation of the transportation system. These organizations and their requirements should be identified earlier in the project development process to assure that their requirements are accommodated, to the extent possible, in the design and construction phases. Prior to initiating testing and pre-revenue service, additional required agreements could relate to the following:

- Utilities that directly support the improvement
- Operating permits from the local municipality
- Police, fire, emergency medical, and other emergency response liaisons
- Shared R/W owners, e.g., streets, highways, railroads, utilities
- Local traffic management interfaces (especially with light rail)
- Adjacent major ridership generators, e.g., university, airport, stadium, and other developments (especially with shared stations)

6.4.2 Establishment/Modification of Operating Organization

The grantee must establish an organization to perform or oversee the management, operations, maintenance, and supporting functions required for the operation of the transit capital project. If housed in the same organization responsible for implementing the project, a transition will be required from the organization used to direct and oversee the project development to a more operations-oriented organization. In larger organizations, separate capital project and O&M functions can continually co-exist.

6.4.3 Procedures, Rulebooks, and Manuals

The transit agency should develop or modify Operations and maintenance procedures and rulebooks to address all areas affected by the transit capital improvement. These O&M manuals, procedures, and rulebooks should be developed under management of the PROC and be approved by appropriate operations and maintenance managers and the RAC, then safety and security certified by the SSCC before turn over to the operating organization at completion of the Testing and Start-up Phase. All procedures, rulebooks, and manuals should be living documents that will be revised to incorporate all lessons learned from start-up, as well as those learned during continuing operation.

6.4.4 Recruitment of Personnel

The operating agency must assess the labor required to operate and maintain the transit capital improvement project and recruit personnel with the skills required in time to support the testing and start-up phases, as well as revenue service phases. This will be directly related to the operating plan developed in conjunction with the capital improvement's implementation. Vehicle maintenance requirements will be a function of fleet utilization and established inspection and maintenance standards. Depending on

labor contracts, local economic conditions, and a variety of other factors, the operating agency should carefully plan when recruitment should begin to assure that there is sufficient time to screen and train employees. The hiring schedule may vary for different categories of employees, again depending on availability of personnel and training requirements.

6.4.5 Training

Plans for a comprehensive training program for all O&M personnel should be part of the PRO and should be integrated with the personnel recruitment plan. Training may be supplied by contractors, the agency, or by both. Training should begin in the late construction phase and be completed during the start-up period. A major aspect of pre-revenue operations is the hands-on training of all O&M personnel.

For a new rail service, rail transportation training should be developed for all operators, supervisors, and dispatchers. Maintenance training should be provided for the following areas:

- Electrical systems
- Signal systems
- Track
- Shop equipment
- Revenue vehicles
- Fare collection systems
- Vertical transportation systems (escalators and elevators)
- Normal and emergency communications systems, including all landline, portable, and emergency telephone or text-based systems used by operators and other employees
- Security systems, including surveillance, recording, intrusion detection, patron emergency telephones, parking control, and similar electronic systems
- Non-revenue vehicles

The proficiency of all employees receiving training should be tested and verified, and all training should be fully documented in each employee's file. In addition, there may be a requirement for local certification for certain categories of employees.

6.4.6 Pre-Revenue Operations

System integration testing (SIT) immediately follows "substantial completion" of construction. Pre-Revenue Operations (PRO) immediately follows SIT. PRO should be designed to mimic revenue operations and maintenance activities, except that passengers will not be carried. It should be noted that while Emergency Drills are performed during SIT, many transit agencies find it valuable to repeat some drills, either fully or in reduced scope, during PRO as additional training for both agency and responder personnel. The following items may be considered in the evaluation of pre-revenue operations:

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- Notification procedures (internally and to external emergency agencies such as police, fire, and emergency medical providers)
- Control center response
- Transportation supervisory response
- Maintenance response
- Emergency responder response
- Traction power sectionalization
- Loss of signals and/or communications
- Accident investigation procedures
- Single-tracking performance
- Simulated bus substitution
- Train evacuation (in stations and along the right-of-way)
- Station or other facility evacuation
- Assumption of authority
- Command post protocols (internally and with external responders)
- Rescue trains
- Simulated public notification
- “On the line” vehicle troubleshooting
- Simulated emergency training through a combination of tabletop exercises and full-scale drills in the field

6.5 Safety Oversight

Safety oversight of transit is provided as follows:

- The FTA requires states to designate an agency to oversee the safety of any fixed guideway transit (non-commuter rail) system within the state. This is referred to as the State Safety Oversight Agency (SSOA).
- The Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) has safety jurisdiction over transit operating on the general railway system (commuter rail).
- In certain circumstances, a waiver from FRA safety oversight may have to be negotiated to permit FTA oversight of transit fixed guideway operations that share the right-of-way with the general railway system, e.g., light rail operating with temporal separation from freight service.
- Except for a few Federal (e.g., Federal Motor Carrier Safety Standards (FMCSS) and FTA bus testing) requirements related to bus vehicles and Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) and FTA Drug and Alcohol regulations related to bus operations, bus safety oversight is limited to a variety of different state requirements. In general, there is little oversight related to the safety of bus capital projects. However, grantees should develop programs similar to those outlined in this Guideline; if the grantee also operates a fixed guideway, following programs designed for that portion of the transit system will help to assure that safety oversight is provided for.

State Safety Oversight (SSO) requires the SSOA to prepare System Safety Program Standards (SSPS) that are governed by FTA requirements that include:

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- Transit agency preparation and implementation of a System Safety Program Plan (SSPP) and a System Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan (SEPP), which has replaced the document what was previously known as the System Security Plan (SSP)
- Safety review of fixed guideway transit systems at least every three years
- Accident and incident investigation procedures
- Internal safety audit process
- Designation of an unacceptable hazardous condition, if warranted
- Developing and reporting on a corrective action program
- Safety monitoring
- Safety reporting

For additional information, consult:

☞ [Implementation Guidelines for 49 CFR Part 659](#) [Ref.2-49].

6.6 Security Oversight

Although FTA's specific oversight of security operations is newer and somewhat less defined than its role in safety oversight, there are many parallels between the two. For additional information, grantees should consult both:

☞ [Implementation Guidelines for 49 CFR Part 659](#) [Ref. 2-49], and

☞ [The Public Transportation System Security and Emergency Preparedness Planning Guide](#) [Ref. 2-53]

6.7 Safety and Security Certification

Safety and Security Certification of the project by the grantee is required. The SSOA may oversee the Safety and Security Certification process from design through testing and start-up, and conduct a pre-revenue service assessment prior to the initiation of revenue service. In other cases, the SSOA may allow the grantee to self certify the project as ready for revenue operations. In either case, a detailed Safety and Security Certification Plan must be developed and followed.

For additional information, consult:

☞ [Handbook for Transit Safety and Security Certification](#) [Ref. 2-47].

Safety and Security Certification (SSC) is a process by which an agency self-certifies satisfactory compliance with a formal list of safety and security requirements of a transit capital project. Note that the word "safety" is used to deal with hazards (due to unintentional acts) and "security" to deal with vulnerabilities (due to intentional acts). The SSC program typically encompasses the following three categories:

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

- *Systemwide Elements* – May include the passenger vehicles, catenary, traction power, train control, voice and data communications, closed circuit television (CCTV) or other surveillance systems, grade crossing and traffic control, intrusion detection systems, central instrument houses, track, Fare Collection systems, supervisory control, fire protection and suppression systems, and auxiliary vehicles and equipment.
- *Fixed Facilities* – May include stations and shelter stops, pedestrian bridges, yards and shops, structures, and the control center. Equipment installed in stations or shelter stops such as heating ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems, escalators, and elevators is also considered part of the facility.
- *Plans, Procedures, and Training* – May include items such as emergency preparedness plans, emergency evacuation routes, security plans and procedures, training programs, rulebooks, and standard operating procedures.

When properly scoped, the SSC program will:

- During design phases of a project
 - Develop, document, and communicate safety and security criteria to guide design, engineering, and specification for the transit project.
 - Identify safety and security critical issues and develop practical and cost-effective requirements to support their resolution.
 - Use hazard and vulnerability analyses to evaluate the impact of all deviations introduced into the system in the form of engineering change proposals, construction change orders, work-arounds, and other temporary measures prior to the initiation of revenue service.
 - Develop management mechanisms to track and control the incorporation of safety and security into the transit project.
 - Identify certifiable items
 - Develop safety and security design criteria, including, possibly, a formal document that describes and lists the criteria
 - Develop and complete design criteria conformance checklist(s)
 - Perform construction specification conformance
 - Identify additional safety and security test requirements
- During the Procurement/Construction phase
 - Assure that safety and security requirements are adhered to at construction sites and that designated grantee personnel periodically check to assure continued compliance
 - Perform testing and validation in support of safety and security certification
- During the Testing and Start-Up Phase
 - Oversee management of integration tests for safety and security certification
 - Oversee management of pre-revenue operations safety and security certification
 - Verify operational readiness
 - Conduct final determination of project readiness and issue the final Safety and Security Certification Verification Report

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

While efforts toward final safety and security certification should begin early in the project development process to influence design to mitigate hazards, threats, and vulnerabilities, this effort will intensify during later phases of the project, especially during Construction and Testing and Start-up. The safety and security certification process should be guided by the Safety and Security Certification Checklist and should be overseen by the Safety and Security Certification Review Committee (SSCRC). This committee will most frequently be comprised of the following:

- System Safety Certification Manager (Chair)
- Senior Safety Manager
- Senior Security Manager
- Engineering Manager or General Engineering Consultant (GEC)
- Senior Operations Manager
- Senior Maintenance Manager
- Hazards and Vulnerability Experts, as required

The SSCRC should be supported by the grantee staff and consultants involved in managing the implementation of the project, in addition to the following:

- *Fire-Life Safety Committee (FLSC)* – Serves as a liaison between the grantee, fire jurisdictions, and emergency response agencies. The FLSC reviews standards and safety-related designs and tests to verify fire-life safety code and regulatory compliance. In addition, the FLSC addresses preparedness issues and reviews variances.
- *System Change and Operations Review Committee (SCORC) or equivalent* – Serves as a liaison to the grantee's O&M functions and all departments related to operations planning, rules and procedures, training, and pre-revenue service; reviews and approves changes to the system and fixed facilities that impact O&M.

The grantee's chief executive should receive, review, and accept the SSCVR and sign the Safety and Security Certification certificate for the project and then forward both to the SSOA.

6.8 Emergency Preparedness

The transit agency should establish strong ties with emergency response agencies and develop resources to provide for mutual assistance in support of transit emergencies. This is a two-way process. Just as the transit agency expects area emergency responders to be available when needed, the transit agency must be prepared to provide its resources to respond to community emergencies. Emergency preparedness requires working with local emergency management groups to develop procedures and contingency plans. As part of the start-up of a new transit project, there should be specific plans developed to address the site-specific nature of the capital project. Prior to revenue operations, tabletop exercises and specific field drills should be performed

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

depending on the nature and scope of the project. Especially if two drills are warranted, one should be a tabletop exercise and one an on-site drill to simulate an emergency situation. The goal of the drills is to validate the emergency coordination between emergency personnel and grantee emergency procedures.

Examples of emergency readiness drills include the following simulations:

- Explosive device found on the system, whether detonated or not
- Fire and smoke on a railcar involving patron evacuation
- Fire, smoke, or other emergency condition in a station
- Grade crossing collision with injuries
- Underground toxic chemical release
- Patron evacuation on aerial structures and in tunnels
- Derailment

Important aspects related to an emergency drill include:

- Defining the roles and responsibilities of the people involved
- Having observers to critique the drill
- Having a drill debriefing to obtain feedback
- Producing a drill summary and using it as the basis of an after-action report and meeting attended by as many of the drill participants as possible
- Revising policies, procedures, training, etc., based on problems or inadequacies discovered as a result of the drill and properly recording and circulating the changes made
- Closing out the drill as a certification item through safety and security certification documentation
- Involving as many employees as possible, including non-operating staff who may become involved in field situations if an actual emergency were to occur; non-operating personnel should act the roles of injured patrons, bystanders, etc., to give them a realistic idea of what happens during a system emergency and how O&M, safety, and security personnel are expected to interact with outside agencies, patrons, bystanders, and the media

Many grantees videotape their drills to be used during after-action meetings and as a training aid, particularly for employees who did not attend the drill or were hired after the drill was conducted.

Emergency Drills are specified and procedures contained in the SITP. They are performed during the SIT period to assure that agency and responder personnel are trained and capable of responding to an emergency should it occur during PRO. Emergency Drills are certifiable items. As indicated above, they are often repeated to provide additional training during PRO.

6.9 Public Relations and Marketing

Throughout the capital project development process, there should be public outreach and an active public information program. Where the project directly relates to transit

MANAGING THE PROJECT DURING THE TESTING AND START-UP PHASES

customers, especially for new or expanded service, this should include an intensive marketing campaign to encourage the public to utilize the new and/or improved service. The campaign should include specific information on how to use the new service including reoriented feeder bus service and park-and-ride facilities.

Particularly if the transit system is new or was originally met with negative public comments, the ease and safety of use should be stressed since studies have shown that communities that were without public transit are often apprehensive of how the system may alter their neighborhood's cohesiveness. Public information campaigns should include schools, senior centers, and other local institutions that might also draw on the good will of community leaders and local elected officials.

A proactive public information program will include schools, senior centers, hospitals, and other public facilities that can be expected to encounter the transit system. Operation Lifesaver and other safety programs should be age-specific, particularly in areas where transit is new and where the tracks may traverse areas where free movement will not be curtailed.

6.10 Initial Revenue Service

Project management concerns typically end at the conclusion of the Testing and Start-up Phase, except for the management of warrantee claims or the completion of "work-arounds" and removal of restrictions that may have been put in place to allow safe and secure revenue service while some non-client elements are brought into compliance with requirements. The Rail Activation Committee will remain active past the initiation of revenue operations solely to see satisfactory resolution of all work-arounds and removal of all operating restrictions.

The grantee should organize and pay close attention to the following during the Revenue Service phase to maintain a high level of system performance:

- A continuous quality improvement or lessons learned program
- A configuration management and change control process
- A "state of good repair" program within the framework of the department(s) responsible for facilities and vehicle maintenance.
- A system capital replacement and modernization replacement fund – to obtain and install facilities, equipment, accessories, or appurtenances that are necessary to maintain the system's capacity and performance for which each was designed and constructed/procured.

REFERENCES

Chapter 2

- 2-1. The Transportation Planning Process: Key Issues. http://www.planning.dot.gov/documents/briefingbook/bbook_07.pdf
- 2-2. Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient, Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU). <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/safetealu/>
- 2-3. Guidance for Small Starts and Very Small Starts. http://www.fta.dot.gov/12304_222.html
- 2-4. Project Construction Grant Agreement (PCGA). [http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/FFGA_Fact_Sheet_9-18-07\(1\).doc](http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/FFGA_Fact_Sheet_9-18-07(1).doc)
- 2-5. Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century (TEA-21). <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/tea21/>
- 2-6. Financial Management Oversight. <http://www.fta.dot.gov/grants/12899.html>
- 2-7. Transit Asset Management Practices, A National and International Review. http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/TAM_A_National_and_International_Review_-_6.10_FINAL.pdf
- 2-8. Buy America Requirements (49 CFR 661). http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=ecfr&tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title49/49cfr661_main_02.tpl
- 2-9. Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases (49 CFR 663). http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=ecfr&tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title49/49cfr663_main_02.tpl
- 2-10. Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability in Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance (49 CFR 27). http://www.fta.dot.gov/12876_3907.html
- 2-11. Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA) (49 CFR 37). http://www.fta.dot.gov/12876_3906.html
- 2-12. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles (49 CFR 38). http://www.fta.dot.gov/12876_3905.html
- 2-13. Disability Law Guidance, Full-Length, Level Boarding Platforms in New Commuter and Intercity Rail Stations. http://www.fta.dot.gov/12325_3890.html

REFERENCES

- 2-14. FTA Circular C4220-1F Third Party Contracting Requirements.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/FTA_Circular_4220.1F.pdf
- 2-15. FTA's Best Practices Procurement Manual.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/grants/13054_6037.html
- 2-16. Buy America: Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12921_613.html
- 2-17. Certifications for Bus Projects.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12921_5429.html
- 2-18. Certifications for Rail Projects. http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/5444.html
- 2-19. Pre-Award Purchaser's Requirement (Buy America).
http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/08_Buy_America_TriennialGuidance_FY2011.pdf
- 2-20. Post Delivery Audit Requirements - Bus and Van projects.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12921_5430.html
- 2-21. Post Delivery Audit Requirements - Rail projects.
http://www.fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/5446.html
- 2-22. FHWA Planning Assistance and Standards (23 CFR 450).
http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=ecfr&tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title23/23cfr450_main_02.tpl
- 2-23. FTA Planning Assistance and Standards (49 CFR 613).
http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_99/49cfr613_99.html
- 2-24. FHWA Management and Monitoring Systems (23 CFR 500).
http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_07/23cfr500_07.html
- 2-25. FTA Transportation Infrastructure Management (49 CFR 614).
http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_99/49cfr614_99.html
- 2-26. TPCB website. <http://www.planning.dot.gov/default.asp>
- 2-27. Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions.
http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_8642.html
- 2-28. FTA Requirements for the PMP. <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2011-title49-vol7/pdf/CFR-2011-title49-vol7-part633.pdf>
- 2-29. Grant Management Requirements.
http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_8640.html

REFERENCES

- 2-30. Rail Modernization Planning Study, LTI Consultants, Inc.
- 2-31. Rail Modernization Planning: Review of Current Practice, Dynatrend, Inc., UMTA, IT-09-9020, March 1985. (PB85-230522)
- 2-32. Bus Maintenance Facility Planning Guidelines, Draft Final Report, S.G. Associates, Inc. and Clark, Nexsen, Owen, Barbieri, and Gibson, UMTA, IT-09-9018, November 1987.
- 2-33. TCRP Report 131, "A Guidebook for the Evaluation of Project Delivery Methods". http://www.trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/A_Guidebook_for_the_Evaluation_of_Project_Delivery_161690.aspx
- 2-34. FHWA Environmental Impact and Related Procedures (23 CFR 771). <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2011-title23-vol1/pdf/CFR-2011-title23-vol1-part771.pdf>
- 2-35. FTA Environmental Impact and Related Procedures (49 CFR 622). <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2011-title49-vol7/pdf/CFR-2011-title49-vol7-part622.pdf>
- 2-36. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) General Conformity Regulations. <http://epa.gov/ttncaaa1/genconformity.html>
- 2-37. 2011 Annual Report on Funding Recommendations, New Starts, Small Starts, and Paul S. Sarbanes Transit in Parks Program. http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/NewStarts_mainText_Jan_2010.pdf
- 2-38. FTA Circular 7008.1A, Financial Capacity Policy. http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_4122.html
- 2-39. Guidance for Transit Financial Plans. http://fta.dot.gov/grants/12309_1336.html
- 2-40. "FFGA Guidance Circular", FTA C 5200.1A. http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_4119.html
- 2-41. Capital Investment Program Guidance and Application Instructions (Circular 9300.1B). http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_8642.html
- 2-42. FTA Circular 7008.1A, "FTA Financial Capacity Policy". http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_4122.html
- 2-43. FTA Circular 5010.1D, "Grant Management Requirements". http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_8640.html

REFERENCES

- 2-44. Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments. <http://www.dot.gov/ost/m60/grant/49cfr18.htm>
- 2-45. Market Based Transit Facility Design. <http://ntl.bts.gov/lib/7000/7000/7061/824.pdf>
- 2-46. Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Projects. http://fta.dot.gov/legislation_law/12349_6930.html
- 2-47. Handbook for Transit Safety and Security Certification. <http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/publications/safety/SafetyCertification/pdf/SSC.pdf>
- 2-48. Compliance Guidelines for States with New Starts. <http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/publications/Safety/NewStarts/NewStarts.pdf>
- 2-49. Implementation Guidelines for 49 CFR Part 659. http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/publications/sso/Imp_Guidelines/pdf/Imp_Guidelines.pdf
- 2-50. Resource Toolkit for State Oversight Agencies Implementing 49 CFR Part 659. http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/publications/sso/Imp_Guidelines/toolkit/html/ResourceToolkit.html
- 2-51. Hazard Analysis Guidelines for Transit Projects. <http://transit-safety.volpe.dot.gov/publications/safety/hazard/haguidelines.pdf>
- 2-52. Guidelines for Managing Suspected Chemical and Biological Agent Incidents in Rail Tunnel Systems (2002).
- 2-53. The Public Transportation System Security and Emergency Preparedness Planning Guide. <http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/publications/security/PlanningGuide.pdf>
- 2-54. Quality Assurance and Quality Control Guidelines. <http://ntl.bts.gov/lib/18000/18900/18915/PB2002103021.pdf>
- 2-55. Designing and Operating Safe and Secure Transit Systems: Assessing Current Practices in the United States and Abroad. http://www.transweb.sjsu.edu/mtportal/research/publications/documents/04-05/MTI_04-03_Secure_Transi_Systems.htm
- 2-56. Transit Security Design Considerations. <http://transit-safety.volpe.dot.gov/security/securityinitiatives/designconsiderations/default.asp>
- 2-57. Transportation Safety Institute (TSI). <http://www.tsi.dot.gov/>
- 2-58. Major Capital Investment Projects (49 CFR Part 611). http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_01/49cfr611_01.html

REFERENCES

- 2-59. FTA's Transit Performance Monitoring System.
http://www.apta.com/gap/policyresearch/Documents/TPMS_summary_I_and_II.pdf
- 2-60. FTA Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures.
http://fta.dot.gov/12304_5203.html
- 2-61. FTA Guidance on Before and After Studies, revised October 2006.
- 2-62. "Rail Fixed Guideway Systems; State Safety Oversight," March 09, 2004.
<http://www.federalregister.gov/articles/2004/03/09/04-5148/rail-fixed-guideway-systems-state-safety-oversight>

Chapter 3

- 3-1. The Project Management Institute (PMI). <http://www.pmi.org/>
- 3-2. The Construction Management Association of America (CMAA).
<http://www.cmaanet.org/>
- 3-3. The Design-Build Institute of America (DBIA). <http://www.dbia.org/>
- 3-4. The Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering (AACE) International.
<http://www.aacei.org>
- 3-5. The Construction Industry Institute. <http://construction-institute.org/>
- 3-6. The Construction Users Roundtable (CURT). <http://www.curt.org/>
- 3-7. LRT Implementation Alternatives Study, by Capital Partnerships, Inc. for Hennepin County Regional Railroad Authority, December 1990.
- 3-8. Project Management Plan for MOS-1 Construction. Southern California Rapid Transit District, September 1986, First Revision, April 1987.
- 3-9. FTA's Standard Cost Categories (SCC) for Capital Projects.
<http://www.fta.dot.gov/grants/2580.html>
- 3-10. Capital Cost Database. http://www.fta.dot.gov/12305_11951.html
- 3-11. Light Rail Transit Capital Cost Study
- 3-12. Fixed Guideway Capital Costs, Heavy Rail and Busway/HOV Lane
- 3-13. The Transit Capital Cost Index Study, FTA, July, 1995.
<http://isddc.dot.gov/OLPFiles/FTA/007418.pdf>

REFERENCES

- 3-14. Risk Assessment in Fixed Guideway Transit System Construction, USDOT (DOT-T-95-01), January, 1994. <http://isddc.dot.gov/OLPFiles/FTA/015512.pdf>
- 3-15. Alternative Financing for Urban Transportation: The State of the Practice, July, 1986. <http://ntl.bts.gov/DOCS/afut.html>
- 3-16. Introduction to Public Finance and Public Transit, January 1993, Public Financial Management, Inc., Stallsmith ES, Editor.
- 3-17. Innovative Financing Techniques for America's Transit Systems. http://www.fta.dot.gov/grants/12309_3530.html
- 3-18. Transportation Infrastructure Financing and Innovation Act (TIFIA). <http://tifia.fhwa.dot.gov>
- 3-19. Transit Capacity and Quality of Service Manual. [http://www.trb.org/Main/Blurbs/Transit Capacity and Quality of Service Manual 2nd 153590.aspx](http://www.trb.org/Main/Blurbs/Transit_Capacity_and_Quality_of_Service_Manual_2nd_153590.aspx)
- 3-20. Not Used
- 3-21. National Transit Database (NTD). <http://www.ntdprogram.gov>
- 3-22. Estimation of Operating & Maintenance Costs for Transit Systems
- 3-23. Review of Project Management Control Systems on Selected FTA Funded Projects
- 3-24. Better Management of Major Underground Construction Projects, U.S. National Committee on Tunneling Technology, National Research Council, UMTA and NSF, 1978. (PB-290855).
- 3-25. Managing TCRP Report G-07. <http://144.171.11.40/cmsfeed/TRBNetProjectDisplay.asp?ProjectID=1120>
- 3-26. Capital Costs Analysis for Urban Transit Projects, EG&G Dynatrend for FTA, June 1995.
- 3-27. "Constructability, A Primer," Construction Industry Institute, University of Texas at Austin, July 1986, pp. 2-3.
- 3-28. Geotechnical Baseline Reports for Construction , Randall J. Essex, Editor, published by the American Society of Civil Engineers, 2007.

REFERENCES

3-29. Risk Assessment in Fixed Guideway Construction, FTA, Report # FTA-MA-26-0022, Northeastern University, January 1994. <http://ntl.bts.gov/DOCS/ssw.html>

3-30. FTA Turnkey Demonstration Program

3-31. Turnkey Evaluation Guidelines, Volpe National Transportation Systems Center for FTA, FTA-MA-90-7012-96-1, August 1996.

3-32. Avoiding and Resolving Disputes in Underground Construction: Successful Practices and Guidelines, Technical Committee on Contracting Practices of the Underground Technology Research Council, sponsored by ASCE and AIME, 1989.

3-33. Casner, H., "Anatomy of a Construction Claim," Kellogg Corporation, presented at the American Public Transit Association 1993 Rapid Transit Conference, Miami FL, June 8, 1993.

3-34. Loew, W.R. and Rizzo, J.M., "Claims Avoidance, A Project Necessity," Hill International, June 1987.

3-35. Lessons Learned – Turnkey Applications in the Transit Industry, FTA, October 1977.

3-36. Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits for Rolling Stock Purchases. http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/Fed_Reg-49_CFR_663.pdf

Chapter 4

4-1. National Fire Protection Association's Code 130 (Standards for Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems). <http://www.nfpa.org/aboutthecodes/AboutTheCodes.asp?DocNum=130&cookie%5Ftest=1>

4-2. Rail Safety Improvement Act of 2008. <http://www.fra.dot.gov/downloads/RSIA%20Overview%20031009.pdf>

4-3. Subway Environmental Design Handbook: Volume I, Principles and Application, Second Edition, Transit Development Corporation, American Consulting Engineers Council, 1987

4-4. Making Transportation Tunnels Safe and Secure. http://www.trb.org/Main/Blurbs/Making_Transportation_Tunnels_Safe_and_Secure_157775.aspx

4-5. Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition for Federal and Federally-Assisted Programs. http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=ecfr&tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title49/49cfr24_main_02.tpl

REFERENCES

4-6. Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policy Act of 1970 as Amended. <http://uscode.house.gov/download/pls/42C61.txt>

4-7. FTA Real Estate Guidance. http://www.fta.dot.gov/region5_5937.html

4-8. FTA Guidance on the Application of 49 U.S.C. 5324(c) to Railroad Right-of-Way (ROW) Acquisition. http://www.fta.dot.gov/documents/Final_Guidance_with_Policy_Council_changes_and_useful_life-clean.pdf

4-9. Value Engineering Process Overview, Lee Wan and Associates, UMTA-DC-06-0483-88-1, January 1988. (PB88-240288)

4-10. Quality in the Constructed Project: A Guide for Owners, Designers and Constructors, Second Edition, Manual of Professional Practice #73, ASCE, 2000.

Chapter 5

5-1. Best Practices Procurement Manual. http://www.fta.dot.gov/grants/13054_6037.html

5-2. Alternative Dispute Resolution for the Construction Industry, Association of Soil and Foundation Engineers, 1988.

5-3. Brady, N., "Wrap-Ups: How to Consolidate Construction Insurance and Gain Control, Cost Savings and Improved Community Relations," Johnson & Higgins, APTA Rapid Transit Conference, June 8, 1993.

INDEX

- Acquisition Planning, 3-76, 3-78
- Agreements, 4-31, 4-34, 6-8
- Alternative Financing, 2-35, 3-19, 3-20
- Alternative Project Delivery Methods, 2-28, 2-57, 3-2, 3-73, 3-77, 3-78, 4-4, 4-8, 5-4
- Alternative Technical Concept, 3-74
- Alternatives Analysis, 2-4, 2-20, 2-21, 2-35, 4-25
- American Public Transportation Association, 1-3, 2-11
- American Society of Civil Engineers, 1-3, 3-47
- Americans with Disabilities Act, 2-6, 2-12, 2-52, 3-4, 4-12, 4-14, 4-21
- Architect(ure) and Engineer(ing), 3-77, 3-78, 4-3, 4-7, 4-47
- As-Built Drawings, 3-41, 5-19, 6-1
- Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering International, 3-2
- Automated Guideway Transit, 2-3
- Automated Train Operation, 4-10
- Before and After Study, 2-65, 2-66
- Best and Final Offer, 4-5, 4-6
- Brooks Act, 3-4, 3-76, 4-3
- Build Operate Transfer/Build Transfer Operate, 2-32, 3-54
- Bus Fleet Management Plan, 2-28, 2-57
- Bus Maintenance Facility, 2-9, 2-28, 4-1
- Bus Rapid Transit, 2-3, 2-17, 3-23, 4-18
- Buy America Requirements, 2-6, 2-11, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-17, 3-4
- Capital Cost, 3-38
- Capital Cost Database, 3-15
- Capital Funding, 3-18
- Capital Plan, 3-13, 3-14, 3-22
- Capital Replacement Planning, 2-66
- Cash Flow, 3-26, 3-36
- Categorical Exclusion, 2-33, 4-24
- Change Order, 3-44, 3-73, 3-78
- Claims, 3-53, 3-72, 3-73, 3-78, 5-12, 5-14
- Claims Management, 3-72, 5-14
- Closed Circuit Television, 2-64, 3-67, 4-13, 4-19, 5-30, 6-12
- Code of Federal Regulation, 2-11, 2-12, 2-14, 2-18, 2-19, 2-22, 2-33, 2-34, 2-38, 2-44, 2-46, 2-47, 2-65, 2-68, 4-26
- Computer Assisted Design and Drafting, 4-21
- Configuration Management, 2-23, 2-57, 2-64, 2-68, 3-36, 3-37, 3-40, 3-41, 3-58, 3-59, 4-37, 5-12, 6-5
- Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality, 2-36, 3-18
- Constructability Review, 2-32, 2-50, 3-43, 3-53, 4-43, 5-5
- Construction Industry Institute, 3-2, 3-72
- Construction Management Association of America, 3-2
- Construction Manager/General Contractor, 2-32, 3-54
- Construction Manager/Management, 2-32, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 3-29, 3-54, 3-73, 3-75, 3-77, 3-80, 3-83, 4-4, 4-29, 5-5, 5-7, 5-17
- Construction Phase, 2-55, 2-57, 2-60, 5-9, 5-12
- Construction Specifications Institute, 4-42
- Construction Users Roundtable, 3-3
- Consultants, 2-21, 3-3, 3-6, 3-30, 3-59, 3-68, 4-2, 4-3, 5-3
- Contingencies, 2-51, 2-54, 3-14, 3-16, 3-17, 3-18, 3-37, 3-39, 3-40, 3-52, 3-57
- Contingency Management Plan, 2-57
- Contract Packaging Plan, 2-56
- Contracting, 2-12, 2-32, 2-50, 3-54, 3-55, 3-56, 3-73, 3-76, 3-77, 4-8
- Cost Estimation, 1-4, 2-24, 3-14, 3-25, 4-1, 4-21, 4-45
- Council on Environmental Quality, 2-34
- Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design, 2-17, 2-44, 2-52, 3-67, 4-14, 5-30
- Critical Path Method, 2-54, 3-27, 3-28, 3-29, 3-30, 3-31, 3-33, 3-34, 3-35, 3-59, 4-38, 5-14, 5-19
- Delays, 2-6, 2-32, 2-58, 3-27, 3-29, 3-46, 3-85, 5-13, 5-20, 5-32

- Delegation of Authority, 5-3
- Department of Labor Regulation on Transit Labor Protection, 3-4
- Department of Transportation, 2-11, 2-12, 2-21, 3-86
- Design Build Institute of America, 3-2
- Design Build Operate Maintain, 2-31, 2-56, 3-10, 3-74
- Design Criteria, 2-24, 2-42, 3-41, 3-80, 4-9, 4-16, 4-17
- Design Review, 2-52, 3-43, 3-80, 4-23, 4-24, 4-36, 4-37, 4-38, 4-41, 4-42, 4-48
- Design/Bid/Build, 2-4, 2-29, 2-56, 4-3, 4-4, 4-9, 5-4
- Design/Build, 2-30, 2-56, 2-57, 3-54, 3-74
- Disadvantaged Business Enterprise, 3-4, 3-54, 3-69, 3-77, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-5
- Dispute Resolution, 3-70, 3-72, 4-34, 5-14, 5-15, 5-16
- Dispute Review Board, 5-15
- Document Control, 2-57, 3-58
- Early System Work Agreement, 2-58
- Earned Value, 3-36, 3-58, 3-59, 3-60
- Electromechanical Interference, 2-14, 4-10, 4-11
- Emergency Preparedness, 2-43, 2-44, 6-1, 6-11, 6-12, 6-13
- Environmental Assessment, 2-4, 2-21, 2-33, 2-34, 4-24
- Environmental Impact Statement, 2-33, 2-34, 3-16, 4-24, 4-25, 4-42, 5-12
- Environmental Planning, 2-33, 2-48, 4-1
- Environmental Projection Agency, 2-11, 2-12, 2-19
- Equal Employment Opportunity, 3-4, 5-5
- Errors and Omissions, 5-11, 5-12
- Escrowed Bid Documents, 5-16
- Fare Collection, 2-26, 3-24, 4-20
- Fast Track, 2-57
- Federal Acquisition Reform Act, 3-76, 4-7
- Federal Acquisition Regulations, 2-11, 4-3
- Federal Highway Administration, 2-1, 2-18, 2-21, 2-33, 2-36, 4-24, 4-25
- Federal Motor Carrier Safety Standards, 2-10, 2-15, 2-16, 6-10
- Federal Railroad Administration, 2-11, 2-42, 2-67, 3-24, 4-20, 4-33, 6-10
- Federal Transit Administration, 1-1, 1-2, 2-11, 2-67, 3-16
- Final Design Phase, 2-1, 2-4, 2-6, 2-8, 2-10, 2-12, 2-13, 2-17, 2-26, 2-32, 2-37, 2-46, 2-48, 2-50, 2-51, 2-54, 2-57, 2-58, 2-59, 2-62, 3-43, 3-46, 3-51, 4-26, 4-41, 4-42
- Final Environmental Impact Statement, 2-52
- Financial Capacity, 2-8, 2-20, 2-36, 2-37, 3-4, 3-16, 3-19, 3-22, 3-24
- Financial Management Oversight, 1-5, 2-8, 2-23, 3-19
- Financial Planning, 2-34, 2-36, 3-26, 4-1
- Financing, 1-2, 2-30, 2-36, 3-19, 3-20
- Finding of No Significant Impact, 2-6, 2-34, 2-52, 2-53, 2-57, 2-62, 4-25, 4-26
- Fire-Life Safety Committee, 6-13
- Fixed Guideway, 2-8
- Fleet Management Plan, 2-9, 2-10, 2-28, 2-51, 2-54
- Force Account, 2-52, 2-53, 2-57, 2-60, 3-16, 3-37, 5-1, 5-8, 5-19
- Full Funding Grant Agreement, 2-2, 2-4, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 3-19
- General Engineering Consultant, 3-29, 4-2, 4-3
- Geotechnical Baseline Report, 3-47
- Geotechnical Data Report, 3-47
- Geotechnical Interpretive Report, 3-47
- Geotechnical Memorandum for Design, 3-47
- Grant Management Guidelines, 2-39
- Grants Management Information System, 3-23
- Guaranteed Maximum Price, 3-74
- Hazard Analysis, 2-1, 2-27, 2-40, 2-44, 3-60, 3-61, 3-62, 3-63, 3-66, 4-4, 4-8, 4-15, 4-16, 5-28, 6-12
- Heating Ventilation and Air Conditioning, 2-13, 2-15, 6-12
- High Occupancy Vehicle, 2-17, 2-19, 3-15
- Insurance, 3-53, 3-56, 5-28, 5-31, 5-32, 5-33
- Integrated Master Project Schedule, 2-54, 2-56, 3-31, 3-32, 3-33, 4-28, 4-29, 4-35, 4-38, 5-5

- Intelligent Transportation Systems, 2-17, 2-24
- Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991, 2-8, 2-19, 2-26, 3-54, 3-76
- International Organization for Standardization, 3-84
- Joint Development, 2-31, 2-35, 2-36, 2-38, 2-39, 2-57, 3-19, 3-20, 4-1, 4-8, 4-14, 4-28, 4-36
- Letter of No Prejudice, 2-5, 2-6, 2-7, 2-58
- Light Rail Transit, 2-30, 2-31, 3-15, 3-23, 4-18
- Local User Council, 3-2
- Locally Preferred Alternative, 2-4, 2-21, 2-46, 4-1, 4-9, 4-12, 4-16, 4-25
- Major Capital Project, 1-4, 2-2, 2-3, 2-22, 2-40, 2-45, 3-46, 3-48, 4-1, 4-17, 4-42, 5-24, 6-1
- Major Investment Study, 2-21
- Matrix Organization, 3-6, 3-7
- Metropolitan Planning Organization, 2-18, 2-19, 2-21, 2-34, 2-43, 2-46
- Metropolitan Transportation Planning, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-51
- Modernization, 2-8, 2-33, 2-51, 2-65, 2-66, 2-67, 4-9
- Multimodal Transfer Facilities, 2-17
- National Environmental Policy Act, 2-4, 2-33, 2-52, 2-57, 3-31, 3-48, 4-24, 4-26, 4-30, 4-38
- National Fire Protection Association, 2-52, 4-14, 4-20
- National Transit Database, 3-25
- National Transit Institute, 1-2
- New Start Project, 2-2, 2-9, 2-19, 2-20, 2-33, 3-22
- Non-Attainment Area, 2-19, 2-33
- Notice to Proceed, 3-31, 5-20
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 5-28, 6-10
- Operating Plan, 2-36, 2-64, 3-23, 3-24, 3-25, 3-26, 3-43, 4-12, 4-14, 4-33, 4-37
- Operation and Maintenance, 2-31, 2-39, 2-42, 2-64, 2-67, 3-12, 3-19, 3-23, 3-24, 3-25, 3-26, 3-38, 3-42, 3-43, 3-56, 3-75, 3-78, 4-8, 4-16, 4-17, 4-37, 4-39, 5-23, 5-24, 6-1
- Organizational Breakdown Structure, 3-30
- Owner Controlled Insurance Program or Plan, 2-55, 3-56, 5-28, 5-32
- Partnering, 3-10, 3-30, 3-53, 3-57, 3-71, 3-72, 3-84, 5-16
- Peer Review, 2-50, 3-42, 4-44
- Performance Bonds, 3-56
- Permits, 4-31, 5-20
- Planning Phase, 1-3, 2-28, 2-37, 3-17, 4-9, 4-25, 4-26
- Pre-Award Audit, 2-14
- Pre-Award Authority, 2-58
- Precedence Diagram Method, 3-27
- Pre-Construction Survey, 5-26
- Preliminary Engineering, 2-4, 2-22, 2-30, 2-32, 2-34, 2-46, 2-47, 2-48, 2-49, 2-52, 2-56, 2-58, 3-18, 3-24, 3-36, 3-43, 4-1, 4-2, 4-10, 4-17, 4-22, 4-26, 4-31, 4-41, 4-45
- Preliminary Hazards Analysis, 2-1, 2-8, 2-41, 3-61, 3-62, 3-64, 4-15, 4-23
- Pre-Revenue Operations, 6-7, 6-9, 6-12
- Procurement, 2-6, 2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-28, 2-33, 2-55, 2-59, 2-61, 3-3, 3-4, 3-5, 3-9, 3-12, 3-30, 3-32, 3-33, 3-43, 3-44, 3-46, 3-49, 3-51, 3-54, 3-55, 3-56, 3-57, 3-68, 3-70, 3-73, 3-74, 3-75, 3-76, 3-78, 3-81, 3-82, 4-1, 4-3, 4-4, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-9, 4-36, 5-1, 5-4, 5-10, 5-11, 5-12, 6-3
- Program Evaluation and Review Technique, 3-27, 3-59
- Program Management Oversight Program/Contractor, 1-5, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8, 2-23, 2-42, 3-24, 4-22
- Project Closeout, 3-10, 3-31, 5-19, 5-24
- Project Communications, 4-1, 5-9
- Project Construction Grant Agreement, 2-2, 2-7, 2-35, 2-54
- Project Control, 1-4, 2-23, 2-24, 3-10, 3-29, 3-30, 3-32, 3-35, 3-39, 3-51, 3-52, 4-1, 5-3
- Project Delivery Method, 2-29, 2-43, 3-11, 3-18, 3-30, 3-78, 4-1, 4-3, 4-7, 4-9
- Project Labor Agreement, 5-6
- Project Management Institute, 1-3, 3-1, 3-2

- Project Management Oversight, 1-3, 1-5, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8, 2-22, 2-23, 2-42, 3-6, 3-24, 4-22
- Project Management Plan, 1-3, 2-3, 2-21, 2-22, 2-23, 2-25, 2-40, 2-43, 2-51, 2-53, 2-54, 2-57, 3-8, 3-31, 3-47, 4-30, 5-8, 5-16, 5-17, 6-2
- Project Organization, 1-5, 3-4, 3-6, 3-7, 3-9, 3-48, 3-80, 3-84, 3-85, 5-2, 5-14
- Project/Program Manager/Management, 3-29
- Public Relations, 5-8, 5-9, 5-29, 6-15
- Public Transportation Facilities & Equipment Management System, 2-8, 2-19, 2-26
- Public-Private Partnership, 2-56, 2-57, 3-77
- Quality Assurance/Quality Control, 2-12, 2-23, 2-44, 2-60, 2-61, 3-58, 3-69, 3-79, 3-80, 3-83, 4-1, 4-47, 5-10, 5-11, 5-16, 5-23
- Rail Activation, 2-55, 2-62, 6-1, 6-3, 6-5, 6-6, 6-15
- Rail Fleet Management Plan, 2-57
- Rail Modernization, 2-26, 2-27, 2-51
- Railroad, 1-2, 4-15, 4-33, 4-34
- Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan, 2-54, 2-57, 4-27, 4-28
- Real Estate and Right-of-Way, 1-2, 2-18, 2-38, 2-54, 3-4, 3-5, 3-15, 3-31, 3-33, 4-13, 4-26, 4-27, 4-28, 4-34, 4-35, 4-37
- Record of Decision, 2-4, 2-6, 2-53, 2-57, 4-25, 4-26, 4-38, 4-42
- Recovery, 2-61
- Refurbishment, 2-67
- Regional Transportation Plan, 2-8
- Rehabilitation, 2-3, 2-19, 2-28, 2-67, 3-23, 6-1
- Reliability Improvement Program, 2-65
- Request for Information, 3-74, 5-5, 5-21
- Request for Proposal, 2-30, 3-74, 4-5, 4-6
- Resident Engineer, 2-25, 3-73, 5-3, 5-5, 5-8, 5-12, 5-17, 5-24, 5-26, 5-27
- Return on Investment, 2-67
- Return-on-Investment, 2-67
- Revenue Service Date, 1-4, 3-46, 3-58
- Revenue Service Phase, 2-64, 2-65
- Risk and Contingency Management Plan, 3-39, 3-48, 3-58
- Risk Assessment, 2-28, 2-51, 2-61, 3-17, 3-27, 3-30, 3-39, 3-44, 3-45, 3-49, 3-51, 3-52, 3-54, 3-55, 3-60, 3-61, 4-1, 4-3
- Risk Management, 3-45, 3-51, 3-77, 5-16
- Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act
A Legacy for Users, 2-2, 2-12, 2-23, 2-35, 2-41, 2-65, 3-77, 4-34
- Safety and Security Certification, 2-42, 2-44, 4-22, 6-3, 6-7, 6-11, 6-13
- Safety and Security Management Plan, 2-40, 2-41, 2-43, 2-45, 2-54, 2-57, 3-53, 3-60, 4-20, 4-21, 4-22, 5-29
- Safety Certification, 2-62, 6-13
- Scheduling, 2-24, 3-27, 3-28, 3-32, 3-34, 3-59, 5-16, 5-23
- Shop Drawings, 5-21
- Signals, 6-5
- Situational Crime Prevention, 2-17, 3-67, 4-14, 5-30
- Small and Disadvantaged Business Enterprise, 4-8
- Small Starts Project, 2-2, 2-34
- Society of American Value Engineers, 3-43
- Standard Cost Categories, 2-53, 3-12, 3-14, 3-15, 3-23, 4-42
- State of Good Repair, 2-8, 2-26
- State Oversight Agency, 2-68, 6-11, 6-13
- State Safety Oversight, 2-44, 2-67, 2-68, 6-10, 6-11
- Statewide Transportation Improvement Program, 2-8, 2-20, 2-37, 2-53, 4-22
- Surface Transportation Program, 2-36, 3-18
- System Change and Operations Review Committee, 6-13
- System Integration, 3-32, 3-78, 4-20, 4-37, 6-2, 6-4, 6-7
- System Performance Monitoring, 2-65
- System Safety (and/or Security) Program Plan, 2-68, 6-11
- System Safety Program Standards, 6-10
- Systems Integration, 3-29, 4-37
- Tax Exempt Commercial Paper, 3-21*

INDEX

- Test Program Plan, 6-2
- Testing and Start-Up Phase, 1-6, 2-52, 2-62, 5-8, 5-28, 6-1, 6-3, 6-7, 6-12
- Third Parties, 2-12, 2-49, 2-52, 2-54, 3-6, 3-53, 5-15, 5-20
- Threat and XE "Threat and Vulnerability Analysis" Analysis, 3-65, 4-23
- Threat and Vulnerability Analysis, 2-1, 2-8, 2-27, 2-40, 2-41, 3-60, 3-64, 3-65, 3-66, 3-67, 4-8, 4-16, 4-23, 5-30, 5-31
- Total Quality Management, 3-84
- Traction Power, 2-11, 2-26, 4-17
- Train Control, 2-26, 4-11, 4-18, 6-5
- Training, 1-2, 2-63, 3-7, 3-10, 3-43, 3-44, 3-73, 3-82, 4-45, 5-23, 5-28, 5-31, 6-9, 6-10, 6-12
- Transit Capacity, 3-24, 4-10
- Transit Capital Cost Index, 3-15
- Transit-Oriented Development, 2-38
- Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century, 2-4, 2-5, 3-20, 3-21
- Transportation Improvement Program, 2-8, 2-20, 2-34, 2-37, 2-46, 2-53
- Transportation Infrastructure Finance and Innovation Act, 2-36, 3-20
- Transportation Research Board, 2-8
- Transportation Safety Institute, 2-44
- Transportation System Management, 2-21
- Tunnel Construction, 2-44, 4-11, 4-19
- Turnkey, 2-32, 2-37, 3-10, 3-54, 3-56, 3-76, 3-79, 3-83
- Turnkey Demonstration Program, 3-56, 3-76, 3-77
- U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 2-21
- United States Department of Transportation, 2-9, 2-11, 3-20, 4-21
- Utilities, 2-6, 2-56, 4-12, 4-15, 4-31, 4-32, 4-41, 5-6, 5-7, 5-20
- Value Engineering, 2-50, 2-58, 2-60, 3-38, 3-42, 4-44, 4-45, 4-46, 4-48, 5-11
- Value Engineering Change Proposal, 5-11
- Vehicle Procurements, 2-9, 2-10
- Weapons of Mass Destruction, 4-19, 6-6
- Work Breakdown Structure, 2-53, 3-10, 3-11, 3-14, 3-31, 3-35, 4-42

APPENDIX A – COST ESTIMATION METHODOLOGY

Introduction

Cost estimation is a process that provides progressively more accurate information as a project moves from conceptual through final design, award of construction and/or equipment/materials contracts, and updated as estimates to complete throughout such contracts until close-out. It establishes initial budget limits and is the crucial element of a project management/control system. FTA relies heavily on a grantee's ability to develop, monitor, tend and update an accurate project budget. Over time budget estimates are refined as more detailed engineering information is available.

Current Practice of Budget Development

Creating a project budget requires the allocation of all costs associated with completing a project. Project budgets are built from the "bottom up" by use of work breakdown structures (WBS). The WBS provides a means for defining program/project scope, both what is to be built – hard costs; and all management/administrative costs, including fees, testing, etc. – soft costs. This latter category is typically as much as twenty (20) percent of a project's budget, or more.

Development of an "order of magnitude" estimate marks the beginning of the budget and project management process. Grantee staff (or, oftentimes, contracted design consultants) prepare "order of magnitude" estimates using models or templates developed by a professional engineering association having detailed knowledge of a particular field or industry. In rail transit, for example, a frequent starting place would be manuals published by the American Railway Engineering and Maintenance Association (AREMA) with adjustments reflecting unique features of the grantee's fixed guideway project. Another source is the "R. S. Means Construction Cost Estimating Manual." At this level of detail reserves or contingencies of thirty-five (35) percent and higher are normal.

Hard costs are the probable costs of construction and procurement of equipment (and materials) and are first prepared as "order of magnitude" estimates. From this point the grantee engineering staff and retained design consultant is instructed to "design to budget", an exercise that relies on budget limits to control scope expansion. No construction contingencies are included at this level of detail. Grantees do not release design contingencies at this stage of design, usually reserving these funds for added design work needed at a later time. In some circumstances an architect/engineer instructed to "design to budget" may be required to redesign a project, at no cost to the grantee, if construction bids exceed final design estimates. At the preliminary design, design development and final design stage, construction cost estimates should be verified at key milestones of progress to ensure that a project is remaining and has remained within budget.

Appendix A – Cost Estimation Methodology

“Value Engineering (VE)” is advocated by FTA throughout the design process particularly in the early phase where there is the greatest opportunity to affect the cost of construction with minimal impact to project goals. VE assesses products and systems and provides recommendations for a more economical solution. The process also considers long-term operations and maintenance practices and costs.

“Construction Planning” and “Constructibility Review” are two other steps advocated by FTA, beginning at or near the end of the Preliminary Engineering Phase. In each case, it is essential to involve construction personnel along with the designers, cost estimators and schedulers, and to do so early and at least once again before the final design and construction contract terms and conditions are far along to be effective. It is also useful, to invite construction and equipment contractors to “industry review” workshops which address both of these subjects.

 As used here, as distinct though interrelated with project or contract schedule analysis and development, “Construction Planning” involves the broad assessment of the environment and conditions in and under which a particular construction contract (or the furnishing of a fixture or structure from an equipment contract) will be advanced. It seeks to understand the work site and adjacencies that are to be (or may be) impacted, the means and methods for essential site access, and associated constraints that are likely to be encountered. These elements can and will influence contractor interests and the bids, as well as the potential for disruptions, delays, claims and community disruption.

 “Constructibility Review” is a process whereby the plans and specifications are reviewed toward the goal of ensuring the project (contract package) is both “biddable” and “buildable”. It seeks to bring experienced construction personnel together with the designer to evaluate the scope of the work to be bid, with attention to three major categories of concern: (1) can it be constructed using standard methods, materials and techniques as it is detailed in the plans and specifications; (2) can the bid documents made available to the contractor permit a competitive and cost effective bid; and (3) can the finished work be built according to the plans and specifications and meet the cost-effective maintainability envisioned by the grantee over its useful life.

There is any number of sources for further information on these topics, among them: American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials’ (AASHTO) [“Constructibility Review Best Practices Guide”](#), August 2000; and the Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering (AACE).

FTA *requires* its grantees to escalate construction costs to reflect anticipated inflation and to report this amount as a separate budget line item. This requirement acknowledges that over time, materials and labor costs may rise due to general inflation. Escalation may be calculated by applying an assumed fixed annual percentage to probable construction costs through the mid-point of construction. During

the Final Design Phase, the more sophisticated approach must be used to apply escalation by either individual construction contract or by trade item, e.g. bridge, track, signal, etc., and adjust to the anticipated year of expenditure.

Large, complex projects that encompass many construction contracts should add a program contingency over and above design and construction contingencies. A program contingency addresses interfaces between and among construction contracts as well as uncertainty (risks) associated with system start-up, testing, and commissioning. FTA participates in reasonable startup costs that directly support activation and pre-revenue operations. These costs should be accounted for in the project estimate (See Appendix B).

Recommendations

- 1. Resolution of Variations in Cost Estimates** – During project development FTA and the grantee should agree on a method to resolve variances between estimates. FTA has utilized a Capital Reserve Account (CAPRA) for this purpose. The CAPRA requires the grantee to set aside funds equal to estimating differences. These funds are available for overruns.
- 2. Cost Management System** – Grantees must implement a cost management system to operate within the framework of the grant requirements and provide the grantee with reliable cost information every step of the way along the project development continuum. Greater visibility to cost information will permit the timely implementation of alternative solutions. The cost management system will encompass a data base of all project costs organized within the WBS.

Reporting categories within the cost management system must be as explicit as possible so as to be able to measure performance of each participant organization (e.g., grantee, third parties, each professional services consultant, construction contractors, equipment or other supplies/services contractors, etc.) and should include:

- Baseline Budget Authorization
- Contract Commitments
- Actual Cost
- Pending Contract Changes
- Forecast-to-Complete
- Estimate-at-Completion
- Budget Variance
- Earned Value (cost and time relative to major milestones and logical interim milestones)

Grantee's can manage the program/project contingency by evaluating commitments to budget estimates and tracking potential changes as soon as they are identified. Further, the grantee must establish a change order control system that identifies and records the cause of the changes. Increases/changes

in scope or “scope creep” are a common occurrence on large-scale as well as small-scale projects. Individual changes should be logged and recorded with the appropriate funding source. The change procedures must be formalized and all changes should be reviewed by the cost estimator(s) and scheduler(s) for the project, not just the design management team.

- 3. Cost Recovery** – In association with the change order control system, grantees are encouraged to develop and utilize a cost recovery procedure. Several larger projects have successfully implemented procedures that allow for the potential recovery of costs due to “errors and omissions” that cause rework of a portion of the project. It is a requirement of all design contracts for the Architect/Engineer to maintain professional and general liability insurance to cover these items. Regardless of how much is recovered through this process, it is an effective negotiation tool.

Table A-1. Recommended Contingency by Estimating Stage

Estimate Stage	Probable Accuracy¹	Design Stage	Purpose	Information Available	Estimate Methods	Contingency Guideline
Order of Magnitude (conceptual)	50% - 30%	Preliminary	Evaluation of projects or alternatives	100-scale alignment, facility descriptions, sketches, study reports	<i>Parametric</i> – Cost of a similar facility is adjusted to represent the new facility. Includes costing by SF, LF, or CF. <i>Model</i> – A typical design is used to develop quantities and costs for elements.	30% or higher
Preliminary (budget)	15% - 30%	Preliminary Design Report (25%)	Establish Control Budget	40-scale alignment, facility descriptions, sketches, study reports, cross sections, profiles, elevations, geotechnical data, staging plans, schedule, definition of temporary work	Quantity development of major commodities, pricing by database, manuals, quotes, bid results, or experience which may be adjusted for the conditions of the specific package. Rough estimates or allowances developed for immeasurable items.	25% - 30%
Definitive	15% - 5%	75% to 100% complete	Detailed Control Budget, Cost Control, and Reporting	Progress Plans and Specifications, working construction schedule	Takeoff of quantities from plans, representative pricing by database, manuals, quotes, bid results, or experience adjusted for the conditions of the specific package. Crewed approach to labor and equipment, percent approach to general conditions, overhead and profit, contingency and escalation. Some allowances carried for immeasurable items.	15% - 20%
Detailed (engineer's estimate)	± 5%	PS&E	Check Estimate for Bids, Commit Funds	Complete Plans and Specifications for Bidding, Detailed Construction Schedule, Contract Terms and Conditions	Detailed takeoff of all measurable items, detailed review of specifications, detailed pricing including price quotes, crewed approach to labor and equipment, detailed estimate of general conditions, overhead & profit, and escalation. Consideration of construction schedule, work restrictions, shift requirements, and risk.	10% - 15%

¹ Probable Accuracy as stated by the Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering International (AACE)

APPENDIX B – PROJECT CONTINGENCY (GENERAL OVERVIEW)

Definitions

Congress has directed that funds sufficient to meet “project contingencies” be included in all FFGA New Starts budgets. Annually in the Department’s Appropriation Statute, or the accompanying Congressional Conference Report, the importance of this budget item is reinforced. Contingency levels vary depending on the complexity of the project, the experience of the grantee with similar projects, the contract packaging, the project schedule, and, of course, how well the project has controlled costs (and schedule) during development and is defined through engineering plans and specifications at the time bids are solicited.

For the two most common contract choices employed by grantees – design/bid/build and design/build – the burden of risk is very different. In either case, how the grantee identifies and distributes risks among the parties also will influence contingencies required. Contingency is typically broken into allocated and unallocated contingencies. Total project contingency is the sum of the two and almost always expressed as a percentage of the overall estimated cost of the project.

Appendix F consists of a guidelines document the FTA has had developed that discusses in great detail the risk assessment process and in turn a Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP) that is required for all New Starts projects.

Design/Bid/Build

Design-bid-build (D/B/B) projects demand a larger percentage for contingency in relation to the overall project budget because the owner is assuming the majority of risk. Total project contingency for D/B/B contracts typically average around 10% or higher of the overall project budget at the 100% bid point. Consequently, higher contingency is required prior to bidding any of the work so as to reflect realities of the design phases and the potential market conditions upon bidding. For traditional D/B/B projects, the owner provides the contractor with plans and specifications, and the contractor provides a bid to build the project. Any changes to the project become the sole responsibility of the owner and may impact schedule and budget. Changes on D/B/B construction projects are most often the result of changed conditions, design errors, or additional requirements.

Typically in a D/B/B contract the design consultant maintains a significant manpower level in order to review contractor submittals and perform design activities associated with any errors, differing site conditions and/or new program requirements. Most changes add cost to the project budget. Generally the amount of contingency assigned

Appendix B – Project Contingency

to a project budget declines as a project nears completion. There are exceptions, particularly if a large number of change orders and claims are outstanding.

Design/Build

In a design/build (D/B) contract design activity is integrated into the construction contract. There is only a limited need to transfer data across contract boundaries, particularly for approval on a day-to-day basis. Since the D/B contractor is responsible for design and construction, it has assumed the most, if not all, risks for differing site conditions and design errors. Whenever changes are ordered or new requirements established the grantee or third parties, the risks and costs are normally the owner's. The presence of a third party with authority to order change has the potential to increase costs and this situation must, therefore, be carefully managed. The owner will normally control internally generated changes and limit financial risk. With only third party changes to plan for, construction contingency can be closer to 10%.

Other Related Issues

Project endeavors such as ROW purchase/relocation, vehicles acquisition, project management, construction management and miscellaneous construction, utility and startup efforts for design/build contracts typically have nearly the same risks as a design/bid/build contract, but rarely have exceeded one third of the total project costs. Co-location of the owner and D/B contractor, as compared to the traditional arrangement in which project participants are often located in separate facilities, has proven to speed resolution of questions and improved project execution.

Managing Risk

The amount of project contingency is directly related to the risk associated with completing a particular scope of work. This is true in the design phases as well as in construction and other procurements. Contractors when bidding on a project evaluate risk and incorporate its potential cost into their bid. If a contractor's contingency is not used it will become profit to the contractor.

If bid documents are, or a Request for Proposal (RFP) is, ambiguous the result will likely be bids higher than expected. Bid documents or an RFP that clearly defines the project, its operational/quality requirements, and explicitly states how the bids or proposal will be evaluated, generally results in a bid or proposal that will best meet the needs of the owner. This minimizes the risk of changes, and the cost associated with those changes, and reduces the amount of contingency needed by the contractor.

APPENDIX C – UTILITY RELOCATION AGREEMENTS

Introduction

The utility and transportation industries are often linked through shared ROW, state and federal safety oversight, and a measure of economic regulation. Transit “New Starts” frequently require the relocation of utilities just as federally supported highway construction has for many years. In recognition of this long standing interaction, “utilities” are defined in 23 CFR, Part 645, Subpart B, Section 645.207 as a “privately, publicly, or cooperatively owned line, facility, or system for producing, transmitting, or distributing communications, cable television, power, electricity, light, heat, gas, oil, crude products, water, steam, waste, storm water not connected with highway drainage, or any other similar commodity, including any fire or police signal system or street lighting system, which directly or indirectly serves the public.” The term utility shall also mean the utility company inclusive of any wholly owned or controlled subsidiary.

A “utility agreement” is a legally binding document between a utility company and a transit agency that defines the scope of a relocation, including reimbursement, liability, right of entry, insurance, and schedule to complete the work. Such an agreement is essential to properly identify the parties involved and to ensure that all parties have a complete understanding of the scope, schedule, and reimbursement issues relating to the relocation. Utility agreements have long been the means by which a transit agency arranges for a Utility to relocate its facilities from within the footprint or that is considered for safety or other tangible reason considered too close to the proposed operation of a proposed transit project.

Policies and Practices

It is extremely important that utility agreements be thoroughly reviewed by in-house counsel and engineering staff to ensure that all necessary information is included. For this review to occur the agreement must be completed well in advance of the start of construction. Cost and schedule penalties can be severe when construction activities and utility relocations occur concurrently.

Development of the Utility Agreement

The first step required for any utility relocation is to solicit utility maps from all known utility companies in the area under consideration. It is helpful to have a master list of utility companies and mail letters of intent to all of them asking for maps of any known utilities in the project limits. Subsurface Utility Engineering (SUE) is the process of accurately and comprehensively mapping all underground utilities. This method should be utilized, as budgets allow, assisting in locating all utilities. After this preliminary effort, the utility locator company in the area is contacted and a request is made for all of the utilities to be marked in the field. This information is used, along with the

Appendix C – Utility Agreements

preliminary survey information collected, to ensure that all utility locations are known, and are accurately identified on the field survey.

After all affected utilities have been identified, a determination of the most desirable location for their relocations should then be performed. Begin discussions with the Utility and determine if the Utility has a policy of relocating its own utilities or if it wants the relocation performed under the relocation activities of the project. Determine who is responsible for the relocation costs. A general review of existing license agreements will be necessary to make this determination. If costs are to be covered by the grantee, determine what these costs are up front, and begin negotiations.

As design of the transit project continues, and project alignments become known, initial work on the utility agreement should begin and increased coordination and negotiations with the affected Utility should follow. The most ideal situation is to have signed agreements and all utilities relocated prior to the general contractor receiving a Notice to Proceed (NTP) on its construction contract. If this is not possible, all affected utility facilities need to be shown in the project documents and relocation will be made concurrent with the construction activities. Coordinating the availability of the construction site with the general contractor and the Utility will be very important. Ensuring each has access to the site as promised will help to avoid any future litigation.

The next steps involve setting up a Utility pre-construction meeting, monitoring the relocation work of the Utility, and providing oversight of their progress. Any slip in the schedule of the utility relocation will have the same detrimental effect as any slip in the schedule of the individual construction contract. Finally, the grantee should inspect the utility relocations to ensure that all work is performed according to the grantee's expectations.

Utility Relocations During the Project Design Phase

Utility relocation must be properly coordinated with other phases of project development, ROW acquisition, and construction in order that conflicting utilities are removed or adjusted prior to construction or in a manner that will not interfere with the construction scope of work or its schedule. The scope of the utility relocation must be determined as well as the responsibility for costs of the relocation. Of particular importance is the avoidance of what are known as “betterments” in the scope of work, as these are ineligible for FTA funding participation.

The costs of the relocation are not always borne by the grantee. In many instances, utilities are located in public rights-of-way under what is effectively a “franchise” agreement, and often such agreements require the Utility to relocate at its own expense. If the former is not the case, cost sharing must always be considered as a feasible alternative to the project being charged. A review of the project plans must be made, relocation estimates checked, agreements prepared and relocation costs negotiated and agreed upon. The scheduling of the relocation must be made to coincide and agree with other all impacted contractors on project right-of-way.

Appendix C – Utility Agreements

Numerous contractors on the project, all performing work independently, will often present scheduling issues, the potential for claims is increased, and the real possibility of contractor disputes may arise.

It is the responsibility of the grantee utility staff to coordinate utility relocations on proposed projects with other phases of ROW acquisition and with construction in order that conflicting utilities are removed or adjusted prior to construction or in a manner that will not interfere with construction. The staff must determine the scope of utility relocation required as well as the responsibility for costs of the relocation. Utility designers must secure, review, and process plans. Also, they must review estimates and reimbursement agreements covering the relocation or removal of conflicting utilities.

23 CFR 645.109 considers the application of value engineering to utility relocations. In one particular case, under a lump sum utility agreement, a Utility later proposed a cost saving alternate solution. The Utility identified this as a value engineering savings and proposed that it share in the savings. The net impact would be to provide cash to the Utility. Value engineering incentives are supported in the customary grantee-contractor relationship. However, VE incentives should not be applied to the typical grantee-Utility relationship for utility work where the Utility is the "owner" and, therefore, the organization responsible for setting up the means for rewarding creative ideas. In no case should the relocation or adjustment of facilities result in a cash windfall to the Utility.

Scheduling Agreements

It is never too early to negotiate and execute utility agreements. Usually, however, the status of the design and the requirements of the Utility will control when the agreement can be negotiated. The DEIS/FEIS phase usually aids in the identification of which utilities are affected by the proposed transit project. As early as is economically feasible, the grantee must contact all affected Utilities to inform them of the proposed improvements and obtain their criteria for relocating or protecting their respective facilities. Some Utilities insist on performing their own design, while others insist that firms pre-qualified by the Utility perform the design and the actual relocation work.

Utility Agreement Language/Content

Utility agreements should contain a detailed description of the scope of work to be accomplished. Providing design drawings, which accurately depict the existing conditions and the post-construction conditions, contribute extensively to describing the scope of work. The extent of the relocations must be clearly shown.

Many utility companies have their own design staff and are capable of designing the relocation themselves. If this is the case, the parameters of the relocation must be clearly identified in the agreement so that the designers have all the necessary information needed to conduct their design. Design reviews, constructability reviews,

Appendix C – Utility Agreements

and continual coordination are essential with each Utility to ensure that all relocations are performed as expected.

Many utility companies are also capable of performing their own relocation. Again, this should be referenced in the utility agreement and the schedule becomes very important because the Utility often has priorities that are not the same as the construction project. The grantee should, in such instances, also seek in the agreement provisions for both cost and schedule accountability from the Utility so as to offset any schedule delay and associated costs if and when a project construction contractor is negatively impacted and that contractor seeks relief (delay claim). Progress monitoring is essential for relocation work performed by the Utility.

It is important that all relocated utilities are moved, protected, and constructed to meet all applicable codes. Whether the utility is relocated by the Utility or by the grantee's general contractor, proper inspections must be performed to ensure adequate construction. The party responsible for this vital function needs to be identified in the agreement.

Ideally, the relocation costs are negotiated up front, before the relocation work takes place. This enables the grantee to properly budget all costs related to relocation. The lump sum method of payment is beneficial because it reduces the administrative and record-keeping costs associated with documenting payment for completed work. However, these savings may be offset by inaccuracies in the cost estimating process. The lump sum payment method should only be used where the end product, in this case the utility relocation, can be clearly and concisely defined. The cost estimate in support of the lump sum agreement must be accurate, comprehensive, verifiable, and in sufficient detail to give a clear picture of the work involved and the cost of the individual items.

If reimbursement is to be made on a cost reimbursement basis, this too must be determined and necessary line items and unit costs developed before the relocation work is performed. A method for settling claims and a conflict resolution method should also be included in the agreement.

Finally, the schedule must be specified and completely understood by all parties. If multiple contractors will have access to the site, this must be identified and agreed to in the agreement. It is ideal to have the relocations substantially completed prior to the general contractor receiving NTP. However, this is not always possible, and when it is not, extensive coordination and written documentation must clearly define the expectations of all parties involved.

Agreements and Authorizations, as identified in 23 CFR 645.113, state that the agreement should be supported by plans and/or drawings that show:

- The location, length, size and/or capacity, type, class, and pertinent operating conditions and design features of existing, proposed, and temporary facilities, including any proposed changes to them, using appropriate nomenclature,

Appendix C – Utility Agreements

- symbols, legend, notes, color-coding
- The project number, plan scale and date, the horizontal and, where appropriate, the vertical location of the utility facilities in relation to the highway alignment, geometric features, stationing, grades, structures, and other facilities, proposed and existing ROW lines, and, where applicable, the access control lines
- The limits of ROW to be acquired from, by, or on behalf of the utility, where applicable
- The portion of the work to be accomplished, if any, at the sole expense of the Utility, using appropriate notes or symbols
- The agreement should also include a cost estimate for the proposed work. The cost estimate should set forth the items of work to be performed, broken down by the estimated costs of the following:
 - Direct labor
 - Labor surcharges
 - Overhead and indirect construction charges
 - Materials and supplies
 - Handling charges
 - Transportation
 - Equipment
 - ROW
 - Preliminary engineering
 - Construction engineering
 - Salvage credits
 - Betterment credits
 - Accrued depreciation credits

The estimate should include sufficient detail to provide the grantee with a reasonable basis for analysis. Factors included in the Utility's overhead and indirect construction charges should be set forth. Materials should be itemized where they represent relatively major components or cost in the relocation. Unit costs, such as broad-gauge units of property, may be used for estimating purposes where the utility uses such units in its own operations. Typically, a Utility uses its own forces or those of a utility contractor to accomplish the needed adjustments to its facilities. Records of actual costs incurred should form the basis for reimbursement.

Negotiation and Reimbursement

Only actual allowable, allocable, and reasonable costs are reimbursable. Where the work is to be performed by the public utility's forces, no profit is allowed and reimbursement is limited to the amount necessary to relocate and/or rearrange the facilities to affect a condition equal to the existing utility facilities. Generally, reimbursement would not provide for greater capacity, capability, durability, efficiency or function, or other "betterments", except for meeting current state and local codes. The cost estimate should contain, at a minimum, the labor type along with hours and hourly rate, equipment type and rates, material quantities and costs, and engineering costs.

Appendix C – Utility Agreements

If a Utility elects to improve, change, rearrange, or otherwise enhance its facilities beyond that which currently exists, the grantee should obtain separate estimates to identify the cost difference between the improved adjustment and the adjustment that is comparable to the existing facility.

Utility agreements must accurately reflect the costs of the activities involved. Acceptable methods for developing relocation costs include:

- Actual direct and related indirect costs accumulated in accordance with a specified work order and in accordance with a jointly approved procedure for documenting those costs
- An agreed upon fixed amount (lump sum) payment
- An agreed unit cost method of payment

When the grantee is obligated to reimburse a Utility for the removal or alteration of its facility, all parties should understand that the adjustment is to be undertaken in the most economical manner consistent with good engineering practice and in compliance with applicable codes and permit regulations. The grantee should only reimburse the Utility for comparable facilities. If the Utility elects to improve its facility during the adjustment (i.e., a utility betterment), the grantee should strive to only reimburse the company for the cost of a comparable facility. No cost for “betterments” are reimbursable with FTA funds.

Conclusion

The most important element to successfully negotiate every utility agreement is to begin the process early. By accurately locating all utilities through surveys, SUE and general inquiries early in the design process, more time is available to negotiate and coordinate the content of the utility agreements. Coordinating and meeting often with the affected Utilities ensures that the entire process is progressing and the eventual outcome has a greater chance of being successful. Proper oversight of the Utility activities is essential to maintaining the project schedule and ensuring that Utilities are relocated in a manner that meets the transit project objectives.

It is important to employ people who have experience and are adept at all aspects of utility relocation. Many things can delay the relocation of an important utility. It is essential that management of the utility relocation efforts be given the same amount of manpower as design and construction oversight activities. Simply signing a Utility Agreement and then allowing the Utility to monitor itself is not an effective plan for the grantee. Constant oversight and coordination is essential. Knowledgeable staff is also better prepared to estimate relocation costs and successfully negotiate with the Utility.

Utility companies often operate at their own pace and under their own set of rules. For these reasons, it is more important than ever, that the grantee do everything within its capability to effectively evaluate the work to be done, oversee, negotiate, and monitor all of the utility relocations performed by Utilities, just as the grant must do with its other construction contracts.

APPENDIX D – PRELIMINARY ENGINEERING CHECKLIST

New Starts project planning and development checklist of project sponsor submittals to FTA to enter Preliminary Engineering (PE)

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
ALTERNATIVES ANALYSIS (AA)	-	
Study Initiation	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.1)
RFP Scope of Work ²		
Problem Statement/Purpose and Need ¹		
Alternatives	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Advancing Major Transit Investments • Additional Guidance on Local Initiation of Alternatives Analysis Planning Studies • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.2) • FTA Course on Alternatives Analysis
Conceptual Alternatives (Alternatives Analysis Initiation Package/Scoping Report) ¹		
Detailed Alternatives (and Operating Plans) ¹		
Final Alternatives (and Operating Plans) ¹		
Baseline Alternative		
Travel Forecasts	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Travel Forecasting for New Starts Proposals (From FTA Workshop) • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.5-6) • Reporting Instructions
Documentation of Methodologies and Assumptions		
Summit Reports and Maps		
Travel Forecasts Template		
Annualization Factor Justification		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.4)
Cost, Scope and Schedule	-	
Summary of O&M Cost Assumptions/Productivities		
Capital Cost Estimate and Project Schedule in Original Format and Standard Cost Category (SCC Format)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.3) • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapters 3 & 4)
Planning Diagrams, Design Criteria Concept Design Drawings and Specifications for guideway, stations, support facilities, sitework, systems, real estate vehicles		

² Not required at this time, but strongly encouraged.

Appendix D – PE Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Documentation of passenger level boarding design for all stations and/or satisfactory determination of infeasibility for one or more stations and satisfactory alternative plan for accessibility. ¹		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR Parts 27, 37 & 38 • 36 CFR 1191 & 1192 • DOT Disability Law Guidance, “Full-Length, Level-Boarding Platforms in New Commuter and Intercity Rail Stations” (09/01/05) • Association of American Railroads (AAR) Clearance Plates A-F, H & L • DoD Strategic Rail Corridor Network (STRACNET) clearance profile
Completion of AA Study	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part I.3)
Alternatives Analysis Final Report		
LPA Adoption by MPO in Constrained (and conforming) Long Range Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transportation Planning Final Rule • Advancing Major Transit Investments
Before and After Study Documentation of Methods and “Predicted” Results and Identification of Responsible Contractors		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Draft Before and After Guidance Available on Request • Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures – May 16, 2006
TIP and STIP Programming of PE		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B • Transportation Planning Final Rule
NEPA Scoping		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures – May 16, 2006 • Council on Environmental Quality Scoping Memorandum 23 CFR 771
PROJECT MANAGEMENT PLAN (PMP)³	-	
Basic Requirements	-	
Project Sponsor Staff Organization		
Project Budget & Schedule		
Procedures	-	
Document Control Procedures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 633 (Subpart C) • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2-4) • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1) • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2) • QA/QC Guidelines
Change Order Procedures		
Material Testing Procedures		
Internal Reporting Procedures		

³ The PMP subcategories listed here are based on the PMP requirements per 49 CFR 633 and FTA’s P&CM Guidelines. The RAMP, RFMP, BFMP, SSMP, and Third Party Agreements and Permits are typically submitted to FTA as stand-alone documents which supplement the PMP.

Appendix D – PE Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Operational Testing Procedures		
Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC)		
Plans	-	
Contracting Plan for Preliminary Engineering Phase		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Third Party Contracting Circular 4220.1F • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2-4)
Contingency Management Plan (identifying significant areas of uncertainty in scope, cost and schedule)		
Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan (RAMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 24 • Uniform Act • Real Estate Page of FTA Website and FTA Real Estate Course
Rail Fleet Management Plan (RFMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1) • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP)		
Safety & Security Management Plan (SSMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSMP Circular 5800.1 • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2) • 49 CFR 659 • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2)
Third Party Agreements and Permits (Identified and Scheduled) ⁴		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
New Starts Templates, Certifications, and Other Reports	-	
New Starts Criteria Templates and Certifications		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions
SCC Annualized Cost Worksheets		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects
Land Use Supporting Information		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions • Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Transit-Supportive Land Use
Project Finance Plan and Supporting Information		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 611.11 • Financial Capacity Policy Circular 7008.1A • Guidance for Transit Financial Plans • Reporting Instructions • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.8) • Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Local Financial Commitment

⁴ Not required at this time, but strongly encouraged.

Appendix D – PE Checklist

<i>PRODUCTS</i>	<i>FTA CONCURRENCE DATE</i>	<i>REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)</i>
Making the Case Document		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions • Examples on FTA Website
ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS	-	
Legal Capacity (Authority to undertake implementation of proposed transit mode)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B (Chapter 6)
Grantee Letter of Request for PE Initiation		

APPENDIX E – FINAL DESIGN CHECKLIST

New Starts project planning and development checklist of project sponsor submittals to FTA to enter final design (FD):

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
COMPLETION OF PRELIMINARY ENGINEERING	-	
Project Definition/Scope	-	
Project Plans, Drawings, Design Criteria Standards and Specifications with refined project definition for overall project, tracks or routes, stations, stops and other structures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4) Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Master Permitting Plan and Schedule		
Geotechnical Baseline Report		
Documentation of passenger level boarding design for all stations and/or satisfactory determination of infeasibility for one or more stations and satisfactory alternative plan for accessibility.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 49 CFR Parts 27, 37 & 38 36 CFR 1191 & 1192 DOT Disability Law Guidance, "Full-Length, Level-Boarding Platforms in New Commuter and Intercity Rail Stations" (09/01/05) Association of American Railroads (AAR) Clearance Plates A-F, H & L DoD Strategic Rail Corridor Network (STRACNET) clearance profile
Project Cost, Schedule and Financial Plan	-	
Capital Cost Estimate and Project Schedule in Original Format and Standard Cost Category (SCC Format (refined and updated to support final design request)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapters 3 & 4) Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.3)
Summary of O&M Cost Assumptions/Productivities (if O&M costs changed since approval to enter PE		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.4) Reporting Instructions
Financial Plan and Supporting Information Supporting Final Design Request and Financial Capacity Assessment		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 49 CFR 611.11 Financial Capacity Policy Circular 7008.1A Guidance for Transit Financial Plans Reporting Instructions Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Local Financial Commitment

Appendix E – FD Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Project Development Requirements	-	
Final NEPA Documentation (i.e., Categorical Exclusion Finding of No Significant Impact or Record of Decision including description of required environmental permits and New Starts Rating Information in ROD if the New Starts Rating is less than “medium”		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 23 CFR 771 • 49 CFR 622 • 2006 Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures - May 16, 2006 (Section 1) - Reference for New Starts Rating Information in ROD
Before and After Study Documentation of Methods and “Predicted” Results and Identification of Responsible Contractors		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Draft Before and After Guidance Available on Request • 2006 Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures - May 16, 2006
TIP and STIP Programming of Final Design and Construction (and update or amendment of long range plan, if needed)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B • Transportation Planning Final Rule
Travel Forecasts (If changed since approval to enter PE	-	
Documentation of Methodologies and Assumptions		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Travel Forecasting for New Starts Proposals (From FTA Workshop)
Summit Reports and Maps		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.5-6)
Travel Forecasts Template		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions
Annualization Factor Justification		
PROJECT MANAGEMENT PLAN (PMP UPDATE	-	
Basic Requirements Update	-	
Project Sponsor Staff Organization		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 633 (Subpart C)
Project Budget & Schedule		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2-4)
Procedures Update	-	
Document Control Procedures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)
Change Order Procedures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Material Testing Procedures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • QA/QC Guidelines
Internal Reporting Procedures		
Operational Testing Procedures		
Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC)		
Plans Update	-	
Contingency Management Plan (identifying significant areas of uncertainty in scope, cost and schedule)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2 & 3)
Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan (RAMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 24 • Uniform Act • Real Estate Page of FTA Website and FTA Real Estate Course
Rail Fleet Management Plan (RFMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)

Appendix E – FD Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSMP Circular 5800.1 • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2) • 49 CFR 659 • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2)
Operating Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 3)
Configuration Management Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 5)
Other Project Management Products	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B (Chapter V) • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1) • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
Value Engineering Analysis Report		
Procurement Contract Packages	-	
Contracting Plan for Final Design Phase		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4) • Third Party Contracting Circular 4220.1F
Contracting Plan for Construction/Procurement (draft policies and procedures for all proposed contracting) inclusive of profit strategies and proposed risk allocation measures		
Claims Avoidance Plan for Final Design		
Claims Avoidance Plan for Construction/Procurement Phase		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 3)
General Conditions (preliminarily drafted for design, construction and procurement contracts)		
Third Party Agreements	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1) • 23 CFR 645, Utilities • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4) • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Utility Agreements (negotiated and completed to the extent possible)		
Master, Interagency, Public/Private, Joint Development Railroad and Right of Way Agreements (negotiated and completed to the degree possible)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
NEW STARTS TEMPLATES, CERTIFICATIONS, AND OTHER REPORTS	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions
New Starts Criteria Templates and Certifications		
SCC Annualized Cost Worksheets		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects
Land Use Supporting Information		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions • Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Transit-Supportive Land Use

Appendix E – FD Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Making the Case Document		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions • Examples on FTA Website
ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS	-	
Legal Capacity (Authority to undertake implementation of proposed transit mode)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B (Chapter 6)
Authority to pursue and contract with project delivery method proposed (if not design-bid-build)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
Grantee Letter of Request for FD Initiation		

APPENDIX F – FULL FUNDING GRANT AGREEMENT CHECKLIST

New Starts project planning and development checklist of project sponsor submittals to FTA for a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA):

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
FINAL DESIGN (FD) PROGRESS	-	
Project Definition/Scope	-	
Project Plans, Drawings, Designs, Standards and Specifications with refined project definition for overall project: guideway, tracks or routes, stations, stops, other structures/facilities, ROW and site improvements, systems, vehicles		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4) • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Project Cost, Schedule and Financial Plan	-	
Capital Cost Estimate and Project Schedule in Original Format and Standard Cost Category (SCC Format (refined and updated to support FFGA request)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapters 3 & 4) • Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.3)
Financial Plan and Supporting Information Supporting FFGA Request and Financial Capacity Assessment		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 611.11 • Financial Capacity Policy Circular 7008.1A • Guidance for Transit Financial Plans • Reporting Instructions • Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Local Financial Commitment
Project Development Requirements	-	
Before and After Study Documentation of Methods and “Predicted” Results and Identification of Responsible Contractors		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Draft Before and After Guidance Available on Request • Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures - May 16, 2006
Before and After Study Plan		
TIP and STIP Programming of Construction (and update or amendment of long range plan, if needed)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B • Transportation Planning Final Rule
Summary Evaluation of Alternatives Analysis		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Requirement described in current year’s Appropriations legislation for FTA • Sample Documents Available on Request

Appendix F – FFGA Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Updated environmental mitigation table that gives the implementation status of all relevant mitigation measures identified in FTA's environmental record for the Project plus any new requirements resulting from permit conditions		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 3)
Supplemental NEPA Documentation (i.e., Categorical Exclusion Finding of no Significant Impact, or Record of Decision) including description of required environmental permits and New Starts Rating Information in ROD if the New Starts Rating is less than "medium", if changed since FD Approval		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 23 CFR 771 • 49 CFR 622 • 2006 Guidance on New Starts Policies and Procedures - May 16, 2006 (Section 1) - Reference for New Starts Rating Information in ROD
Travel Forecasts (If changed since approval to enter FD)	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Travel Forecasting for New Starts Proposals (From FTA Workshop)
Documentation of Methodologies and Assumptions		
Summit Reports and Maps		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Procedures and Technical Methods for Transit Project Planning (Part II.5-6)
Travel Forecasts Template		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions
Annualization Factor Justification		
PROJECT MANAGEMENT PLAN (PMP) UPDATE	-	
Plans	-	
Construction Management Plan		
Document Control Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 633 (Subpart C)
Organization		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2-4)
Schedule Control		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)
Cost Control (Cash Flow, Payments, Changes, Claims)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Contract Administration		
Project Safety and Security		
Communications		
Permits		
Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • QA/QC Guidelines
Project Execution Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact FTA Staff for Reference Materials
Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan (RAMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 49 CFR 24 • Uniform Act • Real Estate Page of FTA Website and FTA Real Estate Course
Rail Fleet Management Plan (RFMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)
Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)

Appendix F – FFGA Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSMP Circular 5800.1 • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2) • 49 CFR 659 • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2)
Startup and Testing Plan		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 3)
Operating Plan		
Configuration Management Plan		
Other Project Management Products (If changed since approval to enter FD)	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capital Program Circular 9300.1B (Chapter V) • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)
Value Engineering Analysis Report		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
Procurement Contract Packages	-	
Contracting Plan for Construction/Procurement (draft policies and procedures for all proposed contracting) inclusive of profit strategies and proposed risk allocation measures		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 2-4) • Third Party Contracting Circular 4220.1F
Claims Avoidance Plan for Construction/Procurement Phase		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 3)
Third Party Agreements	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grant Management Circular 5010.1D (Chapter 1)
Utility Agreements (executed)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 23 CFR 645, Utilities • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4) • FFGA Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 2)
Master, Interagency, Public/Private, Joint Development Railroad and Right of Way Agreements (executed)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
NEW STARTS TEMPLATES, CERTIFICATIONS, AND OTHER REPORTS (IF CHANGED SINCE APPROVAL TO ENTER FD)	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions
New Starts Criteria Templates and Certifications (If changed since FD)		
SCC Annualized Cost Worksheets (If changed since FD)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard Cost Categories for Capital Projects
Land Use Supporting Information (If changed since FD)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reporting Instructions • Guidelines and Standards for Assessing Transit-Supportive Land Use
FFGA ATTACHMENTS	-	
Attachment 1 – Scope of Project		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter

Appendix F – FFGA Checklist

PRODUCTS	FTA CONCURRENCE DATE	REFERENCE (Regulations, Guidance, and Other Resources)
Attachment 1A – Project Map (In color)		3)
Attachment 1B – Project Vicinity Map (In color, showing project in relation to transportation network/major transit lines)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sample FFGA Attachments Available on Request
Attachment 2 – Project Description		
Attachment 3 – Baseline Cost Estimate (BCE)		
Table 1 – BCE by SCC		
Table 2 – Escalated BCE Calculation		
Table 3 – BCE by Funding Source		
Attachment 3A – Project Budget		
Attachment 4 – Baseline Schedule		
Attachment 5 – Prior Grants and Related Documents		
Attachment 6 – Schedule of Federal Funds		
Attachment 7 – Measures to Mitigate Environmental Impacts		
Attachment 8 – Implementation of a Before and After Study		
<i>Attachment 9 – If Required by FTA</i>		
OTHER REQUIREMENTS	-	
Grant Application (In TEAM)		
5333(b) Department of Labor (DOL) Certification of the grant application		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Funding Grant Agreements Guidance 5200.1A (Chapter 4)
Authority to pursue and contract with project delivery method proposed (if not design-bid-build)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTA P&CM Guidelines (Chapter 4)
Letter from Project Sponsor to Regional Administrator requesting an FFGA		

APPENDIX G – A GRANTEE’S GUIDE TO THE FTA NEW STARTS PROJECT RISK REVIEW

Introduction

FTA’s risk assessment of major capital projects has evolved over the years from a stand-alone "bottom-up" risk analysis of technical risk, such as geotechnical risk, to an integrated "top-down" risk analysis of technical risk and the management capacity to mitigate that risk within the constraints of the project budget and schedule. This process has contributed to improvements in project management not only in terms of the tracking of risk, associated mitigation efforts, and available contingencies, but also in reporting on the recipient’s risk response and effective contingency management.

FTA undertakes this review either with its own staff or in conjunction with its Project Management Oversight Contractor (PMOC), but for purposes of this narrative the reference is only to FTA. This is a data driven analysis based on both FTA and recipient experience. First, FTA relies in large part upon its ongoing reviews of recipient project documentation required by the Project Management Plan and its sub plans. (See Figure 1 for the key components that go into the Risk Assessment process.) Next, industry experience in the form of Transportation Research Board (TRB) studies is also integrated into this effort. Finally, FTA relies on extensive analysis from past and ongoing major capital projects, including work done by the PMOC community, to document emerging lessons learned on managing technical risks as well as developing strategic management capacity and capability through application of known best practices, specific mitigation measures, and risk-informed and optimized decision making.

As stated above, this FTA review relies on and builds off of the recipient’s management plans and cost and schedule data, and, if available, the recipient’s own risk assessment. FTA has always encouraged recipients to develop their own risk assessments, for their use in managing the project cost and schedule, and as the basis for an informed discussion between FTA and the recipients. The role that a recipient’s risk assessment plays in informing the FTA risk assessment depends upon the quality of its assessment. FTA will review the recipient’s information, using the criteria below, and determine if and to what extent it will be integrated into the FTA assessment. If the information is not adequate, FTA will develop any additional data needed to complete its risk assessment.

FTA will use the following criteria in reviewing the recipient’s information: Is it sufficient to allow the recipient to meet FTA’s requirements? Is it capable of independent analysis and reproduction? Is it relatively free of inherent bias? And, is it susceptible to an FTA assessment of its adequacy, accuracy or completeness?

When a risk assessment is done correctly, FTA and its grant recipient are made aware of the technical risks and requirements for management capacity facing a particular

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

project, understand the potential impacts to the project’s cost and schedule for each risk identified, and are able to develop strategic plans for rapid intervention and effective mitigation should a risk begin to materialize. Failure to do this can be catastrophic to a project.

FTA conducts risk assessments at critical points during a project’s lifecycle. Experience teaches that risk assessments are especially important during the earlier phases of projects because opportunities to avoid or at the least mitigate risk diminish substantially as projects move beyond planning into design and construction. In the New Starts program, risk assessments benefit project planning and management in an evolving fashion as a project transitions from pre-preliminary engineering (PE), to final design (FD), to a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) where applicable, through construction and into start-up. Early in a project, the benefits are likely to include identification of missing scope and/or weak or uncoordinated cost estimates, enhancing design management and pre-construction planning, and prioritizing project risks so that mitigating efforts can be taken. By the time a project nears completion of final design, and most of the contracts are through the bidding process, the risk assessment primarily focuses on sizing the required contingencies and defining or verifying the process for using contingencies.

FTA works closely with the recipient during the risk assessment in order to facilitate the process, encourages the recipient’s buy-in to the assessment and its outcome, and provides the recipient with the background necessary to incorporate risk assessment recommendations into its Project Management Plan (PMP) and Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP). While FTA, in conducting risk assessments, is interested in a number of factors, such as determining what level of oversight a project needs and whether a New Starts project is ready to advance to the next phase, it must be emphasized that at all times, for all purposes, the recipient retains full responsibility for managing all project risk. It is imperative that a recipient understands FTA’s objectives and process, makes its information available, participates in good faith during the risk assessment process, incorporates FTA’s risk assessment recommendations into the PMP and RCMP in a meaningful way, and takes ownership of those documents as primary tools to mitigate risk throughout the life of the project. These reviews are intended to occur concurrently with the recipient’s project development process.

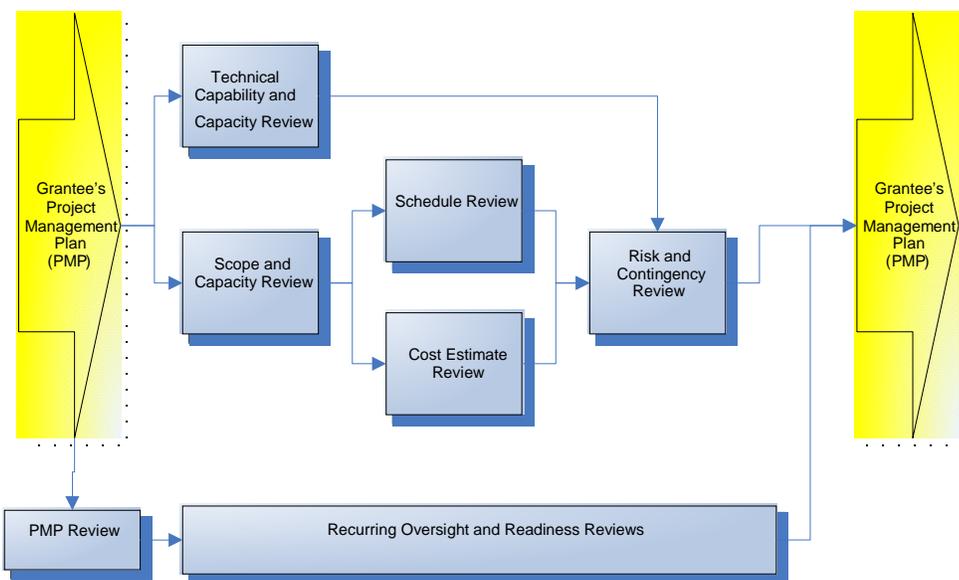


Figure 1: FTA’s Risk-Informed Project Management Oversight

The Risk Review Process

There are many technical sources available that discuss the procedure and specifics on risk assessment. This section is not meant to convey technical detail to the reader. It is only meant to present a framework for evaluating project risk that is common to a large variety of analytical models, but at the same time meets FTA’s requirements for determining the reliability of the recipient’s cost and schedule.

Establishing the Project Basis

The basic goals of a risk assessment are to: (1) identify and quantify uncertainties and their potential impacts on the recipient’s ability to achieve project objectives within defined scope, cost and schedule constraints, and (2) develop explicit plans and tools for mitigating risk, developing management capability and capacity to control risk, and managing current and future contingencies. The necessary first step in the risk assessment process is to scrutinize the status and soundness of the project’s definition of basic—and known—project elements (e.g., overarching project development requirements, scope, design criteria, quality assurance, contract packaging and methods of delivery, cost estimates, and schedules) which serve as the starting points for identifying risks and opportunities. Thus, it is crucial that these known project elements be validated and, if necessary, corrected before attempting to address a project’s uncertain elements. A 2005 internal FTA study on risk management performance concluded that only 50% of the cost overruns in selected projects were related to risk factors, the rest was due to systematic underestimation, including the failure to adequately assess risks, failure to identify and confront foreseeable adverse

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

conditions, and the full range of project cost components. Therefore, if key project components are missing or itemized costs are seriously understated, it is not possible to accurately ascertain the risk basis from which costs are expected to vary and the recipient may not know how to develop the correct risk avoidance measures.

In advance of performing a risk assessment, FTA must first fully understand the recipient’s basic assumptions in advancing the definition of the project, which is best done through a review of documents that describe project goals and third-party requirements; site evaluations; project plans, estimates and schedules; progress reports; project management documents; and other necessary supporting documents.

If the documents that define the project have insufficient detail or there are inconsistencies or mismatches between design documents such as reports or drawings and schedules, cost estimates or work breakdown structures, such that the drawings are significantly more current than the cost estimate, then the validity and usefulness of a risk assessment based on such documents would be compromised. It is also especially important that cost estimates be properly categorized into FTA’s Standard Cost Categories (SCCs).

In order to avoid double counting, since contingencies are a legitimate way to account for risk, as part of the review FTA will work with the recipient to ensure that its estimates and schedules clearly identify and quantify contingency amounts. This includes cost and schedule contingencies that are applied or allocated to individual line items or activities (some of which may be “hidden”), as well as unallocated contingencies that are often derived as percentages of grouped items.

Identifying the Risks

Simply put, before risks can be managed, they must be identified. As a management process, risk identification “surfaces” risks before they can become problems and impact or adversely affect a project. FTA’s definition of risk identification includes examining the elements of project definition and project processes to “surface” the associated uncertainties and their root causes that may prevent the project from being delivered within the constraints of intended scope, schedule and cost given the grantee’s management capability and capacity. It is the crux of successful risk assessment. As a process though, it is not enough to just identify risks, the assessment must also deliver value throughout project implementation. To achieve that goal, risk identification must facilitate management planning for the recipient organization through analysis which allows the conversion of “surfaced” risk data into risk decision-making information that provides the basis for the recipient to prioritize and address project risks.

As a result, FTA’s risk assessment uses a risk mitigation sequence, the key principle of which is that the ability to mitigate technical risk declines as the project advances from requirements definition through design solution into project delivery method, while management capacity to mitigate that risk within defined constraints builds up in a

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

maturity sequence as the recipient develops management strategies that move from simply implementing best practices to developing specific mitigation capacities, through documenting risk-informed decision making for grantee management, to institutionalizing changes in governance and internal controls.

Thus FTA’s risk assessment process focuses not just on risk identification but also identifying specific management changes the recipient can implement to manage the risk at various stages of the project. To accomplish this objective, metrics must be developed by the recipient for project activities that can be readily and timely reported (and validated) so as to provide management with a performance-based and continuous assessment of costs and schedule impacts on the achievement of project budget and revenue service date goals.

Consistent with the concepts expressed above, to maximize the effectiveness of the risk assessment process and results, recipients must instill in their staff a sense of the importance of the process and provide sufficient staff resources, along with a defined process and outside expertise as necessary, to develop a thorough inventory or listing of all reasonably conceivable risks facing the project. This listing, often referred to as a risk register, provides the basis for tracking the status of previously identified risks, adding new risks as they become identified, developing risk mitigation measures, assigning responsible parties to attend to the risks, and monitoring risk-specific action items.

FTA will review the recipient’s risk register and supplement it with any additional risks FTA may have independently discovered through FTA’s review of project status, scope, cost estimate, schedule, and contract packaging, as well as an analysis of the recipient’s project management capacity and capabilities. The risk register is then further refined through joint discussions with the recipient.

Risk Treatment

Risk treatment is a process that identifies, evaluates, selects, and implements options in order to set risk at acceptable levels given project constraints and objectives. This includes the specifics on what should be done, when it should be accomplished, who is responsible, and the associated cost. The handling options available can include risk control, risk avoidance, risk assumption, and risk transfer. The most appropriate treatment is selected from these handling options.

At each stage of the project, the recipient should implement decision processes that document how it established and allocated risk and then, as appropriate, whether it transferred some risk to contractors it hired to perform discreet tasks. It is rare, however, that all project risk can or even should be transferred to contractors, and FTA through its oversight process will review how much risk recipients have assigned to other parties in order to determine the recipient’s effectiveness and efficiency at transferring such risk and whether the recipient has overstated the amount of risk that has been successfully transferred as contracts are let. A recipient should constantly

review the project’s risk register as contract packages are developed so that opportunities for risk transfer are identified and incorporated into contract documents in a deliberate and appropriate manner. The risk register should be updated as contracts are awarded to identify those risks either partially or fully mitigated through risk transfer and those risks which remain with the recipient. FTA will periodically review major contracts and the risk register to make sure the recipient is appropriately transferring risk and understands what risks have and have not been transferred.

Assessing the Impact of Risks

Risk assessment is a process of determining and understanding the quantifiable effect(s) of risk on the project’s cost and schedule. Inasmuch as the risk assessment process is invaluable to the successful mitigation of risks, FTA will verify the integrity of the recipient’s risk assessment process and may perform an independent assessment of cost risk and schedule risk using the principles discussed above. Cost risk and schedule risk are usually interdependent with one another and consideration of one must necessarily include consideration of the other. However, as detailed below, there are some methodologies that are specific to the assessment of cost risk whereas schedule risk is more effectively assessed by other means.

Methodologies for Assessing Cost Risk and Schedule Risk

Assessing Cost Risk

Cost risk is fundamentally about potential cost overruns and the effects of cost overruns on the delivery of a project, as scoped and approved, within an established budget and schedule. This uncertainty concerning the potential for cost overruns arises first from the underlying technical uncertainty of achieving the project’s objectives, or requirements risk, design risk, market risk, and construction risk, and then, second, uncertainty associated with the recipient’s ability to demonstrate the technical capacity and capability (TCC) to mitigate that technical risk within an acceptable range, or management risk.

FTA utilizes the following cost analyses to assess project-level cost risk:

- Stripped cost and adjusted cost estimates
- Standard cost category (SCC) ranges, as applicable
- SCC cost item risk curves, as applicable
- Analysis of project delivery method (s)
- Project-level risk

Stripped Cost and Adjusted Cost Estimates

As a project’s cost estimate is developed and refined, the recipient and its engineering/design/project management team includes contingency funds to compensate for the level of uncertainty in the estimate and allow for inflation costs. A stripped cost estimate is the project’s cost estimate completely devoid of all the

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

contingency amounts that have accumulated during the project development process, and developing this requires close coordination between FTA and the recipient. Some contingency amounts are exposed and are readily identified whereas other contingency amounts are latent or hidden within the cost estimate.

The identification of all such contingencies, especially latent contingency funds (which are usually allocated to individual line items) requires close coordination with the recipient. Particular attention should also be paid during this process to contingent funds that may be embedded within estimates for inflation or escalation risk.

Once FTA and the recipient believe they have arrived at a stripped cost estimate, FTA develops an adjusted cost estimate based on an analysis of several factors, including cost analysis by SCC where applicable. An analysis of costs by SCC makes use of FTA’s database of SCC costs from previously completed major capital projects to determine if some SCC items might be understated or overstated. After these analyses and following careful discussions with the recipient, FTA makes adjustments to the stripped cost estimate and develops a project’s cost, without any risk-based contingencies or inflation.

In conjunction with the analytical work on the project schedule, the adjusted cost estimate is inflated to the year of expenditure (YOE). This adjusted YOE cost estimate becomes the basis for the remainder of the cost risk assessment. The inflation rate used for developing the Adjusted Cost Estimate should be a rate that is stripped of contingency, in a manner similar to the stripping of contingencies from other estimate line items. This Adjusted Cost Estimate, appropriately stripped of contingencies, establishes a highly optimistic level of cost forecast for the various estimate line items.

Standard Cost Category (SCC) Ranges

FTA then establishes likely ranges of cost for the various SCC elements based on the adjusted YOE cost estimate. The adjusted YOE cost estimate (as described above) for each SCC cost element is used to establish the bottom of the SCC cost element range of costs.

The upper limit of the SCC cost element range can be established either by using a Beta Range Factor (BRF) or by applying specific historic risk experiences to various SCC line items. In the first instance, the upper range is calculated by multiplying the lower SCC cost range value by a BRF which identifies the point at which there is a 90 percent chance that the SCC element can be delivered at or below that cost. BRFs are the sum of risk category factors for requirements risk, design risk, market risk, and construction risk plus an added base factor of 1.05. The 1.05 base factor provides for a 5 percent “end-of-project” risk allowance, which recognizes that some level of risk generally remains, even at the end of construction. In the second approach, using TRB data and internal studies, FTA develops a series of risk scenarios based on a recipient’s mitigation capacities and adds a specific dollar amount at the Medium and High range to each SCC based on an assessment of how this project is likely to proceed based on

the similarities between it and other New Starts projects that are currently in construction or have been opened for operations. Again, the process looks at requirements risk, including geotechnical risk if appropriate, design risk, market risk, and construction risk, in order to determine how likely it is that the optimistic cost will be exceeded. While this is a judgment call, through the risk identification process FTA is able to identify whether and where the recipient is likely to face similar risks and whether or not the recipient has tools in place to address these risks. FTA discusses this risk range with the recipient so that there is a clear understanding of where and why FTA sees the risk occurring and whether the recipient has the management capacity to mitigate the risk.

SCC Cost Item Risk Curve

The FTA BRF risk assessment model assumes that risk for a category follows what is called a log-normal distribution function. While detailed description is beyond this Appendix, interested readers may find a discussion of these kinds of risk curves (or probability distribution functions) in standard texts and other references. The average and variance of the suggested range distribution for the SCC cost item are fully determined using the 10th percentile estimate, the BRF, and the assumed log-normal distribution. These calculations are modeled in the Cost Risk Assessment Workbook that is used to calculate project risk.

Consideration of Project Delivery Method

Project delivery methods, whether they are traditional (e.g. design-bid-build) or an alternate method (e.g., design-build, etc.) can affect the timing and scope of risk sharing, but not necessarily the magnitude of risk nor the sequence of risk mitigation. Traditional project delivery methods transfer or share much of the construction risk at the completion of design and procurement. Alternate project delivery methods may transfer or share some components of requirements risk, design risk, market risk and construction risk prior to the completion of design activities. Regardless of delivery method, if risk exists, it will affect the cost and schedule of the project—perhaps included within the cost of contracted work. The extent and effectiveness of risk transfer and risk sharing inherent in alternative project delivery methods are considered when developing recommendations for risk assignment.

Project Level Cost Risk

Project-level risk is an aggregate of the risks associated with all SCC Category Cost Ranges. The project level risk model is often used for future project phases, although the projections and recommendations are based primarily on the currently modeled phase.

FTA produces and shares a summary table and chart with the recipient that lists the recipient’s estimated project costs and the adjusted YOE cost estimates along with its assessment data, including the variability determined in the risk assessment, and its

effect on the overall budget. FTA also provides an analysis of the key risk drivers, in a narrative format, for those project elements with the potential for large cost risk impact.

Assessing Schedule Risk

Schedule risk is fundamentally about potential delay (s) to the project’s critical path and subsequent effects to the delivery of a project within an established timeframe. Schedule delay may reduce schedule float, require use of schedule contingency or threaten the project completion date. FTA utilizes the following analyses in its evaluation of schedule risk:

- Stripped Schedule and Adjusted Schedule
- Summary Schedule
- Summary Activity Risk
- Project Level Schedule Risk

Stripped Schedule and Adjusted Schedule

FTA analyzes the recipient’s schedule and removes all risk-based contingency durations, leads/lags, constraints, etc., to develop what is called the stripped schedule. Such contingencies to be removed may include both unallocated (perhaps applied as a dummy activity at the end of the project or sub-network) and allocated (perhaps applied as increases to individual activity durations) contingencies. Both patent (exposed) contingency durations and latent (hidden) contingency durations shall be identified in close coordination with the recipient. This coordination is especially important in the case of schedules, due to the complicated nature of modern schedules and the effect of items such as logic ties that may reflect risk-based logic.

After discussion with the recipient, the FTA increases or decreases activity durations in order to produce an adjusted schedule. The adjustments may also be applied to the activities developed in the Summary Schedule, as described below.

Summary Schedule

FTA works with the recipient to develop a summary schedule that will be used for calculating project schedule risk. The summary schedule is intended to be a logically-correct, critical-path method (CPM) schedule that adequately reflects the interrelationships among its activities so as to reproduce the effect of a variation in any activity upon the other activities. The number of activities modeled should be commensurate with the recipient’s schedule and level of detail available at the time of analysis.

Summary Activity Risk

FTA will identify duration ranges for the activities of the Summary Schedule through a process of evaluating the specific project attributes (especially including those noted in the Risk Register), in consultation with the recipient. The adjusted schedule durations

described above will be used to establish optimistic duration estimates. Through the analysis of schedule-related items on the risk register, FTA will establish the most likely, pessimistic estimates for activity durations.

Once the activity duration ranges are established, FTA will use this data to develop a range of schedule risks. FTA may apply one of two approaches during this process. The first uses a commercially-available project scheduling software system that is capable of critical path scheduling and stochastic modeling for probabilistically-described activity durations (often referred to as “Monte-Carlo” simulations). This system is used for capturing and reporting activity risk duration ranges, as well as reporting the resulting project-level schedule risk assessment. In the other approach, similar to what is done for cost, FTA uses TRB studies and historic experience to add time to the adjusted schedule at both the Medium and High ranges based on a data driven assessment of how this project is likely to proceed based on the similarities between this project and other New Starts projects that are currently in construction or have been opened for operations. While this is a judgment call, through the risk identification process FTA is able to identify whether and where the recipient is likely to face similar risks and whether or not the recipient has tools in place to address these risks. FTA discusses this risk range with the recipient so that there is a clear understanding of where and why FTA sees the risk occurring.

Project Level Schedule Risk

Both the schedule risk simulation and the FTA comparative approach provide the basis for evaluating the predicted range of completion dates as compared to the recipient’s scheduled milestones. The simulation approach also provides statistical measures such as range, mean, minimum and maximums. In both cases, FTA can identify critical and near-critical paths and the relationship between those paths and previously identified schedule risks.

Risk Mitigation

FTA will identify risk mitigation recommendations that the recipient may adopt to supplement its own mitigation efforts in its Risk and Contingency Management Plan. FTA has found it to be a very effective practice to organize the risk mitigation actions by Mitigation Structure (Primary Mitigation, Secondary Mitigation, and Contingencies), SCC, Risk Category, and Mitigation Type.

Primary Risk Mitigation Recommendations

Primary risk mitigation occurs throughout the various project phases and is the result of the planned actions of the recipient and its contractors as described in the RCMP portion of the PMP. Primary risk mitigation takes the form of an action plan, with specific activities to be undertaken in response to identified risks. These action items are often categorized by such things as SCC codes, risk category and mitigation type, and generally include required completion dates and responsibility assignments.

Primary mitigation activities are scheduled at the earliest phase during which the mitigation activity may occur, and are expected to be completed on a timely basis to achieve the cost-risk and schedule-risk parameter targets at the end of that phase. Examples of primary risk mitigation might be resolving an uncertain NEPA requirement, or expanding a geotechnical survey, etc. As the project proceeds, the ability to recover from loss decreases, so timely action is important. FTA has found that without this up-front analysis there is a tendency to overly rely on the project contingency.

Primary risk mitigation measures should include actions related to risk transference, especially those risks transferred through construction contracting, while ensuring that risk remaining with the recipient is fully recognized and effective risk response plans are developed. The recipient’s project delivery methods and contracting plans, including its proposed terms and conditions, should offer a comprehensive approach to ensuring that all forms of third party compensation (especially non-competitive, negotiated compensation) and risk transference are aligned with the project estimate and schedule.

Primary schedule risk mitigation recommendations should specifically treat both critical path and non-critical path activities. Frequent changes in the configuration of the project’s critical path are disruptive and degrade the recipient’s ability to effectively and efficiently implement the project. One role of primary schedule risk mitigation is to protect the project’s critical path so that non-critical path activities do not become critical. The primary objective of primary schedule risk mitigation is to maintain a necessary amount of path float between the project’s critical path activities and all of the intersecting (or potentially intersecting) paths. In other words, primary schedule risk mitigation “buffers” the critical path and preserves the schedule. A secondary objective of primary schedule risk mitigation is to keep significant risks (such as technical construction process risks) off of the project’s critical path or minimize their duration if they are critical path activities. The general principle is that activities with high schedule risk should start and complete as soon as feasible.

Secondary Risk Mitigation Recommendations

Secondary risk mitigation consists of pre-planned, potential scope or process changes that may be triggered when risk events occur that require reduction of contingencies below minimum levels. Secondary risk mitigation is fundamentally different than value engineering, which is a formal, systematic, multi-disciplined process designed to optimize the value of each dollar spent.

FTA will develop recommendations (or “targets”) for secondary risk mitigation capacity that should be developed by the recipient for the project phase under consideration. It is often the case that, as a project progresses toward completion, it may become increasingly difficult to develop substantial amounts of Secondary Mitigation capacity, especially as the project enters construction. FTA will work with the recipient to take into consideration the current status of design and the effect that any development of

secondary risk mitigation measures may have on the project scope or possible reduction to the intended and approved transit capacity and level of service.

Project Cost Contingency Recommendations

Contingencies are estimated set-aside amounts (monetary set-asides for cost and time set-asides for schedule) that are included within the overall cost or schedule targets for the project. Contingencies are designed to be used to overcome increases in cost or schedule that are due to potential risks, and for which no other mitigation measure is available. These contingency amounts may be associated with a particular activity or category of cost (e.g. allocated contingency), or may be set aside in a general fund (unallocated contingency). As a general rule, the amount of risk a project faces reduces as the project progresses toward completion, therefore, it is expected that the amount of contingency required for a project will decrease commensurate with the project’s progress over time.

FTA conducts a detailed analysis of the adequacy of the recipient’s cost contingencies. This analysis is developed in consideration of three models: 1) the FTA Beta Range Factor (BRF) model (described above); 2) a “forward pass” establishment of contingency targets, using historically-developed parameters (described below); and a “backward pass” establishment of contingencies using project-specific information (also described below). FTA uses its professional judgment to evaluate the contingency requirements estimated by these three approaches, and then works with the recipient to establish an overall set of minimum contingency levels.

In the Forward-Pass cost contingency analysis, FTA develops a set of minimum recommended cost contingency values for each project milestone and any additional point of significant change to project risk. The recommended cost contingency values, as outlined below, reflect amounts of contingency that are calculated as percentages of the adjusted, stripped YOE cost estimate (excluding finance costs), and these should generally be included in the total estimate for the milestone noted. FTA will consider whether the following standard recommendations should be adjusted due to actual mitigation that has been achieved by the recipient, the known capacity of the contingency to absorb risk, and unique project conditions:

- Upon entry into preliminary engineering, the working target for total contingency (i.e., the aggregate of allocated and unallocated cost contingency) is 30 percent.
- At entry into final design, the working target for total contingency is 20 percent.
- At the award of an FFGA or at the conclusion of final design for other major capital projects, the working target for total contingency is 15 percent.
- At 90-100 percent bid for the recipient, or 90-100 percent subcontracted for the prime contractor in an alternative project delivery method, the working target for total contingency is 10 percent.
- When construction is 50 percent physically complete, the working target for total contingency is 5 percent.

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

The forward-pass contingency recommendations can be interpolated, based on the standard recommendations above, if additional milestone points are deemed appropriate by either the recipient or FTA.

In the case of Backward-Pass cost contingency analysis, FTA develops a set of recommended cost contingency values that represent the minimum amount of total cost contingency expected to be necessary at project milestones. The estimates of minimum total cost contingencies are based upon FTA’s assessment of the project status and project risk. Items identified with the mitigation type of “risk acceptance” will be specifically reviewed when performing the backward pass analysis.

This process begins by considering the final stages of the project (say 95 percent complete) and determining how large a contingency fund should remain in the project budget to solve potential risk-laden events. This amount—often established through the judgment of both FTA and recipient project experts—becomes the minimum amount of contingency that should be maintained at that point. The next step is to consider another point in time when the project is less complete (say at 75 percent completion) and to similarly determine the size of contingency fund that should remain available. This process is not complete—moving stage by stage toward the beginning of the project—until it appears that primary risk mitigation or secondary risk mitigation, or both, will be sufficient to recover from potential cost overruns. This backward pass process is more effective at latter stages of the project, when project detail has been significantly developed.

Utilizing information developed from the Beta Range Factor (BRF) model, the forward pass, and backward pass contingency analysis, FTA and the recipient will agree on minimum levels of contingency that must be maintained at various phases of the project. These minimums will reflect the fact that the contingency target value for early construction is the point at which secondary risk mitigation is traditionally no longer effective and risk mitigation is only available through contingency use.

Based on the outcomes from each of the three models, the FTA, in discussion with the recipient, selects minimum contingency levels that most reasonably reflect the specific project conditions. These minimum levels are indicated for each of the project milestones at which significant changes in risk may occur. These milestones, along with their minimum contingency levels, are termed “check points”, and are used to protect the project from inappropriately early draw down of contingency funds.

Project Schedule Contingency Recommendations

FTA will identify, describe, and analyze the adequacy of the recipient’s schedule contingencies. The schedule contingency review shall be developed similar in manner to that of the cost contingency review resulting in the identification of minimum amounts of schedule contingency for inclusion in the recipient’s PMP and supporting schedules.

Appendix G – Grantee’s Guide To The FTA New Starts Project Risk Review

Backward-Pass schedule contingency analysis involves “stepping back” sequentially through various completion milestones for the project and estimating the minimum amount of schedule contingency required to complete the project on schedule, in consideration of risks identified in the risk analysis.

Forward-Pass schedule contingency analysis involves developing recommendations based on actual mitigation that has been achieved by the recipient, the known capacity of the contingency to absorb risk, and the following historically-grounded fundamental assumptions:

- At the Revenue Service Date (RSD), schedule contingency requirements have been reduced to a minimum requirement, or possibly eliminated; and
- At the point when the project is 100 percent complete with construction bidding (for Design-Bid-Build) or 100 percent subcontracted (for alternate project delivery methods such as Design-Build or CMGC), there should be sufficient schedule contingency available to absorb a schedule delay equivalent to 20 percent of the duration from Entry into FD through Revenue Operations.

FTA, in discussion with the recipient, will develop a recommended amount of minimum total schedule contingency to be available for the project at each major milestone. These minimum levels are indicated for each of the FTA milestones, including additional milestones as identified for points of time at which significant changes in risk may occur. These milestones and minimum schedule contingency amounts are schedule contingency “check points,” and are used to protect the project from inappropriately early draw down of contingency durations.

Managing the risk process

The recipient is responsible for management of the risk process and must document its process of risk management in the Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP). Pro-active, continual management of risk prevents risk events from becoming crises. Many recipients find it important to have an independent risk management staff that reports primarily to a level above that of the project manager. This avoids conflicts of interest that occur when cost and schedule compliance responsibilities conflict with the candid reporting of some likelihood of not meeting these goals.

The RCMP must describe the process by which cost risk and schedule risk will be identified, analyzed and monitored by the recipient’s project management team on a continuous basis during the life of the project. Pro-active, deliberate and continual management of risk is necessary to prevent risk events from becoming uncontrolled crises. In FTA’s experience, projects are more prone to cost overruns and schedule delays when recipients treat the risk register and corresponding risk mitigation measures to be static once developed. Continual review and updating of the risk register is a necessary component of a robust risk management program. As identified risks are brought to closure, the recipient needs to ensure there is agreement with FTA that the risk has been satisfactorily averted, mitigated or otherwise resolved and that the risk can be closed.

The RCMP also describes how the project’s contingencies will be managed and protected by the recipient. As discussed earlier in this appendix, it is especially important that “check points” be closely monitored to ensure sufficient amounts of cost and schedule contingency are preserved for the duration of the project. Other critical aspects of contingency management include identification of persons with the authority to distribute, transfer, and use contingencies, the manner in which the recipient forecasts and trends the project’s contingencies, and recovery plans should contingency levels fall below, or be forecasted to fall below, established “check points”.

Recipients are responsible for documenting and reporting risk management activities to the FTA on a prescribed basis. This should include any changes made to the risk register, cost or schedule contingency levels, or both, change in the status of any active risk mitigation measures being employed, and any updates to the RCMP. Updates to the RCMP are necessary to maintain the document’s integrity and usefulness. At a minimum, recipients should refresh the document at significant milestones (i.e., a major design deliverable is reviewed, a major contract is awarded, all underground construction is complete, etc.). FTA may perform post-assessment monitoring to determine whether the recipient’s risk management activities achieved the risk management objectives and targets established in the RCMP.

Post-assessment monitoring is intended to assess the recipient’s performance in risk management and ensure that the recipient’s project implementation achieves its risk management objectives and targets. FTA uses the recipient’s RCMP as its guide for post-risk review monitoring.